



THE NEW CHINA



英漢對照

新中國

2.55

求益書社印行

16230

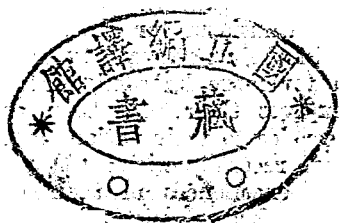
英漢對照

新中國

216
1957.4.21.725

THE NEW CHINA

GRAYBILL AND CHU 原著

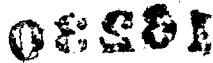


求益書社

印行



3 2285 2446 2



PREFACE

The cordial reception that schools in China gave to Graybill's "Modern China" indicated the great need for a book of this kind for civic instruction as well as the appropriateness of the general contents of the book. However, in order to make it of increasing usefulness to middle schools in the rapidly changing social, cultural, and political scenes of China, the publishers deemed it wise to have a revision of "Modern China." The result is the present edition, appearing under the title of "The New China."

The main considerations that entered into the making of "Modern China" were (1) that Chinese students have a very great enthusiasm for their republic and a very keen interest in their national affairs; (2) that they feel a great need for more knowledge of how young people can really express their patriotism, and how they can be of actual service to their nation, especially in this new era of national reconstruction; (3) that they are eager to discern the excellences in their own civilization as well as to study through pictures and descriptions those elements of Western life—schools, homes, cities, organizations, business enterprises, daily occupations, public services, progressive movements, new inventions, etc.—which, when judiciously selected and appropriated, will further the creation of a new civilization for the new China; and (4) that they enjoy learning English that is readable and usable.

In the revised edition, "The New China," we have retained the general character and arrangement of "Modern China," and have kept the same fourfold purpose of the book in mind. Chinese illustrations have been increased, and references to Western experience have been re-evaluated. The book has been brought up to

原 序

中國各學校對葛萊皮爾所作『現代中國』一書之誠意接受、表示着本書實爲必要的公民教材，並且適合於一般讀者的課本了。但在中國社會、文化、政治劇變條件之下，欲使本書的效用在各中學增加起見，出版者認爲有校訂之必要。結果始改爲新版，並名之曰『新中國』。

• I •

當時『現代中國』的大綱是：（一）中國學生對於民國頗具熱誠，對於國事極表關心；（二）爲了怎樣使青年正確表示愛國觀念和怎樣爲國家切實服務，尤其在這國家建設的初期，他們覺得有多受教育的必要；（三）他們很熱心的想從圖書中認識中國固有文化之優點和研究西洋生活——如學校，家庭，城市，機關，商界企業，日常職務，公共事業，進步運動，新式發明等——的要義，取其所长，合其所需，以推動新中國所需要的新文化之創造；（四）他們樂於學習易讀而有用的英語。

在校訂本『新中國』裏面，我們保持了『現代中國』的特點和編制，他顧到了上述的四種目標。不但把中國的插圖增多，而且把西洋的知識作了重新的估價。本書取材於

date in regard to the new events, new tendencies, new points of emphasis, and new outlook, which have recently appeared in China. It still contains much about Western civilization, which is defended on the ground that it is in the best spirit of the modern world that new China learns from all sources, but the point of view in selection and presentation is Chinese.

Concerning the question of language, we should recall that in Chinese middle schools, where the curriculum is already crowded, such a book may find a place as a reading-text in the English course when sometimes there is no other place for it; and, we may add, there is a similar book by the same authors in Chinese for students who are not learning English. Furthermore, it is believed that this book will stimulate the production of other books that will be of assistance in meeting the great need for civic instruction in China.

This book is a civics reader, a book to read and to talk about. It is not a complete and systematically arranged textbook in economics and sociology. If the students in a given school are to have in one of their upper classes a course in those subjects, this book will constitute a good preparation for it. If there is no such course, a reading-course of this kind is the least that the students should have in this most important part of their preparation for life in "changing China." The use of this book will lead to profitable class discussion and, it is hoped, to some useful activities. Thought-provoking questions and exercises have been added at the close of each chapter. In addition to these devices for teaching, experience has shown that the material itself naturally brings to mind an abundance of questions, useful topics for further discussion, and practical suggestions for class activity. Much time may be given to the study of interesting events in the biographies of men and women who could be only mentioned in this book.

The problem-solving method is usually advocated in social studies as well as in natural science. Although this

中國最近的新事實，新傾向，新力量，新視線。但仍保留着西洋的文化，因為這是現世界最精彩的基礎，而新中國實有探知它們各方面來源的必要，不過選擇些什麼以及怎樣去表現，那還是要靠中國人自己

關於本書的文字問題，我們感到中國的中學課程已十分繁複，像此類書除了可當英文讀本外，實無其他的地位；但是，我們得附加一句，作者也曾經用中文寫成一本專供學習國文的學生閱讀的書。再者，我們相信，本書可刺激其他書籍的產生，以供中國公民教育上大量的需要。

這是一本可讀可講的公民讀物，但並非是有系統的經濟學和社會本學的教科書。如果學校的高年級生有關於這些材料題目的一科，那麼書便可作補充材料。要是沒有這些科目，那麼讀此書時當注意『改革中國』的重要。我們希望本書供人討論，供人作有用的活動。每章之後，都有足以引人思索的問答題及練習題。關於教授的方法，經驗已告訴我們，材料的本身就自然地給我們腦中許多問題，可作進一步討論實用題旨之用，可供學生活動之切實指示。大部分的時間可供研究本書中所述的男女名人的傳記之用。

無論社會科學與自然科學，解決問題的方法總是一樣着重的。雖然本

book is apparently only a "reader," it is so arranged that it may serve the up-to-date teacher who wishes to use the problem-solving method. He may build his course about some such set of problems as the following, using the text as a source of facts, a storehouse of ideas and ideals, a source for vocabulary, and a means of comparing and checking up.

Problems corresponding roughly to the chapters:

I. To define "patriotism" and give reasons for our own patriotism.

II. To defend our pride in China.

III. To make sure that China is worth preserving.

IV. To discover the spirit and first steps of a preserver or builder of a nation.

V. To think out this hard question: Change or no change? Stand still or rush forward?

VI. To catch the spirit of modern times and go forward in it.

VII. To discover what success generally demands in carefulness and wisdom.

VIII. To put that idea of efficiency into terms of national conservation and development.

IX. To survey China's resources of labor and time and relate them to the problem of development.

X. To solve the problem of lack of capital to invest in this development of China.

XI. To examine into the nature of business, which is so large a part of all our activities.

XII. To find out what knowledge lies back of modern success.

XIII. To get down to the fundamental questions (1) What do the people really want? (2) What satisfaction does the modern world offer?

XIV. To learn how to secure the physical basis for service and happiness—health, strength, and energy.

書是「讀本」，但現代的教師若欲藉此書用作解決問題的方法，亦殊適當。他可藉此樹立下列問題之根據：例如用此書作為事實的出處，作為思想和理想的寶庫，作為語彙的來源，或作為對照和查核的工具。

本書各章中的問題略如下述：

1. 解釋「愛國」及我們要愛國的理由。
2. 保存中國的光榮。
3. 使人確信中國是值得保存的。
4. 使人發見保國者或建國者的精神與初步。
5. 使人思考這個難題：改革呢還是不改革？停滯呢還是前進？
6. 抓住現代的精神並與時代同進。
7. 使人知道成功總需要謹慎和智慧。
8. 灌輸着效率觀念，以為保存並發展國家之前提。
9. 調查中國人工與時間的用法及其發展問題。
10. 解決缺少資本的問題，以為投資發展中國的前提。
11. 考察一切與我們的活動有關的商業的本質。
12. 分析現代成功的基本知識。
13. 分析基本問題：（1）人民真正需要的是什麼？（2）環境界所貢獻的是那種令人滿意的事？
14. 使人知道怎樣獲得服務與幸福的體育基礎——健康精力與氣力。

PREFACE

XV. To see what we should do for the children, and to get an estimate of the place of education in the nation's new development.

XVI. To face the often recurring demand that law and order come first.

XVII. To get clear our relations to the central government: to appreciate its services, its importance, and its difficulties.

Whatever method is used, the teacher must be skillful in securing impassionate and intelligent discussion, by students and eager to point out hopeful signs of advance and improvement as illustrations of the success of Chinese efforts along so many progressive lines.

The authors take pleasure in acknowledging that the original idea of this book as well as certain material was taken from Miss Grace A. Turkington's "My Country." They are also grateful to those who have furnished the illustrations used; to Chinese, British, and Americans who have given suggestions and material; and to the editorial staff of Ginn and Company for valuable assistance in the preparation of the manuscript.

THE AUTHORS

15 研究我們應當怎樣爲兒童教勞，並估量教育在國家的新發展途中所佔的地位。

16 明白法律與秩序的重要條件。

17 須澈底了解我們與中央政府的關係：體會它的服務，它的重要，它的艱難。

不論用何法教授，教師須精細地使學生熱情的聰明的去討論，並且竭力指出中國各種成功事業的進步和改良的有希望的目標。

最後，作者須聲明本書的遺意及材料係取自湯金東女士 (Miss Grace A. TurKington) 的『我的祖國』? "My Country" 一書。同時蒙若干人供給插圖；中、美、英、各國人給予提示與資料；基恩公司編輯部助使出版，特地在此一併致謝。

作者。

CONTENTS

	PAGE
CHAPTER I. PATRIOTISM	1
1. Love of Home. 2. What Love of Home Means. 3. "Back to my Native Village." 4. Village and Nation. 5. Why I love China. 6. I love Her for her People. 7. I love her for her Gifts to us. 8. The Flag of China. 9. A Chinese must honor his Country.	
CHAPTER II. CHINA: A NATION TO BE PROUD OF	11
1. China is the Senior Nation. 2. China has had a Wonderful History. 3. China produced the Culture of Eastern Asia. 4. China is a Land of Great Monuments. 5. China is the "Middle Kingdom." 6. Looking Back and Looking Forward.	
CHAPTER III. CHINA: A NATION TO PRESERVE	17
1. Appreciating what is Native. 2. Appreciating Our Own Country. 3. Value of a Good Site. 4. Asia's Place in the World. 5. China's Place in Asia. 6. China's Size and Population. 7. The Character of the Country. 8. The Character of the People.	
CHAPTER IV. BUILDERS OF THE NATION	26
1. The Pioneer Spirit. 2. China is not yet Crowded. 3. Building a Nation. 4. "Plans for National Reconstruction." 5. Dead Nations and Living Nations. 6. The Watchword of the Modern World. 7. The Students of China. 8. Patriot Martyrs. 9. Hard-Work Heroes. 10. A Broad Point of View. 11. National Heroes and World Heroes.	
CHAPTER V. STABILITY AND PERMANENCE	39
1. A Country's Noble Sons and Daughters. 2. Dependability of a People. 3. China has stood for Ages. 4. New Learning in Old Europe. 5. New Thought in Old China. 6. Destruction or Construction? 7. Talkers or Doers? 8. A Construction Club.	

目次

第一章 愛中國	1
1. 愛家鄉 2. 愛家鄉的意義 3. 「回故鄉去」 4. 鄉村和國家	
5. 我為什麼愛中國 6. 我愛中國因為我愛中國的公民 7. 我愛中國因為它給我們禮物 8. 中國的國旗 9. 中國人必須敬重中國	
第二章 中國：可榮耀的一個國家	9
1. 中國是先進的國家 2. 中國有特殊的歷史 3. 中國產生驚人的文化 4. 中國是個流行偉大牌坊的國家 5. 中國兩字的意義 6. 向前看和向後看	
第三章 中國：應當保存的一個國家	17
1. 重視本國的事物 2. 重視我們的祖國 3. 地位羶醜的價值 4. 亞洲在世界上的地位 5. 中國在亞洲的地位 6. 中國的面積和人口 7. 中國的特質 8. 中國人民的品性	
第四章 建國者	28
1. 前驅的精神 2. 中國向來入滯 3. 建設一個國家 4. 「建國方略」 5. 死了的國家和活着的國家 6. 近世的口號 7. 中國學生 8. 殉國的烈士 9. 奮鬥的英雄 10. 廣大的眼光 11. 民族英雄 12. 世界英雄	
第五章 穩健性和永久性	39
1. 國家的衛費子女 2. 民族的可靠 3. 中國已流傳了若干世代 4. 看歐洲的新意識 5. 古中國的新思想 6. 破壞呢還是建設 7. 空談家呢還是實行家 8. 一個建設的團體	

CONTENTS

vii

	PAGE
CHAPTER VI. ENTERPRISE	47
1. The Spirit of Enterprise. 2. Ambition and Enterprise. 3. Invention and Enterprise. 4. Advertising. 5. Motion Pictures. 6. Developing China's Resources. 7. Transporta- tion.	
CHAPTER VII. EFFICIENCY—ECONOMY AND suc- CESS	62
1. Enterprise and Efficiency. 2. Two Returned Students. 3. Economy or Waste? 4. Economy in Quality. 5. Three Ways to use Things. 6. Waste of Materials and of Pro- ducts. 7. Is China Poor? 8. National Economy in Business. 9. Getting Full Value out of Equipment. 10. Efficiency and Public Service.	
CHAPTER VIII. CONSERVATION	71
1. Conservation of Resources. 2. China has Great Resources to Conserve. 3. Natural Objects to be Pre- served. 4. The Forests must be Preserved. 5. The Forests must be Properly Used. 6. A Sad Story. 7. Streams are Valuable. 8. Keeping Rivers within Dikes. 9. Transportation by Streams. 10. Streams give Food and Drink. 11. Water-Power Sites.	
CHAPTER IX. TIME AND LABOR	80
1. Saving Time. 2. The Importance of the Time Element. 3. Be Prompt. 4. China is "Speeding Up." 5. The Hurry Call. 6. Labor-saving Devices. 7. China's Great Labor Supply. 8. Strikes and Lockouts. 9. Wasted People. 10. Partly Wasted People.	
CHAPTER X. THRIFT, INVESTMENT, AND SECURITY	92
1. Idle Money is Wasted. 2. Making the Dollar Work. 3. What is Extravagance? 4. Thrift in China. 5. Thrift in Enjoyment. 6. Investment. 7. Gambling. 8. Banks gather Capital. 9. Banks supply Working Capital. 10. China is handicapped by High Rates of Interest. 11. The Greater the Risk, the Higher the Rate. 12. There is too much Borrowing. 13. Borrowing is often Wrong. 14. The Nation's Borrowing. 15. Ought China to borrow Foreign Money? 16. Business Security. 17. Insuring against Loss. 18. Life Insurance. 19. Who will watch the Watchman?	

第六章 企 業.....	47
1. 企業的精神 2. 志洵和企業 3. 發明和企業 4. 廣告 5. 電影	
6. 開發中國的富源 7. 運輸	
第七章 效率 —— 經濟和成功.....	61
1. 企業和效率 2. 兩個回國的留學生 3. 經濟呢還是浪費 4. 品質的經濟	
5. 使用東西的三種方法 6. 原料的浪費和物品的浪費	
7. 中國是窮的嗎 8. 商業的國家經濟 9. 有設備須得十足的利益	
10. 效率和公共事業	
第八章 保 存.....	71
1. 保存富源 2. 中國有很大的富源可保存 3. 保存天然的物品	
4. 森林必須保存 5. 森林必須有正當用途 6. 一個傷心的故事	
7. 河流是寶貴的 8. 使河流在堤壩裏 9. 河流上的運輸 10. 河流供給食品 and 飲料	
11. 水力的地位	
第九章 時間和人工.....	80
1. 節省時間 2. 時間成分的重要 3. 要敏捷 4. 中國正在趕上前去	
5. 緊急的呼喚 6. 省工的方法 7. 中國的大宗人工的供應	
8. 罷工和停業 9. 無用的人 10. 半廢的人	
第十章 節儉，投資和安全.....	92
1. 金錢不用即是耗費 2. 使錢幣有用 3. 奢侈是什麼 4. 節儉在中國	
5. 快樂的節儉 6. 投資 7. 賭博 8. 銀行積聚資本 9. 銀行供給營業的資本	
10. 中國吃高利貸的虧 11. 危險性愈大則利息愈厚 12. 借貸過多 13. 借貸常是錯的 14. 國家的借貸	
15. 中國應借外債嗎 16. 營業的穩安性 17. 以保險償還損失	
18. 人壽保險 19. 誰監察那監察人	

	PAGE
CHAPTER XI. BUSINESS AND SERVICE	105
1. An Ancient Classification of People. 2. Service is the Thing to Measure. 3. Money is not Dirty. 4. The Old-fashioned Middleman. 5. What is Money? 6. Goods and Services. 7. What is Business? 8. The Dignity of Labor. 9. "Service" the Watchword Today. 10. The Golden Rule. 11. The Red Cross. 12. How Students helped the Nation. 13. A Chinese should serve his Country Every Day. 14. Some Special Ways of Serving. 15. Master Some Task. 16. What will you do when School Days are Over? 17. A Chinese must master the Chinese Language. 18. Using your "Chance in Life."	
CHAPTER XII. SCIENCE AND NATIONAL PROGRESS 124	
1. What is Science? 2. Arts and Sciences. 3. The Scientific Age. 4. Development of Science in the West. 5. China's Need for Science. 6. Pure Science and Applied Science. 7. What is the Scientific Spirit? 8. China needs Scientists. 9. A Future for Chinese Scientists. 10. Science in Medicine. 11. The Scientific Professions. 12. The Biological Sciences. 13. The Sciences of Food Production. 14. The Physical Sciences. 15. The Social Sciences. 16. School Science. 17. Science and Mathematics.	
CHAPTER XIII. THE LIFE OF THE PEOPLE 144	
1. What do our People Want? 2. The General Welfare. 3. The Preservation of Life. 4. Life and Freedom. 5. Home and Liberty. 6. Certain Purhs of Slavery. 7. Eternal Vigilance is the Price of Liberty. 8. Health and Comfort. 9. A Modern Home. 10. A Western Home in a City. 11. A Western Home in a Small Town. 12. A Western Country Home. 13. Rural China. 14. Thrift and the Pursuit of Happiness. 15. "Too Many Mouths to Feed."	
CHAPTER XIV. HEALTH, STRENGTH, AND ENERGY . 163	
1. Your Success may depend on your Health. 2. Your Nation's Success may depend on it, too. 3. Chinese are Hardy People. 4. Health is Necessary to Win Success and to Hold it. 5. Boy Scouts and Girl Scouts. 6. How Many of us are Well? 7. Why seek Health so Sincerely? 8. "Safety First" or "I will be Careful." 9. Personal Hygiene. 10. What is Sickness? 11. Infectious Diseases. 12. The Prevention of Disease. 13. Clean Food and Drink.	

第十一章 營業與服務..... 109

1. 古代人民的階級
2. 服務是估價品格的東西
3. 金錢並不污穢
4. 舊式的中人
5. 金錢是什麼
6. 貨物與勞力
7. 營業是什麼
8. 勞工神聖
9. 「服務」是現代的口號
10. 金科玉律
11. 紅十字會
12. 學生怎樣幫助國家
13. 中國人應天天為國家服務
14. 幾種特別的服務法
15. 一技之長
16. 你畢業後打算怎樣
17. 中國人應擅長中國文字
18. 利用你「一生的機會」

第十二章 科學和國家的進步..... 124

1. 科學是什麼
2. 藝術與科學
3. 科學時代
4. 西洋科學的發展
5. 中國需要科學
6. 純粹科學與應用科學
7. 科學的精神是什麼
8. 中國需要科學家
9. 中國科學家的將來
10. 醫藥的科學
11. 科學的職業
12. 生物的科學
13. 食物生產的科學
14. 自然科學
15. 社會科學
16. 學校科學
17. 科學與數學

第十三章 人民的生活..... 144

1. 我們的人民需要什麼
2. 公共福利
3. 保全生命
4. 生命和自由
5. 家庭和自由
6. 幾種奴隸的制度
7. 永久電報是自由的代價
8. 健康和安樂
9. 現代家庭
10. 西洋城市中的家庭
11. 西洋小市鎮中的家庭
12. 西洋鄉村的家庭
13. 中國的農村
14. 節儉與尋樂
12. 「食口太多」

第十四章 健康，氣力和能力..... 163

1. 你的成功全靠你的健康
2. 國家的成功也靠健康
3. 中國人民是耐勞苦的人民
4. 健康為獲得成功和保持成功所必需
5. 男女童子軍
6. 我們人民有多少是健康的
7. 為什麼這樣努力追求健康
8. 「安全第一」或者「我要小心」
9. 個人衛生
10. 疾病是什麼
12. 傳染病
11. 疾病的預防
13. 清潔的飲食

14. Carriers, or Hosts.	15. Fighting Diseases.	16. Tuberculosis.	17. Injuries and Local Infections.	18. Hospitals and Nursing.	19. First Aid and Home Remedies.	20. Narcotics, Alcohol, and Patent Medicines.	21. Public Health and Sanitation.	22. Some Important Health Rules.
-------------------------	------------------------	-------------------	------------------------------------	----------------------------	----------------------------------	---	-----------------------------------	----------------------------------

PAGE

CHAPTER XV. CHINA'S YOUNG PEOPLE 136

1. The Children's Age.	2. Children are Part of "the People."	3. Indoor and Outdoor Play.	4. Public Playgrounds.	5. Protection of Children.	6. What One Nation is doing for its Children.	7. Youth comes to the Front.	8. A Nation with an Educational Tradition.	9. Does Education Pay?	10. Schools help to build Bridges and Railways.	11. Useful Citizens are more Necessary than Famous Men and Women.	12. The Schools give an Equal Chance to All.	13. Education is becoming Compulsory.	14. Education in a Republic.	15. Mass Education Movement in China.	16. Public Opinion.	17. The Salvation of "White Cloud Village."	18. An Inspiring Story.	19. Higher Education.	20. Elementary Education.	21. Who will do the Work?	22. Women and Education.	23. Lend a Hand!	24. How we can help our School.
------------------------	---------------------------------------	-----------------------------	------------------------	----------------------------	---	------------------------------	--	------------------------	---	---	--	---------------------------------------	------------------------------	---------------------------------------	---------------------	---	-------------------------	-----------------------	---------------------------	---------------------------	--------------------------	------------------	---------------------------------

CHAPTER XVI. LIBERTY, LAW, AND ORDER 214

1. The Tenth of October.	2. Every Citizen should value Liberty and use it Properly.	3. What is Liberty?	4. How is Liberty Secured?	5. Organization.	6. Why are Rules Necessary?	7. Rules prevent Trouble.	8. Homes have Rules.	9. Another Name for Rules is "Regulations."	10. No Person is above the Law.	11. Respect for Laws.	12. The Enforcement of Law.	13. Justice for Every Person.	14. Law and Order.	15. The Reign of Reason.
--------------------------	--	---------------------	----------------------------	------------------	-----------------------------	---------------------------	----------------------	---	---------------------------------	-----------------------	-----------------------------	-------------------------------	--------------------	--------------------------

CHAPTER XVII. GOVERNMENT AND PUBLIC SERVICES

1. The Government is an Organization.	2. Public Servants.	3. International Service.	4. Handling the People's Mail.	5. Wire and Wireless Service.	6. Another Group of Public Servants.	7. The Army and the Navy.	8. Reduction of the Army.	9. Civil and Military Authorities.	10. Paying for Public Service.	11. Sovereignty and Ability.	12. The Practice of Government in Schools.	13. "Principles of National Reconstruction."	14. The Five Administrative Powers of Government.	15. The Organic Law of the
---------------------------------------	---------------------	---------------------------	--------------------------------	-------------------------------	--------------------------------------	---------------------------	---------------------------	------------------------------------	--------------------------------	------------------------------	--	--	---	----------------------------

14. 媒介物或寄生物 15. 抵抗疾病 16. 肺病 17. 受傷和局部傳染 18. 醫院和看護 19. 主要急救法和家庭護理 20. 麻醉品酒精與專利藥品 21. 公共健康與衛生 22. 幾件重要的衛生規則

第十五章 中國的青年..... 186

1. 兒童時代 2. 兒童是人民的一部分 3. 戶內和戶外遊戲 4. 公共運動場 5. 保護兒童 6. 國家的保護兒童法 7. 青年站在前線 8. 有教育傳統的國家 9. 教育能生利嗎 10. 學校幫助建築橋梁和鐵路 11. 有用的公民較有名的男女為重要 12. 學校給大家平等的機會 13. 即將形成的強迫教育 14. 中華民國的教育 15. 中國的大眾教育運動 16. 輿論 17. 「白雲村」的救濟專業 18. 一個陽志的故事 19. 高等教育 20. 初等教育 21. 誰擔任這工作 22. 婦女與教育 23. 援手吧 24. 我們怎樣幫助學校

第十六章 自由、法律和秩序..... 214

1. 雙十節 2. 公民應重視自由並善用自由 3. 自由是什麼 4. 怎樣獲得自由 5. 組織 6. 規則有何必要 7. 規則可以避免糾葛 8. 家庭也有規則 9. 規則的另一別名叫「章程」 10. 法律高於一切人 11. 尊重法律 12. 法律的施行 13. 人人都該有公道 14. 法律和秩序 15. 理治

第十七章 政府和公共事業..... 233

1. 政府是一種組織 2. 公僕 3. 國際服務 4. 辦理人民的郵政 5. 電報和無線電事業 6. 另一羣的公僕 7. 海陸軍 8. 裁減陸軍 9. 文武官員 10. 公共事業的費用 11. 主權和能力 12. 學校市政府的實習 13. 「建國大綱」 14. 政府的五種行政權 15.

CONTENTS

National Government. 16. The Executive Yuan. 17. The Legislative Yuan. 18. The Judicial Yuan. 19. The Examination Yuan. 20. The Central Yuan. 21. Unity and the Central Government. 22. The Will of Dr. Sun Yat-Sen. 23. The "Three Principles of the People."

國民政府組織法 16. 行政院 17. 立法院 18. 司法院 19.
考試院 20. 監察院 21. 國體與中央政府 22. 孫總理的遺囑
23. 「三民主義」

THE NEW CHINA

CHAPTER I

PATRIOTISM

1. Love of Home

Everyone loves his home. He loves it whether the home is large or small, old or new. It is frequently the place where he was born, where for years his parents lived and near which *reside* his relatives and friends. *In a sense it is the place of all others that really seems to belong to him.*

Out in the Atlantic Ocean, far from any coast, there is a small island which you would think a *very poor place to live*. You would not like to spend one night there. It is so rocky that little grows there. Storms often sweep over it. Clouds hang above it and *shut out the sunshine for weeks at a time*. There are no trees; so the people build little houses of rough stones and hide from the storms or the hot sun in these huts. They cannot keep grain, because *the many rats eat it up* at once. They *live on fish* almost all the time. So few ships pass that the people rarely see anything of *the rest of the world*. If a steamer passes, they jump into their boats and *row out to it*. They just wish to see some other people, to learn something of the big world, or to get something to eat. Most of the time they spend their lives doing things that you would call very uninteresting.

When a certain government learned of the condition of these people, it offered to move them to some other part of the world and *to help them get a new start in life*. But, *strange as it may seem*, none of them wanted to

新 中 國

第一章 愛 國

一 愛 家 鄉

人人都愛他的家鄉。不論這個家鄉是大是小，是新是舊，他總是愛它的。這兒往往是他所由生長的地方，也是他的父母歷年居住的地方，並且在這兒的鄰近，又住着他的親戚朋友。就某方面說來，這是別人的地方，但也好似確屬於他的。

離開海岸很遠的地方，在大西洋裏面，有一個小島，在這小島上生活，你總認為很苦吧。你是決不願意在那邊住一夜的吧。島上多的是石頭，生長的東西却不多見，有時，整整的幾個星期，雲兒密布，看不到陽光。樹木也沒有；所以人們就用粗石建築小屋，躲避風雨和烈日。他們不能積存穀米，因為有很多的老鼠會立刻把它們吃光。他們幾乎永遠以魚食為生。往來的船隻不多，所以島民難得看見外界的東西。偶然有一隻輪船經過時，他們便跳上自己的小船，向着輪船的所在地划過去了。他們正想看看別的人民，想學學大世界裏的一些事情，或者想找到一些吃的東西。他們生活中大部分時間所做的事情，據你說來，總是非常乏味的吧。

要是這國政府知道了這島民的情形，那時就打算把他們移到別的地方去，這政府勸他們去獲得一種新的生活。然而，奇怪的，卻沒有人願意離開這島。原來這個荒涼的小島，已經是他們的家鄉了。



(南)

leave. This poor little island was their home. They had built humble little huts, had learned to love the hard life, the storms and waves that beat on the rocky shores, and they wanted to live and die there.

2. What Love of Home Means

Almost all people have *this love of home, a strong love for some place*—an island, a town, a mountain. They are eager to work for their home, and *even to fight for it if necessary*. When the people of that little island refused to give up their home for a sunnier place, where they would have more food, more clothes, more pleasure, they showed an intense love of their home.

If these people loved their poor little native island so much, should we not love this great country of China more? Love of one's country begins at home. He loves his little village or farm or his home town or city. *It is his own; it is like a part of himself.*

3. "Back to my Native Village"

The Chinese have, perhaps, more *loyalty to their ancestral homes* than any other people. This conversation once occurred in Shanghai, *but probably not once only—maybe a thousand times:*

"Where are you from, Mr. Wang?"

"I am from the southern part of Kwangtung."

"When did you leave there?"

"Four generations ago!"

Although his family had left there long ago, and he himself had never seen Kwangtung, *he considered that old home as still his, to be loved and honored and supported, and to be visited just as soon as he could find the opportunity.*

If someone should say that this undying love for one's own little country home and village is a very remarkable thing, you might reply that *it is as common in China as one's love for his parents,—just as common*

島民已經搭起簡陋的小屋，已知道愛護勤勞的生活，已習慣了風雨和擊着石岸的波浪，所以他們願意一輩子住在島上。

二 愛家鄉的意義

差不多人類都有愛家鄉的觀念——一種熱愛於某一地方的觀念——不關那地方是個島，是個城，或是一座山。他們很熱誠的願為家鄉服務，遇必要時，就是為家鄉奮鬥，也無所不願。那個小島的居民，不肯為了一個比較溫暖的地方，為了一個可得更多的食物、衣服、以及快樂的地方，而拋棄他們的家鄉，這就是他們熱愛家鄉的一種表示。

這些人民對於他們的小島，倘且如此熱愛，難道我們反而不應當更愛這偉大的中國嗎？人的愛國發源於愛家鄉。他愛他的小村，田地，灣嶺，或城市。這是他自己的；這好似是他自己的一部分。

三 『回故鄉去』

中國人忠於他們的祖先的家鄉，也許較任何民族要厲害得多吧。下面的一段談話是在上海聽到的，但並不止一次，說不定有一千次呢。

『王先生，你從什麼地方來的？』（註一）

『我是從廣東南部來的。』（註二）

『你什麼時候離開那邊的？』

『已經四代以前了！』

雖然他的家國早已離開廣東，並且他自己也沒有看見過廣東，他却仍舊當廣東是他的老家，認為應該愛敬，幫助，而且只要有機會，他更希望從速回去一觀呢。

若有人說這種對於故鄉的永久感情是件奇特的事，你可回答說，在中國這是很普通的，和愛敬父母一樣的普通——同樣地普通。也再

and just as natural. Perhaps it grew up merely out of the simple love for one's own father, mother, family, and friends. Perhaps in this country it is too common to attract much notice, but the fact is that this is the root of patriotism. Here begins to grow the great power that binds a country together. This loyalty on a small scale in town and country promises wonderful things for China's future.

4. Village and Nation

A certain world-famous Chinese statesman recently said: "Although I am now a very old man, have had wide experience, and find my interest in many important affairs, I still like to go back to the little village where I was a boy. I like to talk to the elders there, to be friends with them again, to get their point of view, to feel with them about the land in which they live. I get something from them that is good for me."

Is it not probable that this loyalty to his old home village helped him to become a statesman of national and international fame? The village is a real part of the nation. The nation is made up of such small parts. To help one helps the other. To love one ought to make us love the other. Just as we say "my own home," we must say, with the same sort of loyalty, "my own district." So, too, we must say "my own province," and, most important of all, "my own nation." If my loyalty and love stop at the small circle of my family and friends, how small a love and loyalty that will be, and how poor the chance that my district or province will ever become a better place for my relatives and friends to live in! If our love and loyalty stop within our own village, district, or province, how limited that patriotism will be, and how small a chance will China have to become a great nation! Let us hold fast and strong our small loyalties while we build up equally natural, full, and strong loyalties to our whole nation of homes, villages, cities, districts, and provinces.

穩地自然。這種感情，也許就是出於愛父母愛家屬，愛朋友之心而增長起來的。說不定就是因為太普通，反而引不起多大的注意，其實這正是愛國心的一個根源。這種愛家鄉的心，開始產生着那統一全國的偉大力量。這種狹小範圍的愛本城愛本鄉的觀念，能保證中國有一個美妙的前途。

(註一)這句的意思是：『你是那裏人？』

(註二)這句的意思是：『我是廣東人。』

四 鄉村和國家

舉世聞名的某中國政治家說過：『我現在是老了。廣博的經驗雖然有了，國家大事的關心雖然也有了，但我還是歡喜回到我兒童時代所住過的那個小村裏去。我愛和村中的老輩談天，重新和他們做朋友，吸收他們的觀點，同他們在他們所住着的地方一同感受。從他們那邊，我能得到些於我有益的事情。』

這種忠於家鄉的觀念，助他作成一個國內外著名的政治家，豈是偶然的嗎？鄉村確是國家的一部分。國家是由這些小部分集合而成的。幫助一個人，也就是幫助別一個人。愛一個人，也就應當愛別一個人。我們常說：『我自己的家』我們應同樣忠心地說：『我自己的縣，』因此，我們也得說：『我自己的省，』而尤其要緊的是說：『我自己的國。』如果我的忠心和眷愛，只限於我的小部分的親友，這種忠心和眷愛是多麼微薄，而且要我的縣和省愛為親友更好的住所，其機會也就多麼可憐啊！如果我們的眷愛和忠心，只限於自己的村、縣、或省，這種愛國心是多麼狹窄啊！而且要中國成爲一個大國，其機會又多麼稀少啊！讓我們飽滿地，堅強地把握住我們的小小的忠誠，同時對於由家，村，城，縣，省而成的國家，把握住一樣自然的，飽滿的，堅強的忠誠。

5. Why I love China

I wonder how many people could sit down and write out at once the reasons they have for loving their own country. One might declare that he loved his country *so naturally, so like a child's loving his own father and mother*, that he could not give any other reason. "I love my mother only because she is my mother," he would say. This is what one student wrote:

I love my country, because it is my *fatherland*. If you say that you love your country because it is strong and productive, you are not a true patriot; for you may have a stronger and more productive country by becoming a citizen of a country not your own. If you love your country because it is your fatherland, you are a true patriot.—TENG I CH'U

However, there are probably many other good reasons that could be given. It is a *good thing to try to give them*. It is a good thing to try to state your reasons for *anything*. It is good to try to say why you like your school. It is good to stop at the end of a day or week or month or term or year and try to say exactly what you have found good in it, what you are thankful for. It is good to try to say why you love your own mother.

While reading this book you might stop here and write down at least one good reason you have for loving China.

o. I love her for her people

A student whose name is Chang Chin Te says:

The first reason for me to love my country is that I am a citizen of that country. *I belong to it*. But there are further reasons. One of them is that we Chinese, the citizens of China, all came from the same original, ancient tribe. It spread to the east and then to the south until all the land was settled by our own people.

You see he loves China because it is the land of his own people. Here is another student, Li Jen Lung, who loves China because he loves the people themselves:

五 我為什麼愛中國

我不明白到底有多少人，能坐下立刻寫出他們愛祖國的理由來。也許有人說，他那麼自然地愛他的國家，正如一個孩子愛他的父母是一樣的，此外便無任何理由了。他會說：『我愛我的母親，祇是因為她是我的母親吧了。』下面是一個學生所寫的：

我愛我的國家，因為它是我的祖國。若說你愛你的國家是為了它是強大而富生產力，你便不是真正的愛國者，因為你如果作了祖國的公民，那你就可以有更強大更富生產力的國家了。倘使你愛你的國家，因為它是你的祖國，你才是個真正的愛國者——譯一知（註）

但是，也許還有好的理由可以指出來。能指出來，是件有益的事。不論什麼事，能試述其理由的，都是有益的。試述你愛學校的原因，是有益的。當一天的末了，或一星期的末了，或一月的末了，或一學期的末了，或一年的末了，試述你在學校裏所得到的益處是什麼，所感謝的是什麼，這些都是有益的。試述你為何愛自己的母親，這也是有益的。

當你讀着那本書的時候，你可在此地停一會兒，寫下你愛中國的一種充足理由來。

（註）這是一個中國學生的姓名，但原名是否如此，不得而知，現在只可算是譯音而已。

六 我愛中國因為我愛它的人民

一個名叫張成德（註一）的學生說：

我愛國的第一個原因，就是我是本國的國民。我是屬於中國。但是還有別的理由。其中之一是說，我們中國人，——中國的國民——都是來自同一本原的古代部落的。這部落先蔓延到東方，再蔓延到南方，最後各處都住滿了我們的人民了。

你可以明白他愛中國，因為中國是他的土地。這裏還有個學生叫李君倫（註二）他愛中國是因為他愛中國的人民。

PATRIOTISM

I love China because of her people. They number some four hundred millions. They are descendants of the early civilized people of the yellow race. I love them. I love them partly because I believe I can help them. I can help to lead them into the paths of modern civilization.

7. I love her for her Gifts to us

A Chinese proverb says, "When you have water to drink, think of its source." It means when you have received some benefit, you should think of the benefactor. Just think of *the rich harvest of good things* we have received from our forefathers, *a harvest which they sowed for us to reap!* Did you ever stop to think that if you or I had been *put when a baby among savages*, we should have grown up as wild and uncivilized as those savages? We receive *the rich gifts of the ages*. Shall we not love and honor those who have gone before and *handed them down to us?* Here is what one student says about it:

A child loves its parents because they have given their love to it. A student loves his school because he is receiving benefits and privileges from it. It is the same with love for one's country. I am a citizen of China. She protects me by her laws and gives me wonderful opportunities. Many heroes in the world's history have rendered unselfish service *to repay their debt of gratitude* to their mother countries. We are now studying to prepare ourselves to pay what we owe to our country. Else we are no citizens of China!

WEI SHUNG CHANG

Think *how long it has taken China* to collect all the good things she pours into our hands! It makes us love her more when we think back over that *long period of work and struggle*. Read what another student says:

Five thousand years ago our forefathers came from the west and settled this region which we now call China. Four thousand years ago we had already developed a wonderful system of writing and a real literature. Then through forty centuries our people maintained a great nation and a good civilization. How could I not love it and *devote my life to its service?*

CHEN YUAN CHIU

我愛中國，是因為愛它的人民。他們的數目有四萬萬那麼多。他們是開化最早的黃色人種的後裔。我愛他們。我愛他們，一半是因為我相信我能幫助他們。我能幫助領導他們走入新文化的途徑。(註一)(註二)這也是譯音。

七 我愛中國因為它給我們禮物

中國有句俗話說：『飲水思源』這意思是說，你得到恩惠，應想及恩人，想想從我們祖先那裏得來的豐富的收穫——一種他們為我們播種的收穫——吧！你會停下想過嗎？假使你我在小孩時代就放在野蠻人羣中，等到長大起來，豈不像他們一樣野蠻不開化嗎？我們受了各時代的豐富禮物，我們不應該敬愛前人以及他們所賜給我們的一切嗎？這還是某學生所說的話：

孩子的愛父母，因為父母先愛了孩子。學生的愛學校，因為學校先給了他利益和權利。人的愛國也是如此。我是中國的國民，它用法律保護我，並且還給我非常好的機會。世界史上的許多英雄，會做過公共的事業去報償祖國。我們現在讀書，是預備報答所欠國家的恩惠。不然，我們便不是中國的國民了！——魏舜昌(註一)

想想看！中國經過多少時候，蒐集它一切寶貴的物件，送到我們手裏！我們越想到它的長期的工作和奮鬥，越是使我們愛它。且讀另一學生所說的話：

五千年前我們的祖先來自西方，在現今所稱為中國的地方居住着。四千年前，我們已創設了一種奇巧的書法和一種真實的文學。在這四千年間，我們維持着這偉大的民族和昌明的文化，我怎能不愛它，又怎能不犧牲我的一生而為它服務呢？陳元權(註二)

(註一)(註二) 這兩個名字也是譯音。

8. The Flag of China

The principal of a big school came into the playground ~~to~~ another school *late one afternoon*. He was pleased to ~~see~~ all the boys out playing games and enjoying various sports. Soon the sun began to set. Suddenly a bugle ~~sounded~~. At once every game stopped; balls fell neglected; all talk ceased; every face turned in one direction; every hand went up to salute; and for a while ~~every~~ boy and teacher *stood thus at attention* while ~~the~~ flag of China was lowered and *folded away for the night*. The visitor said, "I am *going right back* to my school and I will start the same custom at once."

Why is the flag honored? It is kept carefully. It is often carried by special officers, guarded by special guards. It is hoisted in the morning, often with special ceremonies. It is not left out at night lest some dishonor might come to it. It is carefully folded and is not allowed to touch the ground, *where some careless foot might step upon it*. It is kept clean, and never used for any wrong purpose even when it is old. It is always hung *right side up*, and no other flag of any kind is ever hung above it. Can you tell why it is that *all this honor and respect* is shown to the flag of a country?

The flag is a symbol of China. To salute that flag means to salute the Chinese nation; to honor it means to honor your country. If a man loves China, he loves her flag. If he wishes to show his respect for his country, he naturally *turns toward* the flag that represents it. If he wishes his children to love their native land, he trains them to respect her flag. There is one flag for all China. The flag thus *brings all together in united thought for China*.

9. A Chinese must honor his Country

You honor your country in the same way in which you honor a person. To honor a person means to show ~~him~~ great respect and courtesy. To show respect for a

八 中國的國旗

一天午後，某大學校的校長到另一學校的運動場上去。他很歡喜的看著所有的學生正在遊戲和做着各種運動。不久太陽開始西沉了。號筒忽然吹起來了。這時學生立刻停止了遊戲；球落下沒人管；大家靜默無聲；所有的學生都轉向一面，舉起手來行禮；一會兒，師生一道立正，直待國旗漸漸落下，收摺放好為止。參事的校長說：『我回到學校以後，立刻要摹倣這種好校風了。』

國旗爲什麼要尊重呢？國旗應鄭重地保存着。它既常爲專員所攜帶，又常爲特別衛隊所保護。每當早晨升旗時，往往舉行特別典禮。因恐遭受侮辱，所以夜間也不能讓它留在露天。要謹慎地摺好，不可使其落地，以免被足踐踏。國旗要保持清潔，即使舊了，也不能作任何樣的錯用。它總是掛在正面，無論什麼旗都不能掛在它頂上。你能說出一國的國旗要這樣尊重和敬仰的理由嗎？

國旗是中國是象徵。向國旗行禮，就是向中華民族行禮；尊重國旗，就是尊重你的國家。若有人愛中國，一定也愛它的國旗。倘若他是表示敬仰國家的，他自然也轉而敬仰着那代表着國家的國旗。倘若他要他的孩子愛祖國，他就得訓練他們敬重國旗。全中國只有一面旗。因此，這面旗就集合了全中國的統一的思想。

九 中國人必須敬重中國

尊重你的國家，和尊重一個人是一樣的。尊重一個人，意思是向他表示大的恭敬和禮貌。在向一個人表示敬意時。

person you must know as much as possible about him. What has he done *to deserve your respect*? At school you honor the student who *has done most for the student body*, the girl who got the highest marks in the class, the boy who won many races in *track meets*. Before you can honor your country, you must know why it is *worthy of your honor*. This is why you spend so much time at school studying Chinese history. It is a wonderful history. There are some incidents in every history of which people are ashamed, but *most of the pages of our history* tell of men and of deeds of which we can really be proud.

For example, the Great Yu left his home *to control a flood* and saved the lives of many; Confucius formulated *a noble system of ethics* and became the "*teacher of teachers*"; Chuang Tzu founded a new school of Chinese philosophy; Tsin Shih Hsueh built the Great Wall to shut out the northern invaders, and standardized many institutions and customs *to make for greater unity in China*; Tang Tai Tsung promoted education and established institutions of higher learning; in more modern times Chang Chih Tung *advocated a series of reforms*, such as opening modern schools, building a navy, railroads, telegraphic system, mints, etc.; toward the end of the Tsing Dynasty, Dr. Sun Yat-Sen led *many attempts to free the people from Manchurian rule*, which finally succeeded in the revolution of 1911. Many patriotic young men *laid down their lives* in order to overthrow the monarchy and establish the Republic of China. All these great heroes of the past deserve our highest respect and honor. You should *spend much time upon the lives of these truly great men and women* who saw the deeds and possibilities of their country and did brave deeds and performed great tasks for their country's good. It is a patriotic thing to think and talk of them.

So also you must make a thorough study of the geography of China. Are you satisfied today with what you

你必須多知道他的為人。他做過什麼事情，使他能值得你敬重的？在學校裏你尊敬學生團體中做過事情最多的學生，尊敬在課堂裏得着最高分數的女生，尊敬多次競走獲勝的男生。在你能尊敬你的國家以前，你須明白國家何以值得你尊敬。這便是你在校裏化了很多時間研究中國歷史的原因。這是種偉大的歷史。在各國歷史中，某些事實總是有損人民體面的事實，但在我們的歷史裏，大多數的篇幅是敘述確實可以誇耀的偉人和功業。

例如大禹離家去治洪水，救了多少多少人的生命；孔子創設一種高尚的倫理體系，成爲至聖先師；莊子樹立新派的中國哲學；秦始皇築了萬里長城，擋住北方的匈奴，規定了許多的法制和風俗，使中國有更大的統一；唐太宗提倡教育，建設高等學府；至如近代，則有張之洞倡議各種改革，如開辦新派學校，建築海軍，鐵道，電政，造幣廠等等；到了清末，孫逸仙博士領導民衆，經多次的努力，要解除滿人的統治，卒成一九一一年的革命（即辛亥革命）。許多愛國的青年，犧牲了他們的生命，想推翻君主專制政體，建立中華民國。這些過去的大英雄，都值得我們極大的敬仰和尊重。你應該費點功夫去研究那幾真正偉大的男女的生平，因爲他們看出國家的需要和前途，而且站在國家的利益上，實現了勇敢的事業，完成了偉大的工作。紀念他們，談論他們，便是一件愛國事情。

因此，你也須徹底研究中國地理。你能滿足於你目前的對

THE NEW CHINA

know of your country? A citizen of China should not let a week pass without learning something more about his country.

Resolve now that you will know your country better so that you may respect her more.

中國專情的理解了嗎？中國的國民，是不容許有一星期的光陰不去研究本國的國情的。

現在你得決定：對於你的國家的認識，應該更清楚些，以致對中國的敬重，也可以深一層。

CHAPTER II

CHINA: A NATION TO BE PROUD OF

1. China is the Senior Nation

All people respect age. Rough people on crowded streets give way to a white-haired man or woman when they would not *make room* for anyone else. Even robbers often respect an aged person. When there is a public meeting in a village in China it is usually managed by the elders, for *the older men have authority*. When the representatives of foreign nations meet together,—for example, the captains of foreign gunboats or the foreign consuls,—first place is given to the *senior ranking officer*. When two ships pass on the ocean, it is interesting to see how the one whose captain is the junior *dips her flag first* in greeting to the other. It is good that people *the world over* respect age.

China is the real senior among nations. *In one way or another* every thoughtful Westerner who visits China “*takes his hat off*” to her as he thinks to himself, “This is China, the most venerable of all the great nations.” This respect for the ancient and dignified senior of nations was shown in a striking way recently. After the great *World War* had ended there was established the *League of Nations*. This was the greatest move ever made to *bring all the nations into one organization*. Never before had the world’s “*family of nations*” met together for united action of a permanent sort. In this family were the representatives of big nations and little nations, strong ones and weak ones, old ones and new ones, some *on the point of death* and some just born. Now, whose representative was chosen as president? Which nation presided? To which country came the high honor of this

第二章 中國：可榮耀的一個國家

一 中國是先進的國家

人們都尊敬老年的。粗魯的人在擁擠的街上，不肯隨便讓路，但對於白髮的男女卻是例外。甚至竊盜也尊敬年老的人。中國鄉間有什麼集會的時候，總是由長輩規劃的，因為上了年紀的人是有權威的，當外國的代表聚會的時候，——例如外國戰艦艦長或是外國領事官——首席總是由輩數長大的官員擔任的。當兩隻船在海洋中遇着的時候，你可很有趣的看到：那個年齡較幼的船長，會怎樣收下他的旗子，去歡迎第二隻船。全世界的人都尊重老年，這是很好的現象。

在各國中，中國確是個年老的國家，每個有思想的西人用各種方式到中國遊歷時，總是對中國脫帽，他自己在想：『這是中國，所有大國中最可敬仰的國家。』這種尊重古老和先進國家的情形，最近尤為可驚。歐戰停止之後，『國際聯盟』組織起來了。這是聯絡各國成爲一體的最大運動。國際團體從來沒有這麼聚過會，採取永久性的一致行動的。在這個團體裏面，有大國的和小國的，強國的和弱國的，古老的和新興的，將亡的和萌芽的國家的代表。現在要問：那一國的代表被選爲會長呢？那個國家被選爲主席呢？這種榮耀高大的地位，是屬於那一國的呢？

position? To China, the senior in the family of nations. Her representative was selected as chairman of the conference.

If other people respect China for her age, how much more should all *her own sons and daughters* give her great honor! They know her better than others; they understand her historic struggles; they are themselves *the fruit of her ancient life, which still flows strong in her mind and body*. They are foolish who think there is nothing good except what is new. The best things often come down from ancient times. Happy is the nation *whose roots are far back in the past*. Let us never forget the dignity and honor of China the Venerable Nation. Students do well to *write such an idea out* and remember it. This is the way two boys have written it down:

Everyone knows that China is an old civilized country. According to *historical records* she was founded more than four thousand years ago. Perhaps other countries, such as India, Egypt, and Babylonia, were founded at the same time, or even earlier, but either they were destroyed or they gradually declined. Certainly the nation which has had the longest history and earliest civilization is China.—CHENG FUNG TUNG

Chinese students have a special reason *to be proud* of their country. This is what they think of China's ancient origin. Among the many very ancient nations Egypt, Babylonia, and China were the greatest and most lasting, but of these three only one has continued as a nation down into the modern time. That one is China, our Fatherland. China is now the oldest independent country.—Tso TAT MING

2. China has had a Wonderful History

When a boy *starts out* without any help from family or friends and succeeds by faithful effort in getting an education and *working his own way up in the world*, we watch him with the greatest interest. Many of us do not need to go outside of our own schools to find a man or woman whose life has been such a *hard fight up the steep mountain of success*.

是中國——是國際團體裏面先進的中國！是它的代表被選為該會的主席。

要是別的人民因為中國年久而愛中國，中國的兒女豈不該表示更大的尊敬！中國的人民知道中國比別人要清楚；他們明白它的歷史的奮鬥；他們自身就是中國古代生活的結果，這種生活還在心身中強烈地流注着。凡認為祇有新的東西才好的，都是些笨人。最好的事物，往往是從古代傳下的。根長源遠的國家，是個幸福的國家。我們永遠不可忘記那可敬的中國的尊貴和榮耀。學生們儘可以把這個意思寫下兩字牢記着。下面的話是兩個學生寫的：

人人都知道中國是個開化最早的古國。依據歷史的記載，它在四千年前就成立了。也許別的國家如印度，埃及，巴比倫等，也和中國同時成立的，或許還早些，但是它們或者已經滅亡，或者已漸漸衰敗了。自然，有最悠久的歷史，而且有最早的文化與的國家，卻就是中國。

——鄭文通

中國學生有誇耀本國的特殊理由。這是因為他們想到中國是個古國的緣故。在多數極古的國家中，如埃及，巴比倫和中國，都是最大而又最久的，可是在這三個國家當中，祇有一國繼續存在到現代。那就是中國——我們的祖國。現在，中國是個最古的獨立國家。——左達民

二 中國有特殊的歷史

當一個孩子起初就失去家產和朋友的幫助，因了誠心的努力，得受一種教育，在社會獨立掙扎時，我們看了他，是有最大的興趣的。我們許多人不必走出學校，就可找到一生刻苦奮鬥的終於達到成功的滿卷的男女了。

In the same way China's history has been the story of a nation that rose to power and held under its rule almost all eastern Asia. It tamed the great unconquered wilderness, it educated itself and won a great place in the world's history. It warded off for centuries attacks upon its national life. It discovered ways to control and cultivate both the loess plains and the flooded river valleys among the hills and mountains. It used the native plants and animals and tamed and improved them. One great leader after another saw the values in certain good things and encouraged them. Sign-writing became a written language. It developed along with other arts. These spread even beyond the boundaries of the growing Chinese population, but they were the arts of the Chinese civilization developed without aid by the Chinese people. They made it possible for this people to be unified. Shih Huang-Ti gave the people the idea that they must forever be a single great nation. This was a difficult ideal to reach. The struggle was long and arduous. Enemies arose both within and without. Dynasty after dynasty had to arise and work to perfect the culture and the system of government that were necessary to unify so vast a nation as China grew to be. What a marvelous effort it was, and how wonderful the results!

3. China produced the Culture of Eastern Asia

Confucius and Laotze have been placed among the greatest sages of the world, and yet they were but two of China's many great sages. Although their ideas and methods were quite different, both were great philosophers and led the people of eastern Asia to higher and better thought and action. Now, after many centuries, it is a most important historical fact that more people are directly under the influence of their teachings than are under the influence of the teaching of any other one of the world's great sages. It is a wonderful thing to have had, far back in the history of one's country, men

同樣的，中國的歷史是一個民族的故事，它（中國）是那樣的豐盛，幾乎把全亞洲都囊括在它的統治之下。它開闢了洪荒，它教育了它自己，並且在世界史上佔了極大的地位。它抵禦了國家生命上的打擊，達數世紀之久。它發明了管理和耕種肥土與澆灌河水的各種方法，更發明了開拓大山小山中肥沃的流域的方法。它利用了本地的動植物，去馴養和改良它們。一個個的領袖見到了某種好的物品的價值，就加以鼓勵。符號的書法變成可寫的文字。甚至和別的藝術一樣發達。它們傳播到人口繁雜的中國邊界以外，但是，這些都是中國人獨自發展出來，並無外力幫助的中國文化的藝術。它們有使人民團結的可能，秦始皇給百姓一種觀念，教他們必須永遠成爲一個單獨的大國。這是一種難以達到的理想。這種奮鬥是長久而又困難的。敵人內外蜂起。一朝一朝的必須起來，希望完成，統一像中國這樣大的國家所必要的文化和政體。這是多麼驚人的努力，多麼偉大的結果啊！

三 中國產生東亞的文化

孔子和老子都列入世界大聖人的地位中，但在中國，孔老不過聖人中之兩個吧了。他們的思想和方法雖大不相同，但兩者都是大哲學家，並且領導東亞的人民達到更高更好的思想和行爲。在已經隔了若干世紀了的現在，許多人還直接受着他們遺教的感化，比接受世界上任何大聖人遺教的感化爲多，這是一件最重要的歷史事實。在一國歷史的過程中，

like Confucius and Mencius and Laotze. It is even better to have had through the ages and still to have a whole people who know the value of their wisdom, who give them honor and respect because so much of their teaching is good, noble, and true.

Not only the ideas but also the very language and literature of China's sages have become common to most of the people of eastern Asia. The classics of China are the classics of Japan too. A Japanese or Korean scholar learns Chinese as though it were his own language. How wonderful is this literature which has been preserved for so long and by so many millions of people! It is now translated into many languages and read by people in all parts of the world. China has produced a great literature and presented it to the world.

The Chinese people have good reason to be proud of their art. The professor of art in one of America's greatest universities says, "For colors Chinese art has never been surpassed." Collectors of art objects come to China for pictures, brocades, rugs, porcelains, carvings, lacquer, embroideries, and many other products of Chinese art. What could one find in all the world more beautiful than a real five-color *Kang Hsi vase*, or a marvelous piece of *kussu fabric*, or a bronze of the Chow period, or one of the ancient pictures with deep greens and pearl-dust whites? To collect porcelains almost always means to collect Chinese porcelains. China has given the world porcelain, lacquer, and silk, and the best of those arts that depend upon these materials. Then, in addition, she has given her own peculiar and excellent style in drawing, painting, and designing. Even handwritings are *hung up and appreciated* like pictures.

The culture that China has produced includes many other things besides art and literature. The dress, the customs, the ideals, the education of eastern Asia, are largely of this same ancient Chinese origin. The Chinese eat from a bowl with chopsticks, and so does every other east-Asiatic people that does not eat with its fingers.

有孔子，孟子，老子那樣的人物，真是足以驚奇的。尤其可認為良好的是；經過了很的年代，仍舊有整個的民族知道他們的智慧詩價值，尊重他們，敬仰他們，為的是他們的遺教，是良好的，高尚的和真實的。

中國的聖人，不但在思想方面，就是在語言和文學方面，也都普遍於東亞的大多數人民了。中國的經學竟成了日本的經學。日本和高麗的學者學習漢文，彷彿漢文就是他們的本國文字一樣。像這樣的文學，能為數百萬的人民保守到如此長久，是多麼可以驚奇啊！現在已譯成了各國文字，被全世界的人所共讀了。中國產生了偉大的文學，並且還貢獻給全世界。

中國人有誇耀自己美術的充足理由。美國一個最大的大學的一位美術教授說：『就色彩而論，中國的美術是超越一切的。美術品的收藏家，常到中國來搜集圖畫，錦繡，地氈，磁器，彫刻，漆品，刺繡，以及其他各種美術作品。一個人怎能在全世界上找到康熙五色花瓶，或是奇巧的錦繡的絲織品，或是周朝的銅器，或是深綠色和珠白色的古瓷更美麗的東西呢？收集磁器，差不多就等於說收集中國的磁器。中國供給了世界磁器，漆，絲，和用這些原料製成的美術品，此外，中國還供給了它的圖畫，油畫和繡圖上的獨特的，優美的風格。就是寫成的字，也掛在牆上像圖畫一樣可資鑑賞的。』

除了美術和文學外，中國所產生的文化，尚包括許多別的東西，東亞的服裝，風俗，思想，教育，大半是從中國古代學來的。中國人吃東西是用碗筷的，因此其他的東亞人民，也是一樣用碗筷吃東西，並不用手指來代替。

The ancient Chinese dress is found today with little change in the Japanese *kimono*. The reverence of the ancient Chinese for their ancestors and for learning is now a *strong element in the culture of all the Mongolian people*. Thus China's culture is now the culture of some five hundred million people or more.

4. China is a Land of Great Monuments

China's artistic genius has expressed itself in other forms than those mentioned above. One may travel thousands of miles, east and west, north and south, and yet find in every region great works of skill and beauty. Many of the stone gates are perfect works of art. They stand over roads and streets in thousands of places. Pagodas of many kinds—always strikingly interesting—stand upon hills and mountains in every province. More beautiful than the gates and pagodas, however, are the temples and many of the other buildings of China. Here in a little wooded mountain gorge, there on the plain among a group of ancient pines or banyans, stand these pretty temples with curving roofs, round doors, granite columns, green or blue or yellow tiles, and of gray brick or stone. Chinese architecture is one of the few *distinctive styles*. It is different from all others, and is beautiful. *Public buildings* in every city in the land and in many a small village prove the widespread architectural taste and ability of the people of China.

This ability does not stop with a single building or group of buildings, for a city like Peiping shows that at one time the builders took within their plan a whole city. Their architecture was not only fine; it was on a grand scale. Every Chinese boy and girl ought to study the plan of that wonderful city, and pictures of such things as the beautiful *Altar of Heaven* and its buildings and the little marble bridge at the *Summer Palace*.

The Chinese builders have given us great and lasting monuments of their ability, as well as beautiful examples

現在日本人所穿的和服，和古代中國人的服裝相差很少。中國人的敬仰祖宗和重視學術，在蒙古民衆文化裏，現在卻成了一種有力的要素。這樣看來，中國的文化，現在已成爲五萬萬人或甚至五萬萬人以上所共有的文化了。

四 中國是個流行偉大牌坊的國家

中國的美術天才，除上述以外，尚有以其他形態表現着的地方。一個人若往東南西北數千里外地方去遊歷，到處都可看見精巧美觀的作品。好多的石門，就是完善的美術品。這些石門豎在各處的街坊上。各管的大小的山頭，總是矗立着種類不同的塔，這常常是特別有趣的。但是，比塔和石門更美麗的，卻是中國的廟宇和其他的建築物。在樹木稀少的山腰裏，在一簇古松或榕樹中間的平原上，豎立着這些優美的廟宇；彎曲的屋頂，圓形的門戶，花崗石的石柱，綠、黃、藍、各色的瓦，和灰白色的礪石，中國的建築，是一種少見的特殊格式，它和別的建築不同，但它是美麗的。在各城市和好多小村落裏，都有公共建築物，這可證明中國人的建築趣味及其才能是很普遍的。這種才能並不限於單獨的建築或大宗的建築，像北平那樣的一個城，有一個時期，建築家們會將全城列在他們的計劃之中的。他們的建築不但精美，而且規模也宏大。每個中國的男女孩子，都應研究那個奇麗的城市的圖樣和影片，如美麗的天壇及其建築物，及廟和園裏的小雲石橋。

中國的建築家，憑了他們的才能，成就了偉大而永久的紀念建築物，和華貴的美術。

of their art and architecture. The walls around Peiping rise fifty feet above the plain, while those of Nanjing are still higher—ninety feet in one place—and extend twenty-two miles around the city.

More difficult by far to construct were the bridges that have been built across broad rivers in the plains and rushing streams in the mountains. Some of these are beautiful as well as strong and are wonderfully built. In one of them the blocks of granite that lie across *from pier to pier* are said to weigh twenty-five tons each. The clever engineers of that bridge probably made the rise of the tide or flood lift the blocks up for them.

The building of the Great Wall and the digging of the *Grand Canal* were two pieces of work that have astonished the world for still other reasons. They were not difficult for the engineers to construct, as some of the bridges were, and they did not require a great architect to plan them, as the "*Forbidden City*" did. Of course there were surveys and maps, but *the great difficulty lay in organizing such large undertakings* and continuing the plan, organization, and purpose for a very long period, until finally the work was done. *Few if any* tasks in all the history of mankind have equaled these two in size. The Great Wall is said to be the only thing man has made that can be seen from the moon. A nation that can accomplish such enormous tasks *commands the respect* not only of her own sons and daughters but of all the world.

5. China is the "Middle Kingdom"

We have been discussing China's past glories. Has China still a large place in the world? China used to be called the Middle Kingdom, because she stood *at the center of the life and power and influence of eastern Asia*. When Japan defeated China in war and claimed the position of the strong nation of Asia, and when China became the "Republic of China," the name "Middle Kingdom" began to be forgotten. But the word "Middle" remains

及建築術的範例。北平四圍的城牆高出地面五丈，南京的城牆則更高——有一個地方是九丈高——環城有二十二哩長。

更難建築的是橋梁：這些橋梁，有的架在平原區的闊闊的河面上，有的架在高山裏的急流上。有些橋梁精巧而又堅固，並且造得優可異。其中有座橋梁的的支柱中間，放着許多塊花崗石，每塊的重量據說有二十五噸。造那座橋的聰明工程師，大概是預防潮水或大水上岸，被它沖下去的。

建築萬里長城和疏濬運河的兩種工程，又因別的理由而使世人驚異。工程師建築它們，好似建築橋梁一樣並不是困難的，並且也不像建築「紫禁城」需要大工程師去計劃。測量和地圖自然是需要的，但最難的工作是組織如此鉅大的經營，並把計劃，組織和目的繼續延長，直到最後完工為止。人類的歷史中，能和這兩種工程相比的，就是沒有，也不多的。據說，萬里長城是在月光所照到的地方中，人類所造的唯一建築物。一個國家，能做成這樣鉅大的工程，非但使本國的國民對它敬仰，連世界各國的國民都要對它敬仰的。

五 中國兩字的意義

中國往日的榮耀，我們已在前面討論過了。現在是否仍有大的地位呢？中國常被稱為「中國」，因為它是站在東亞的生治，權威和影響的中心。當着日本戰敗中國，奪得亞洲強國的地位的時候，當着中國開始改建「中華民國」的時候，中國這個名字就漸漸被忘却了。但是「中」字

in China's new name, and in truth China is still the middle nation of eastern Asia. She occupies the geographical center. She is on the mainland, not the islands. She has the population, and hence the possibilities of both commerce and manufacturing. She is spreading her people farther and farther in every direction. She is fast becoming a modern nation. She constitutes four fifths of the population and area of eastern Asia. Does that not mean that she still occupies her ancient proud position of the "Middle Nation"?

Does it not make you glad to be a Chinese when you think of the wonderful country that is yours?

6. Looking Back and Looking Forward

Read what one young Chinese patriot says about his great country's past, present, and future:

As I look back at the history of the nations of the world, I am surprised to see that only one of the ancient empires of Europe, Africa, and Asia, such as Egypt, Persia, Greece, and Rome, which were so powerful, so civilized, and so progressive, can be said to have continued its existence down to this day. That one is China. She began her civilization thousands of years ago. She was a powerful nation generation after generation, and even now she occupies a large place in the world. China's history, however, like the history of other countries, has been made up of hardships and struggles. When we study the history of our country, we realize that our ancestors did great and difficult work for the preservation of our nation and the gradual development of her civilization. Thus we take pride in her long and wonderful history. We love our nation. We are determined to develop her civilization to the highest possible point. She will advance and grow stronger, and some day the flag of China will be seen in every part of the world.

QUESTIONS AND EXERCISES

1. Write a short paragraph entitled, "Honor to China, the Venerable Nation."
2. Tell briefly the story of some man whose life has been a hard fight up the steep mountain of success.

仍舊作為中國的新名字，實際上，中國依然是東亞的中央的國家。它佔據了地理上的中心。它的地位是在大陸上，不是在島嶼上。它有衆多的人口，也具有工商業的希望。它的人民繁衍到極遠的各個方向。它迅速地成了一個現代的國家。它佔着東亞人口和面積的五分之四。這意思豈不是說，它仍舊佔了古代榮耀的中國地位嗎？

當你想到這個可驚異的國家是屬於你的時候，你還不歡喜做個中國人嗎？

六 向前看和向後看

請讀一讀一個中國的愛國青年對於他的大國的過去，現在與將來所說的話：

當我向後看到世界各國歷史時，我很驚異的看見歐洲，非洲，亞洲的古國——如埃及，波斯，希臘，羅馬——那樣的強盛，那樣的文明，那樣的進步，但能繼續存在到現在的，只有一國，那就是中國。它在幾千年前就開化了。一代一代的傳下來，它都是一個強盛的國家，就是到了現在，它還佔據了世界重大的地位。可是，中國的歷史正如別國歷史一樣，是從克苦奮鬥中成就起來的。我們讀本國歷史的時候，明瞭我們的祖先，爲了保存我們的國家和逐漸使文化發達起見，曾經幹了極大艱苦的工作。因此，我們得以誇耀於它的長久而特殊的歷史。我們愛我們的中國。我們決意去發展它的文化達於所可達到的最高點。它將向前進步而日益強盛，總有一天，中國的國旗會在全世界看見。

問答練習題

- (1) 用「尊重可敬仰的國家——中國」爲題目寫一短文。
- (2) 略述某人一生克苦奮鬥達於成功的小史。

3. What are some of the teachings of Confucius that have led the people of eastern Asia to higher and better thought or action? of Lao-tze?
4. Compare the ideas of these two philosophers.
5. Make a short list of what you consider China's greatest literary works.
6. Write a letter to a boy in America, who has never been to China, and describe for him a piece of *kussu* fabric or a bronze of the Chow period.
7. Describe a beautiful Chinese pagoda for the benefit of someone who has never seen it.
8. Tell all you can about the culture of eastern Asia as produced by China.
9. What two enormous pieces of work accomplished by China have astonished the world? Why were these tasks so difficult?
10. What ideals did Shih Huang Ti give the people?
11. Is the word "Middle" in China's new name appropriate? If so, why?

- (3) 孔子和老子有何貢獻，領導東亞的人民有更高更好的思想和行爲？
- (4) 比較孔老兩哲學家的思想。
- (5) 略舉你所知道的幾部中國最偉大的文學作品。
- (6) 寫封信給從未到過中國的美童，爲他描寫中國的廟宇的絲織品和周朝的銅器。
- (7) 爲了從未見過美麗的中國塔的人描寫中國塔的形像。
- (8) 詳述中國所產生的東亞文化。
- (9) 由中國所造成驚動全世界的，是那兩種鉅大的工程？這兩種工程何以非常困難？
- (10) 秦始皇用什麼思想去教人民？
- (11) 「中」字適用於中國的新名字上嗎？如適用的，就說明其理由。

CHAPTER III

CHINA: A NATION TO PRESERVE

1. Appreciating what is Native

A common saying in China is, "Native ginger is not hot." It means that the place where a man is *least appreciated* is in his native locality. This is *due to the fact* that we become accustomed to the good things around us and then notice especially the new things that appear from somewhere else. That is why some people think that only foreign things are good. They are willing to pay more for an article if it has a foreign name. Many people want to have foreign names or to write their names *in a foreign way*, to wear only clothes that have been made from foreign fabrics, to eat foreign food, to buy foreign articles, to follow foreign customs, to speak a foreign language, to get a foreign degree, and even to marry a foreigner and to live in a foreign country. Some people choose certain foreign things because they are really better than their own. That is a good thing. It benefits the country to have good things brought in. But some people think foreign things must be better than native ones. They are proud of the foreign character of the things they have. Is that right? Is that patriotic?

It is foolish and unjust to be blind to what is right and good, either foreign, or native, but it is also very unpatriotic to be blind to the virtues of one's own land and people and civilization. People have to guard against this. Have you not seen a Westerner buying very poor Chinese art objects? A Western man with good judgment as to Western art sometimes puts up in his house Chinese pictures or porcelains which a Chinese of good taste would

中國：應當保存的一個國家

一 重視本國的事物

中國有句俗語說：『本裡不吝錢。』意思說，人最不重視的地方，就是他的本鄉。這是因為我們對於周圍的良好物品，已經看慣了，而對於外來的新鮮物品，倒反而特別引起注意。有些人以為只有外國貨是好的，便是如此。倘使貨物上面有個外國名字，他們就顯出大價錢去買。許多人歡喜取外國名字，或者寫他們的外國名字，穿洋裝，吃大菜，買洋貨，學外國習慣，說外國語，得外國學位，甚至和外國人結婚，或出洋到外國去。有些人挑選外國某種東西，因為確實比自己的好，那倒也有理。買了好的東西進來，於國家亦有利益的。可是，有些人以為外國的東西一定比本國的好。他們對於自己所有的是含外國性質的東西，就覺得誇耀。這是對的嗎？這算是愛國嗎？

對於一件正當和良好的事物，不論中國的或外國的，你若分辨不清，這是太愚蠢無理了；但是，對於本國的土地，人民和文化的長處，倘也分辨不清，那他又太不愛國了。人們必須避免了這類錯誤才好。你不看見西人買極粗劣的中國美術品嗎？一個能鑑別西方美術的西人，往往會把中國的圖畫和磁器擺設在他的室內，殊不知這種圖畫和磁器，是有眼界的中國人所不齒的。

scorn. So also one often finds very poor specimens of Western art in the home of a Chinese collector of fine Oriental things. Even when they are bad, things often seem good if they are foreign. This makes us wish to learn to appreciate better both foreign things and our own things. Begin at home. Ask your parents to tell you more of the values of native things.

2. Appreciating Our Own Country

What can be more important than to know the value of one's native land? Not only in order to have greater love for it and to be more proud of it, but also in order to believe in it more earnestly, to *feel greater faith in its future*, to have greater ambition for it, and to know better how to preserve it and develop it. In some countries every youth is carefully taught to value rightly the good qualities and great resources of his own country.

China has had a long and wonderful past. What of her present? Has she qualities and resources that are of great value? She is old. Is she exhausted? Is she useless because she is ancient? Does experience make a man weaker or stronger? Is China a *small factor* in the modern world? If not, how important is she?

How much is China worth? A very much discouraged student speaker once said: "China is hopeless. She has *gone to pieces*. She is now worthless. We might as well pick her up and throw her into the Pacific Ocean." What do you think of that student? He *knew nothing* of China's value.

Let us, then, evaluate China, appraise China, appreciate China. "Evaluate" means to judge the value of; "appraise" means to put the proper price upon; "appreciate" means *to feel in our hearts and minds the full value of some good thing*.

有時中國收藏家，東方的精緻的美術品的收藏家，他的家裏却也往往採集着極粗劣的西方美術品。只要是外國貨，壞的東西也往往當好的看待了。因此，我們應好好地學習賞鑒中國和外國的事物。賞鑒東西須從家裏做起。請你的父母把本國東西的價值多多地指示你吧。

二 重視我們的祖國

有什麼事情能比認識祖國的價值更重要呢？對於祖國，不但應表示更大的熱愛，更大的嚮往，而且也要熱誠地信仰它，要對它的前途抱更大的信心，要對它抱更大的志願，要明瞭如何去保存它以至發展它。在某些國家中，它的每個青年都受有嚴格的教育，使他們正當地重視本國的優美的特質和豐富的利源。

中國已經有了很悠久很偉大的歷史了。現在如何呢？它有寶貴的特質和利源嗎？它雖則年老了，但它究竟是精疲力倦了嗎？因為古老便不中用了嗎？經驗究竟是使人較弱呢，還是使人較強？在近世中，中國是個弱小分子嗎？如果不是，那麼它究竟有多大的重要呢？

中國有多少價值？一個很灰心的學生，有一次演說道：『中國是失望了。它已經是破碎了。它現在是無價值了。我們還是把它拾起來扔到太平洋中去吧。』你對那個學生發生了什麼感想？他是一點也不知道中國的價值的。

那麼，讓我們估量中國，評價中國，重視中國吧。「估量」的意思是評定價值；「評價」的意思是規定相宜的價格；「重視」的意思，是在我們心身當中體會到一些好事物的全部價值。

3. Value of a Good Site

A good site for a store *means a great deal* in business. If it is *in the heart* of the business section of a city, easily reached by customers, surrounded by the best shops, it is an important factor making for the success of the store.

It is somewhat the same with nations. The United States is in a very good position, while the Argentine Republic, with much the same sort of soil and climate and history, is not in nearly so favorable a location. England is in a wonderfully good location, while New Zealand is not, because it is too far away from the main travel routes. What shall we say of China's position?

China has one of the world's best national locations. Her "site" is an extremely valuable one. Let us examine some of the reasons.

4. Asia's Place in the World

In the first place, China is in Asia.

Civilization began in Asia. All the great religions began in Asia. Science and mathematics once were found only in Asia; we get many such words as "algebra," "alcohol," "ammonia," from Western Asia and its neighbor Egypt. The *very letters and figures* in this book for the most part had their origin in that same region. For a long time the centers of world history were in Asia—in China, in India, in Asia Minor. Then, with the higher development of Western Asiatic culture, the center was Greece. *Civilization began to march westward.* Then it was Rome. Then it was western Europe. Soon the United States came forward as a *possible applicant* for first place among the nations. In most of this movement westward the seas were *highways and fields of action.* First the Mediterranean Sea was the *center of movement, the field to be held by the victor.* Then the Atlantic Ocean became the field of action, with Great Britain the *acknowledged mistress of it.* Then civilization continued

三 地位優越的價值

一個地位優越的商店，就是營業發達的意思。如果這個商店是在城裏商業區的中心點，顧客所易到的地方，而周圍又開設了上等的鋪子，這就是使這個商店的發達的重要原因了。

國家的地位也是如此，合衆國有很好的地位，但是阿根廷共和國，雖有同樣的地土，氣候和歷史，而地位却並不怎樣有利。英國有優越的地位，但是新西蘭則不然，因為它和主要的航路隔離得太遠，至於中國的地位，我們以為怎樣呢？

中國是有世界最好的國家地位的一國。它的地位是一個非常有價值的地位。我們試考察其中的幾種原因吧。

四 亞洲在世界上的地位

中國是在亞洲，這是第一種原因。

亞洲是文化的發源地。所有大的宗教，都發源於亞洲，古時，科學和數學祇發現在亞洲；我們現在所用的字，如「代數」「酒精」「阿摩尼亞」，也是從亞洲西部及其近隣埃及得來的。本書【註】中的字母和數字，大部分發源於同樣的地方。世界歷史的中心點在亞洲——在中國，在印度，在小亞細亞——這段歷史是很長的，後來亞洲西部的文化逐漸增高發達，中心點就移到希臘。這時文化開始向西進行於是又到了羅馬。後來又到了歐洲的西部。不久合衆國急起直追，希望在世界各國中站在第一個地位。當文化往西進行的運動中，海洋便成爲活動的大陸和障線了。起初，地中海就是活動的中心點——勝利者所把持的障線。後來大西洋又成爲活動的障線。英國，便是人所共認的主人。於是文化繼續着。

its westward march. The Far East was opened up. The Oriental countries came into the "family of nations." Japan pushed Russia back many miles on the land and built a great fleet on the water. Great Britain developed India and *planted her feet firmly upon* islands all around the shores of the Pacific. Australia, New Zealand, and the countries of South America began to develop. The United States developed her western territory, bought Alaska, accepted the Hawaiian Islands from their ruler, secured the Philippine Islands, and finally cut through the Isthmus of Panama and sent a fleet through it. Does all this not look as though now *the arena of world interest* would be on and around the Pacific Ocean? Has the march of civilization not come all the way around the world and back again to Asia? One after another the continents join the march. First Europe and then North America and Australia developed "modern civilization." Now South America, with a small population, and Asia, with half the population of the globe, promise to come into the field of action. After that may come Africa.

The development of Asia is the world's great undertaking for the next few generations. To be a part of Asia is to be in the future field of action. To hold a section of Asia is to hold a part of the next and altogether greatest continent to be developed by modern civilization.

5. China's Place in Asia

Just as the little continent of Europe is broken up by a great mass of mountains and *a string of seas and gulfs*, so the great continent of Asia is separated into four or five different regions by the deserts and mountains of central Asia. There are the regions of (1) Asia Minor, with its long and discouraging history of conquests and religious wars; (2) the great undeveloped plains of the cold northern region; (3) the ancient and densely populated Indian and Malay sections of the South; and (4) the Mongolian "Far East." All of these reach into

往西進行。這時遠東便開放了。東方的國家加入了「國際團體」。日本把俄國從陸地上推後若干哩，且在海上創設大艦隊。英國發展到印度，並在太平洋沿岸各島毅然插足。澳大利亞，新西蘭和南美各國，也漸漸發達了。美國發展它的西部領土，購買阿拉斯加，接收夏威夷羣島，取得菲律賓羣島，最後鑿通巴拿馬海峽，且派海軍通過其間。從這一切看來，世界的角逐場豈不搬移到太平洋嗎？文化的進行，豈不是繞了全世界一週，又將重回到亞洲來了嗎？一個接着一個的大陸，都加入這種運動了。發揚「現代文化」的，最初是歐洲，其次是北美洲和澳大利亞。現在，人口稀少的南美洲和人口佔全球一半的亞洲，都答應加入活動的陣線了。說不定以後非洲也會加入的。

亞洲的發展。是此後的若干世代中世界上最大的任務。處在亞洲的一部分，就是等於處在將來活動的陣線。掌握亞洲的一部分，就是等於掌握新文化繼續發達的一個此後最大的大陸的一部分。

【註】 指英文本

五 中地在亞洲的地位

正與小小的歐洲大陸，被一堆大山和成串的海洋和海灣分開着一樣，偉大的亞洲大陸，也被中亞細亞的沙漠和大山分成四五塊不同的地方。這些地方就是：(1)小亞細亞，它有被侵略的和宗教戰爭的久長而沉痛的歷史；(2)北部寒帶尚未開闢的大平原。(3)南部的古代而又人烟稠密的印度和馬來地方；(4)蒙古的「塞刺」。這些區域都伴

that high and dry and immense central Asia. What will come out of that and how each region will be developed no one can guess. But the vast importance of the Far East is clear now to everybody.

China lies in the Far East region. She occupies the largest part of it. She is the center of it. She lies along the coast of eastern Asia for four thousand miles, and her people extend far into Russian territory to the north and into French, British, Dutch, and American territory to the south.

China lies thus in the center of eastern Asia, occupying an enormous section of the body of the continent. Her position is not naturally a weak one. She has no great number of islands to protect. Her long seacoast has few good landing places, though there are enough for commerce. On the west she is protected by vast deserts and mountain ranges.

Finally, China lies in the temperate zone. History shows that the independent and progressive nations lie in those parts of the earth where the climate is neither *so cold as to be limiting and discouraging* nor *so hot as to take away much of the desire and need for labor*.

Shall we not say, then, that China occupies the best and largest position in the most important region of the greatest continent in the world?

6. China's Size and Population

Every student in China has learned the facts of China's geography. With the exception of Siberia, which is for the most part undeveloped territory, China has the largest area of any country in the world, as a glance at the map will show.

Mere extent of territory, however, does not make a nation great. When we think of *the great antarctic continent*, upon which there is not yet one inhabitant, we can only wonder whether that now worthless continent

入高緯的，乾燥的，廣大的中亞細亞。將來各地如何結果，如何發展，誰也不能猜測。然而遠東的非常重要性，是現在人人都已經瞭然的了。

中國位於遠東的區域。它佔據了亞洲的最大一部分。它是亞洲的中心點。它佔了東亞沿岸四千哩，它的人民往北已遞入俄國境界，往南已達法國，英國，荷蘭，美國的領土。

中國因為位於亞洲的中心，所以佔據了陸地區域的一大部分。它的地位是天生強固的。它沒有多量的島嶼要去保護它。却有很長的海岸，但好的埠頭不多，僅足供通商吧了。它的西部有大沙漠和山嶺可以保護。

末了，中國是位於溫帶。歷史告訴我們：凡是獨立的，進步的國家，都位於溫帶地方，那兒既不冷得教人長縮寒慄，又不熱得教人厭倦工作。

那麼，我們豈不可說，中國佔着的是全世界最大的大陸和最重要的地域裏的最優秀最鉅大的地位嗎？

六 中國的面積和人口

中國的每個學生，都知道中國地理的事實。除了大部分尚未開闢的西伯利亞外，中國的面積可算為全世界國家中最大的了，這所要翻開地圖，一看便可看見的。

但是光有土地，並不能成為大國。我們想到廣大的南冰洋大陸，上面連一個人也沒有的，我們不明白現在這樣無價值的大陸，

will ever be of value to the world. If China were just an uninhabited area belonging to some colonizing nation, she would not be the center of so much interest and activity. There would be few ships arriving at her ports, little commerce or banking, no foreign diplomatic representatives, no tourists or foreign students of art, no great railway plans or system of postal and telegraph communication, and no such rapid growth of factories and business houses as *has taken place in the last few decades*. It is population that brings all these things. It is a combination of what people want and what people can do that makes things move. China has the people (400,000,000 of them, nearly four times as many as the United States), and they are people who want and can do many things. According to a recent estimate by the post-office there are about 427,700,000. If they were 400,000,000 or more savages who wanted only beads and toys and spears, the world would have little interest in them; but they are 400,000,000 or more civilized people who make clothes and build houses and produce raw materials and ride in automobiles and read books and run ships and know *what is going on* all over the world as well as in their own country. Such a population has an influence upon manufacturers and writers and statesmen and rulers of every part of the world.

Such a population could not be separate and by itself even if it wished to be. Such a population could not be disregarded by the rest of the world even if the rest of the world desired to leave it *entirely alone*. The world now is a unit. Every part is influenced by every other part. Just as someone has said that if you let a brick fall it shakes the whole earth a little, so we might say now that the buying or selling of a catty of rice on a village street in China *tends to change a little the price of food all over the world*. A large population used to be important because of what it could steal and destroy. It is now of *world-wide importance* because of what it can produce and buy, or refuse to buy. Everything that China does or fails to do affects the world.

將來會對世界有何價值。中國如果是沒有人住，而祇是隸屬於殖民國家的，它便不成爲人所注意和活動的中心了。那時濱海上來的船也就很少，商業和銀行也就不多，外國的外交代表也沒有，遊歷家和研究美術的外國學生也沒有，偉大的鐵路計劃和郵電交通的制度也沒有，工廠和商店也不能像近數十年來發達得那樣快。中國正因爲人口衆多，便帶來了這一切的事物。人民的需要和他們作事的能力配合起來，才能推動事業。中國的人口有四萬萬，（差不多比美國多四倍。）這些人民都有需要都能作事，據最近郵局的調查，中國的人民有四二七、七〇〇、〇〇〇。假使這四萬萬以上的人民，都像蠻夷，所需要的是珠子，玩具和槍矛，世界對於他們便不十分注意了；但他們是四萬萬以上的文明人，他們能做衣服，能造房子，能製原料，能開汽車，能讀書，能航船，並且還明白本國和世界的一切大勢。像這樣的人民，對於世界各處的製造家，著作家，政治家和首領，都有一種影響。

這種民族是不能分離的，即使自己願意分離，也勢所不能。這種民族即使世界各國要讓它孤立，也是不能爲世界各國不開心的。現在，世界是成爲一單位了。每一部分必受其他部分的影響。正如有人說過，若使你掉下了一塊磚頭，連全球也會稍許震動的；所以我們也可說，若使你在中國村莊的街道上買賣一斤米，就能使全球的糧食價格都略起變動。人口衆多，在從前頗關緊要，是因爲他們能偷竊能破壞。現在呢，因爲他們能生產，能購買或抵制，其重要性更普及於全世界了。中國所做成的或未做成的一切，都影響着整個世界。

7. The Character of the Country

Rivers are the arteries of a country! All great countries have great rivers. China has three. She has two of the greatest rivers of the world. Parts of them are really *arms of the sea*. China may thus be said to have a total seacoast of four thousand miles. There are many small rivers in addition, and *a great network of canals*.

Already seven or eight thousand miles of railways have been added to the waterways, and runners and carriers have for centuries traveled well-established roads and paths to every part of the country.

One of the interesting things about the mountains of China is that they are not confined to long narrow ranges in only one or two regions, but they are *scattered far and wide* in almost every part of the country. This gives upland regions to every province, and a great variety of geographical conditions to *the country as a whole*. All this means widespread opportunities for agriculture, fruit-raising, forestry, fisheries, manufacture, *power development*, mining, and many other types of industry.

It is an important fact, also, that China has such a varied climate. It ranges from severe winters to tropical summers, from the region of apples, wheat, horses, and ice storage to that of bananas, rubber, water buffaloes, and *all-the-year-round gardens*. It ranges from the dry land of dates and camels to the wet lands of rice and lotus fields and lichee orchards. It is a peculiar thing that in China the very plants and animals, like the people themselves and their customs, often have a wide range. *Per-simmons* grow in the extreme north as well as in the extreme south. Peaches and plums grow in the far south with oranges and bananas, as well as in the north with apples and pears. The bamboo is found in every part of the country. Rice comes from regions a thousand miles apart, and silk from regions almost as widely separated. China can grow almost everything, and in time could, if necessary, become in dependent of almost all foreign trade.

七 中國的特質

江河是國家的命脈！所有的大國都有大的江河。中國有三條大的江河。它有兩條世界最大的江河。許多部分是海洋的支流。這樣看來，中國可說有四千哩長的海岸了。此外還有若干小河和多如珠網的運河。

除了水運以外，中國還有七八千哩路長的鐵道，在幾世紀以來，國內各處的那些整齊的大路和小徑上，都有行人和腳快往來。

中國的大山也有一個有趣的特點，它們並非限於一兩個地方的長狹的山脈，乃是分散於差不多全國各處的。所以各省都有高地，就整個而論，全國的地勢頗有參差。這對於農業，菓樹，森林，漁業，蠶絲業，礦業，自然力的發展事業，及其他各種實業，都可以有普遍的機會。

中國有不同的氣候，這也是一件重要的事。它包括着極冷的冬天和極熱的夏天，並有出產蘋果，小麥，馬匹，冷藏物品的地方，更有出產香蕉，橡皮，水牛及四季開花的花園。還有出產羣和駱駝的乾地，同時又有出產稻，蓮與荔枝的濕地。最奇怪的，中國的動植物也跟人民和他們的風俗一樣，常有大大的不同。極北和極南都產柿子。極南又產桃，李，橘子和香蕉，北方則產梨和蘋果。全國各處差不多都產竹。稻米是從千哩以外地方來的，絲也差不多從一樣遠的地方出產的。中國幾乎什麼東西都有出產。倘遇必要時，將來還可以脫離外國貿易而獨立。

A country with such a climate, such a range of latitude and geographical conditions, such fertile fields and rich stores of minerals, such rivers and plains and lakes and coast as China has, is a country to be highly valued, carefully preserved, and wisely developed.

8. The Character of the People

The people of China, though differing in many ways, have a most remarkable unity of culture and character. Nowhere else is there a population of half that size so much alike in looks, ideas, customs, religion, and language. Only in China can a message written in one language carry to so many people. The genius the Chinese people have for standing together upon any question is of great importance. It may bring them to disaster, but rightly used it will rather bring them to a new national life. People today tend toward greater individuality, and the Chinese people will move in that direction, too; but still their ability to cooperate will be one of their greatest assets both in war and in peace. A great people who can think and act together may even find that they need no other means of defense. For the progress and development of the country, too, few characteristics are more important than the ability to think and feel together.

Another characteristic of the Chinese people is their desire to settle matters by reason rather than by force. Everybody knows that this rule is right, but few people act upon it so consistently as the Chinese. It is very difficult to bring oneself to face facts and judge justly and not to take advantage of one's greater strength. If the Chinese can take the leadership in the use of reason rather than force the world will forever be greatly in their debt.

China is a country of ripe experience. She has much to learn about modern science, but in human affairs she has much to teach. Her ways are the result of ages

中國有這種氣候，這種各別的程度和地勢，這種肥沃的土地和豐富的礦產，這種江河，平原，湖澤和海岸，所以是應當非常地重視，謹慎地保存，明智地發展的一個國家。

八 中國人民的品性

中國的人民，雖有許多不同的地方，但在文化上和品性上却是非
常一致的。沒有一個地方有中國的面積一大半，而能像中國人有相似
的面貌，思想，風俗，宗教和文字。只有在中國，才可將一種文字寫
成的東西，傳達給這麼多的人。無論對於什麼問題，中國人都能表示
一致，這是他們的特有的天資，非常地重要。也許這種天資會使他們
陷於不幸地步，但是若果善用它，却能把他們引向新的民族生活。現
在的人有很大的個性趨向，中國的人民也向着這個方向走；然而，不
論在戰爭時代或和平時代，他們都有合作的能，這將是他們最寶貴
的財產。一個思想和行動都能趨於一致的偉大民族，用不到別種保障
的。因為國家的進步和發展，再沒有比思想和感情一致的能力更重要的
品性了。

中國人還有一種品性，凡是要解決什麼事情，總歡喜講公理，不
願用武力。誰也知道這個辦法是好的，但是能像中國人一樣去實踐的
人確是不多。不用自己更大的力量，而能面向事實的公正地判斷事實
，這是多麼困難的啊。要是中國人能提倡採用公理，廢除強權，全世
界永遠感激的。

中國是個經驗豐富的國家，對於現代科學，它須盡量地研究，但
對於人情世故，它却可以盡量地教人。它的態度是世代的經驗和思想
的結果。

of experiment and thought. Her culture is not that of a family recently grown rich. She has found values by long experience. We should be slow to cast aside or fail to learn from that experience. She has learned, for example, that it is better to *deal honestly* than to *break agreements*. She has learned that language study is necessary to *sound scholarship*. She has learned that officers ought to be educated people. She has learned that the scholar is of *greater importance* than the soldier. She has learned that it is *not so necessary to get things done as it is to do them in the right way*. She has learned that things are to be judged by *practical results* rather than by *finespun theories*. She has learned that courtesy is better than haste. Shall China's experience be disregarded, as if she were an immature nation with everything to learn and nothing to teach? Shall we, for example, let her lose her reputation for courtesy and kindness, for *the observance of the rules of proper conduct* in social intercourse? Shall we not agree with Dr. Sun Yat-Sen, who urged us not to *discount such ancient virtues* as loyalty and filial devotion, kindness and love, faithfulness and justice, harmony and peace, but to preserve them as among China's most valued possessions?

QUESTIONS AND EXERCISES

1. What advantage has China geographically?
 2. Draw a simple diagram showing the march of the centers of world history.
 3. The text says, "It benefits the country to have good things brought in." Why?
 4. State a few ways in which one may show his appreciation of his country.
 5. Compare China with the United States, or some other country, as regards (1) population, (2) area, (3) number and size of rivers, (4) railways, (5) climate.
 6. What valuable lessons can China teach the world?
7. A Chinese boy on a visit to England wishes to tell an English boy something of the characteristics of the Chinese people. Write what he says.

它的文化並不像一個暴发戶的家庭。它却是從長久的經驗中，發見了寶貴的東西。我們不應當不學習這種經驗，也不應當把它轉易拋棄。比如，它知道，做事誠實較破約為好。它知道，研究學問必須學習文字。它知道做官的應該是有教養的人。它知道，學者比軍人更重要。它知道，作事必須正當，不可敷衍。它知道，評判事情須憑實際結果，不尚漂亮理論。它也知道，禮貌較魯莽為好。那麼，中國的經驗豈可被人忽視，彷彿把它當做個未成熟的國家，事事要學別人，而無一可以教人的嗎？我們可以讓它喪失它的禮貌和仁愛的名譽嗎？可以讓它喪失社交上奉行正當行為原理的名譽嗎？孫逸仙博士督促我們，不要忽略忠，孝，仁，愛，信，義，和平那些舊道德，但須保守它們，作為中國最有價值的財產，難道我們不贊成他的主張嗎？

問答練習題

- (1) 中國的地勢有何優點？
- (2) 畫一簡略的圖表，說明世界歷史中心點的移動。
- (3) 本書上說：『置了好的東西進來，是有利於國家。試說明其故。』
- (4) 說幾種可使人表示重視國家的方法。
- (5) 比較中美兩國或別國的⊖人口，⊖面積，⊖江河的數目和大小。⊖鐵道，⊖氣候。
- (6) 中國能教導世界的，是那幾種有價值的教訓？
- (7) 一箇中國少年遊歷英國，想對英國少年說出一些關於中國人品性的話。試寫出他的話來。

CHAPTER IV, G BUILDERS OF THE NATION.

1. The Pioneer Spirit

In the early days of every country there were some brave men and women who opened the roads. They *broke the way* for the new nation. They *led civilization into a new land*. We call them pioneers.

Some pioneers dragged their way across hot deserts. they found the roads and marked the good springs. They led water from the mountains by great canals in places like Szechwan Province. They sometimes left their broken carts and even their own bones in such numbers as to *map the land out* for those who followed.

Some pioneers cut their way through forests of trees and vines and bushes. They killed the snakes and tigers and other wild animals, but many were killed by the animals and many *lost their way* and died. All had to be bold and strong. They not only *conquered the forests* but also *developed races of strong people*.

Some pioneers, like Columbus, were brave enough to go out upon the sea to find new lands. They had no maps, but they had courage. Their ships were small and weak, but their faith was great and strong. We think often now of the great pioneers of the sea, and we try to *catch some of their wonderful spirit*.

Other pioneers broke roads over the high mountains, fought with the wild tribes, cleared the valleys for farms, built bridges and great walls, and diked the rivers. What heroes they were! How strong and determined! How proud we are to have as our ancestors men and

第四章 建國者

一 前驅的精神

在極早的時代，各國都有勇敢的男女，作為開路先鋒。他們給新的國家打開了出路。他們領導文化走進了新的境界。我們稱他們為前驅者。

有的前驅者長途跋涉，經過炎熱的沙漠。他們尋覓路徑，並且注意良好的源泉。他們將山上的水用水道引到山下去，像四川各地就是這樣。有時他們遺下若干破軍，甚至遺下他們自己的骨頭，其數量之多，彷彿足以給後來者指出路徑來的。

有的前驅開闢他們的道路，經過叢生瘴氣樹和葡萄樹的森林。他們打死了毒蛇猛虎的野獸，可是許多人反被野獸吃了，又有許多人卻因迷途而喪失了生命。這般人都是勇敢強壯的。他們不但克服了森林，還同樣發展了強大的民族。

有的前驅者，像哥倫布一樣勇敢，到海上去找尋新大陸。他們雖沒有地圖，但他們有的是勇氣。他們的船雖則又小又不堅固，可是他們的信心卻又大又強烈。我們現在常想起海上的偉大的前驅者，並且還要努力抓住他們的奇偉的精神。

還有別的前驅者，他們開闢路徑，通過崇山峻嶺，和發族搏鬥，開墾山谷作農場，建設橋樑和高城，並在江河上築起土隄。他們真是蓋世的英雄啊！他們多健壯而有決心啊！我們的祖先有這種勇敢的男女，

women of that kind! Every time we cross one of those bridges or look at any result of their courage and spirit we should think of them and feel in us some of the red blood of those heroes. *Pioneer times* in every country are full of interest. That is why there are so many stories of pioneer days. There are a great number of these storybooks, and you may find them in every library. There are many good stories that have not yet been written down. You sometimes hear them at an inn or from some old men at home. They are often good when they are genuine. Why should you not be one to write them down? Perhaps the brave old captain of some big junk can tell you stories that all the world would like to hear. Search among people for such tales and write them down. Look for books of pioneer stories and read them. Catch some of the spirit of the early pioneers, for not all such work is done yet. There are some parts of China not yet civilized, some wild places not yet *taken up by farmers* or miners or foresters. There are regions yet to be explored, vast acres yet to be developed, histories of China's great past to be written.

2. China is not yet Crowded

There are many parts of China where the population is very sparse. Villages are *few and far apart*. A traveler must go long distances from town to town. There are thousands of miles of hills and plains which are still waiting for people to come and live on them. China is one of the very few countries which still have a *Great West* not yet fully taken up by people on farms and in villages. It has *vast stretches* still waiting for the plow.

In Kwangsi, Yunnan, Kweichow, and in many parts of other provinces the unsettled country is chiefly hilly or even mountainous, but both the hills and the valleys are waiting for us to take and use them. The hills are good for cattle, and the valleys are rich and pleasant to live in wherever there are good roads by which people can enter and leave them.

我們又多麼榮耀啊！每當我們經過那樣的一座橋樑，或者思量思量他們的勇氣和精神的結果，我們應當想念他們並且應當在我們的身心上覺得那些英雄的熱血。各時代和各國家的前驅者的時代都是充滿着趣味的。前驅時代的所以有這許多故事流傳下來，便是這個原因。你在每個圖書館裏，都能找到這許多的故事書，還有若干好的故事，至今尚未有人寫出來。有時你在小客棧裏，或在家裏老人的口頭，可以聽到他們講這些故事。要是真實的話，這些故事都是好的。爲什麼不把它寫下來呢？也許那些大沙船裏的勇敢的老船主，能告訴你些故事，這些故事是全世界人類所愛聽的。你且往人們當中去找這種故事的材料，把它們——記下來吧。搜集前驅者的故事書，把它們熟讀吧。抓住初期前驅者的一些精神，因爲這種工作尙未完成啊。中國有好多地方尙未開化，有好多荒地尙未被農夫、礦工和造林家所開闢。還有別的地方尙待開拓，廣大的田畝尙待耕種，中國偉大的歷史尙待著述啊。

二 中國尙未人滿

中國有很多地方，那兒人烟稀少。村莊零落，而又相隔很遠。一個行旅者從甲城到乙城，要走很遠的路。幾千哩路長的山地和平原，至今尙未有人來居住。中國廣大的西部，還很少有人去開發田地，去形成村落。像這一類的國家，世界上是不多的。它有廣大的土地，尙無人耕種。

廣西，雲南，貴州，及其他諸省的若干部分，那沒有人住的地方，泰半是大小山地，可是這些山地和溪谷，都待我們去開發，去利用。山地則有利畜牧，溪谷則肥沃而適於居住，那邊更有好的道路，便於人民出入。

In the northwest, *on the other hand*, there are great plains with but few people living on them. These rich plains are *yet to be covered with farms, villages, and highways*. It is said that Mongolia, three fourths of which is fertile, is *a third of the size of the United States*, and yet it has *a population of only one to a square mile*. These vast plains are waiting for us *to take them*, to plant them, to water them, and to build homes on them.

In the northeast, there is Manchuria, or the "Three Eastern Provinces." There are large areas of excellent soil not yet cultivated by people. The abundance of fish along the coast, the extensive forests on the mountains, the coal and iron in the ground, are all waiting for us *to make use of them*. Manchuria is a land of rich resources, and we must lose no time in opening it up.

Many people say China has too many people. Do you think so? Look, then, at the population map of China and see if China is crowded yet. Has China stopped growing? Is her *land development all in the past*? Is there no new land for us to occupy? Will our children and grandchildren have no pioneering to do? Shall we say that China is old? No; China is old *in a certain sense*, but, *in fact*, she is young and growing. The future will be full of work for us to do, even of pioneering work as interesting and important as that of the early days. It makes us *eager to go forth* and begin our work. It gives us the pioneer spirit to look at the map and think of all the wild land that waits for us to make it serve our country and our people as it should.

3. Building a Nation

Just as the pioneer spirit lives in those who go out to develop new land today, as well as in those who broke the first roads and fought the first fights of civilization, so also there is pioneer work of many kinds still to be done in our big cities and even in the oldest parts of our country. There are still bridges to build, bigger and more

從別方面觀察，中國的西北，又有廣大的平原，但很少有人居住。這些肥沃的平原，將來就可佈滿田塢，村莊和大道。據說蒙古那地方，四分之三的土地是肥沃的，它佔有美國三分之一的面積，可是計算人口，平均每方哩只住着一個人。那邊的廣闊的平原，正待我們去開發，去種植，去灌溉，去造房子。

在東北，即是滿洲，或稱東三省。那裏有良好的大量土地，尙未有人去耕種。沿岸多產魚，山上多種樹，地下又多煤鐵，一切都待我們去使用。蒙古是利源豐富的地方，我們必得快快地實行開採才好。

若干說中國的人民太多了。你以為對嗎？翻開中國人口圖，便可看出人民到底是否擠滿了。中國已停止了發達嗎？它的土地的發展，完全是成爲過去了嗎？沒有新的領土歸我們佔有了嗎？我們的子孫沒有前驅的專業可做了嗎？我們可說中國是老了嗎？決不；在某種觀點上可說，中國是老了，但實際上，它還是年青，還是在生長。我們將來有許多工作可做，這種前驅的工作，其興趣和重要，是與當初的前驅事業一樣的。我們應當熱誠地往前開始我們的工作。我們看了地圖，想到那些等着我們開發的荒地，便能鼓起前驅的精神，去爲國家爲人民謀福利了。

三 建設一個國家

現在那些出去開闢新地方的前驅精神，和那些首先開闢道路與爭取文化的前驅精神一樣，我們祖國的大城和古舊的地方，也有好多的前驅事業，尙待我們去完成。今日還是需要建築橋樑，而且比從前的更偉大更困難。

difficult than those of early times. There are forests to plant where once there were forests to conquer. There are robbers to fight in the cities and villages as well as in the mountains. There is still *need for bold and strong men and patient and heroic women*, because there is great pioneering work still to be done in schools, in factories, in shipyards, in machine shops, in government offices, and in *hundreds of other places* where now our nation of tomorrow is being built.

The pioneers and people of earlier times were the builders of this nation that now belongs to us. Who, then, will be the builders of the China of the future? Who will pioneer, who will struggle and suffer and labor for the new China as our ancestors did for us in the old China? Have any of us now the pioneer spirit? If so, there is hope for China. If anyone lacks that spirit he is no true citizen of China, for China is forward-looking now and is in need of boys and girls, men and women, who will work for the great China of tomorrow.

4. "Plans for National Reconstruction"

Have you ever read Dr. Sun Yat-Sen's "Plans for National Reconstruction"? Part II of this book in English is called "The International Development of China." When you read this great plan, you will realize how large a task is waiting for us. Although the plan may not be perfect *in all its details*, yet the magnitude of the work it describes will *set fire to our imagination*. The plan calls for the building of 100,000 miles of railroad and 1,000,000 miles of stone motor roads, the repair of the Grand Canal and the construction of other canals, the improvement of Yellow River and Yangtze River, etc. It proposes a network of telegraph and telephone systems, wireless and radio, to cover the whole country. It plans *for the development of three large seaports into world centers of commerce*, one in the northern part of the coast line, one in the middle, and one in the southern.

從前克服森林的地方，今日倒要種植森林了。城市裏，鄉村裏和高山上的許多盜賊，都要去肅清。現在仍舊需要勇敢強壯的男子和堅忍英勇的女子，因為有重大的前驅事業尙待完成：如學校，工廠，船廠，機器廠，官廳，以及其他數百個地方，都是建設明日的中國的處所。

先前的人民和前驅者，便是現在屬於我們家裏的建國者。那麼，誰是中國未來的建國者呢？誰將為新中國作前驅，誰將去奮鬥，犧牲，勞動，像我們的祖先在古代為我們一樣效勞呢？我們當中現在有前驅的精神嗎？如果有，中國就有希望。倘使他缺少那種精神，他便不算真正的中國國民。因為中國現在是向前挺進的，並且需要男女青年和少年，共同為明日的大中國服務。

四 『建國方略』

你會讀過孫逸仙先生的『建國方略』嗎？本書的第二章叫作『中國的國際發展計劃』。你讀到這個計劃的時候，就明白有很多大的工作正待我們去做。雖然這計劃的詳情細節也許不完全，可是他所述的偉大的規模，已足使我們增加熱烈的情緒。這種計劃打算造十萬哩長的鐵路，一百萬哩長的石子汽車路，修理運河，鑿設其他的水道，改良黃河與揚子江等等，打算設立電報，電話，無線電，使其普遍全國，計劃發展三大海港，成為世界商業的中心，一在海岸線的北部，一在南部，一在中部，

in addition to numerous minor ports on rivers as well as the coast. It further provides for the building of modern cities; development of water power; opening of steel factories, cement factories, shipyards; the improvement of agriculture; mining and forestation; irrigation in Mongolia, Sinkiang, and other arid regions; colonization in the West, Northwest, and Manchuria. What a wonderful vision of the new China! Are you getting ready to do your part in this task of nation-building?

5. Dead Nations and Living Nations

No living nation is ever finished. There is always something to improve. Sometimes a nation dies. Ancient Rome and Egypt once were rich and powerful, but today they are so dead that even the languages which they spoke are called dead languages. Whether or not the Chinese nation dies depends on its builders. The builders of today are doing heroic and noble deeds. What will the builders of tomorrow do? Will they make China live a new life *in the modern days*, or will they let her die? China is the oldest nation. Is that a reason that she should die? No. It is a wonderful reason for wanting her to live on as a modern nation in as great glory as she had as an ancient nation.

6. The Watchword of the Modern World

There is an English poem which tells about the first voyage of Columbus. He was seeking a way to India and China, but he found America. This poem says that his forward-looking *spirit gave America a watchword*, but the watchword is good also for *the lands*. *Columbus was seeking* when he found America. That watchword was "On! Sail on!"

A few great men in the time of Columbus, a little over four hundred years ago, thought the earth was round, but no one had dared try to sail around it. Most of the people laughed at the idea, and when anyone proposed

此外尚有各河流和各海岸的小港。它還計劃了現代城市的建築；水力的發展；鋼鐵廠，水泥工廠，船塢的開發；農業的改良；開墾和造林的事業；蒙古，新疆，及其他乾燥區域的灌溉西部，西北，與滿洲的移民。新中國的希望多麼偉大啊！你到底預備盡你的本分，做這建國工作了嗎？

五 死了的國家和活着的國家

生存的國家是決不會完成的。它總有些須待改良的東西。有時國家也會滅亡。古羅馬和埃及從前是富國的，可是現在滅亡了，就是他們人民所說的語言，也稱為無用的語言。中國的存亡，是全靠它的建國者。今日的建國者正在做出英勇而高尚的事業。明日的建國者又將做些什麼呢？他們究將使中國在現今得着新生命呢，還是讓它去死亡？中國是最古的國家。這難道就是它應該歸於衰亡的理由嗎？不是。這正是個別救的理由，要它生存下去作個現代的國家，並且享受像古代中國所享受的一樣榮耀。

六 近世的口號

有一首英文詩，是描寫哥倫布第一次航海的事情。他找一條到印度和到中國的路，但他卻發見了美洲。這首詩裏說，他的前進的精神，給了美洲一個口號，可是這個口號對於他發見美洲時所要尋找的別國，也是一樣有用的。那個口號就是「向前呀！向前呀！」

四百多年以前，在哥倫布時代有幾個偉人，想到地球是圓的，可是無人敢嘗試繞着地球航行。許多人都笑這個思想。若有人提議

to sail straight out from the shore, they said it would be dangerous. It would be dangerous not because one could not find the way back—for the compass had been invented not long before and was in use—but because one might reach the edge of the earth and go off over it. They were afraid of evil spirits, of strange winds and great storms, of lack of food and failure of courage.

At last Columbus determined to try it, to go directly west on the winds that blew straight out from Africa, in hope of reaching the lands which he believed were on the opposite side of the world.

He found it difficult to persuade anybody to give him the ships and then to persuade sailors to go with him. At last he got ships and crews and boldly sailed out.

The wind carried them straight out, away from the shore. Day and night it blew west, always strong and always west. Day after day onward they sailed, out and away from home, and not a bit of land did they see, not a sail, not a bird, not a sign of land on the horizon.

The sailors began to say: "We are going too far. There is *no end to the sea*. We can never return. The wind blows only out, and never back."

They became afraid to go on any longer. They told the officers they would not go. They made the officers also afraid. They were almost ready to fight. They sent an officer to Columbus to ask him to turn back.

Columbus answered, "Sail on, and on, and on!"

Again and again the officer came, with white face and shaking voice, and said: "This sea is strange and dangerous. The winds are wild. We are *out of the reach even of God*. Let us turn back now before it is too late."

Columbus said, "Sail on, and on, and on!"

Then he stood alone on the deck at night and watched the west, hoping, hoping as he sailed on through another

從海岸向前出發時，他們就說很危險，所謂危險，並非因為找不到回來的路——因為那時指南針發明已久，而且正在使用——乃是因為到了地球邊緣時恐怕掉下去。他們懼怕惡魔，懼怕旋風，懼怕波浪。又懼怕糧食會發生恐慌。所以失去勇氣了。

最後哥倫布決定去試一試。他趁那由非洲吹來的風，一直往西行，希望達到所相信的世界的對方。他先勸人索綯他船隻，再勸水手和他同去，這是一種很困難的事。末了，他既爲船隻，又徵得水手的同意，便勇敢地出發了。

風吹着他們向前進發，便離岸遠去，不計日夜；風力總是雄大，總是往西吹刮。他們一天天的往前行駛，離開家鄉更遠了，看不見一片陸地，一隻帆船，一隻飛鳥，連地平線上的一點影子也都看不見了。

水手們就說道：『我們走得太遠了。這海是無邊的。我們決不論再回來了。風只是向前吹並不往後刮的了。』

他們怕再往前駛。他們告訴船員，他們不願去了。船員聽了他們的話也害怕起來。他們幾次要動武。他們派了一個船員上哥倫布那裏去，請求他把船駛回。

哥倫布回答道：『前進！前進！前進！』

船員再三的來去，慘白着臉孔，顫抖着聲音，說道：『這個海洋是怪異的，危險的。風力是狂暴的。我們走得太遠了，就是離上帝也太遠了，讓我們現在就駛回吧，否則來不及了。』

哥倫布說：『前進呀，前進呀，前進呀！』

於是在夜裏，獨自立在甲板上的，看着西方，希望着希望着，這樣又駛過了。

might. Suddenly he saw a light! It was land! He had found the New World because he had gone on and on and on.

So, the poem says, that is the New World's watchword, "On, on, on." Shall China not take this watchword, too?

7. The Students of China

The first group of people who come to mind as loyal sons and daughters of the new China are the students.

When *Chang Chi-tung* wrote his famous book "Learn!" (called in English "China's Only Hope"), he said that the Chinese people of today must study, or China would be lost. Later an imperial edict commanded the people to study modern as well as ancient subjects, *in preparation for official positions*. Then modern schools were built by the central government, by the provinces, by districts and towns, by churches and missions, by other groups of people, and by generous individuals. The watchword of all this movement was "For China's sake, learn!"

From these schools arose a patriotic group of people, the "students". When *Japan made unjust demands upon China*, and some Chinese officials were *false to their country*, the students saw the danger and *came to their country's rescue*. When a decree was published to compel the students everywhere to learn the national dialect, they willingly submitted and bravely undertook this difficult task in a truly patriotic spirit. When difficulties have arisen with Japan, Great Britain, and the United States, and *boycott movements* have been started, the students have usually been the group who have made these boycotts successful. They have not only given up their foreign books, pens, paper, and uniforms, for native articles, but they have been so faithful and earnest in their appeals that merchants and other people have loyally supported the boycotts. We cannot

一夜，忽然他看見一點亮光！這是陸地呀！他發見了新世界，因為他只是向前進，向前進，向前進。

所以，那首詩說，這是新世界的口號：『向前呀，向前呀，向前呀。』中國可不也應該採取這個口號嗎？

七 中國學生

新中國的忠心子女，第一批就是學生。

張之洞在他的名著「勸學編」（英譯叫作「中國的唯一希望」）裏說今日的中國人民必須讀書，不然，中國就要滅亡。後來國家命令人民研究新舊學術，預備送入政界。於是政府，各省，各縣，各城，各教堂，各教會，人民的各個團體，和慷慨的國人，都設立了新式學校。凡此一切的運動，其口號就是「為中國而讀書」。

從這些學校裏，產生了大眾愛國的人民——「學生」。當日本向中國提出無理要求時，有的官吏不忠於國家時，學生看出了危險，就來設法救中國。當政府下令強迫各地學生學習國語時，他們就願意服從，表示着一種真正愛國的精神，很踴躍的擔任這件困難的工作。當中國和日英美發生糾紛時，抵制外貨運動起初發生時，學生們往往能使這種運動成功。他們非但棄了外國的書，筆，紙，制服，而去改用國貨，而且還忠心熱誠的呼籲，使商人及其他各界也忠實的投助這運動。我們不能

way that the students have always been wise enough to solve their country's problems and save her from loss, but they have always been earnest, active, and patriotic.

8. Patriot Martyrs

When people sacrifice their lives *for the sake of a good cause*, they are called "martyrs." When a man *dies for his country*, he makes his country live more strongly because of his noble death. We must study our history to learn more about the martyrs. Let us remember them so that this day may not lack such patriots. Stop here and recall the stories of some of the noblest martyrs you have read of in history. Can you tell the stories of *Yao-Fei, Kung-Ming, Wen-Tien-Siang*? Read of others.

You have probably both read and heard stories of many heroes and martyrs of the revolution which established the Republic. Read Dr. Sun Yat-Sen's own story of the early martyrs of the revolution (in his book, "*Plans for National Reconstruction*," Part I, chap. viii). Recall some stories that have not yet been recorded. Write down some of these. If every student who reads this paragraph would write out one such story that he has heard in his district or city, what an interesting and wonderful book every student could make.

Men and women ready either to live or to die for their country are needed in the new China.

9. Hard-Work Heroes

China needs not only those who are ready to die for her but also those who are eager *to live and work for her*. China has had such patriots in the past and must have many more in the future. No great good comes without hard labor, and no nation can long endure without heroes of hard labor.

Li Hung Chang was a man who worked long and hard for China. Chang Chi-tung was another. Read their

說學生的才智足以解決中國的問題，挽救它的危亡，但他們的舉動終究是熱誠的，活動的，愛國的。

八 殉國的烈士

正義而犧牲了生命的人，都稱為「烈士」。一個人為國殉身，國家就能因他的高尚犧牲而更加強大起來。我們應當讀一讀我們的歷史，多多研究殉國的烈士，讓我們牢記着他們，免得今日缺少這種英雄。你們讀到這裏，正不妨停一會兒，回憶回憶你在歷史上所讀過的那些大烈士的事蹟。你能講岳飛孔明，文天祥的故事嗎？也請讀讀其他的人們的故事吧。

許多建設中華民國的革命英雄革命烈士的故事，你也許讀過聽過吧。讀一讀孫中山先生自己的初期革命烈士的傳記。（建國方略第一編第八章）回憶回憶那未曾記錄下來的事。把它們寫出來。假使每個學生讀了這段書，能寫出一篇在本鄉本城裏所聽到的故事，那麼，每個學生所編成的這本書，應該是多有趣，多有趣啊！

新中國所需要的男女，就是能預備為國而生為國而死的男女。

九 奮鬥的英雄

中國所需要的非但那些預備為國犧牲的人，並且也要那些為國積極生存而工作的人。在過去，中國已有那樣的愛國志士，可是將來應該更多些，沒有勤勞的工作便沒有多大的利益，沒有奮鬥的英雄，國家便不能永久存在。

李鴻章就是個為國永久勤勞的人。張之洞也是這樣的一個。讀一讀

biographies in Chinese. Think how earnestly Sun Yat-Sen labored to establish the Republic. Think of the years Wu Ting Fang spent in the service of his country! These are names that everybody knows, but thousands whose names are known only to a few have been just as truly "hard-work heroes." The farmers work hard *year in and year out* to produce foodstuff and raw material. Ships' crews fare far away from their homes to *means of transportation*. Doctors and nurses in hospitals work even at night. Factory workers toil day after day to manufacture goods. The life-savers on the coast and the fire squads in the city risk their own lives to rescue others. There are innumerable "nameless" heroes in the country. Every man in an official position, no matter how small, if he *does justice to all* and works faithfully, is a patriot. Every man employed in work for the good of the country is one of the public servants. All honor to the great numbers of such men in China today and in the past! They may not be in the histories, but they are in the hearts of men. When a boy knows his father has been an honorable public servant, a faithful worker, an honest merchant, a sincere teacher,—one of the hard-work heroes of his country *in any line of service*,—he holds his head up and looks at the world boldly and proudly. And so should every boy and girl whose mother has been a good mother, for at least half of the heroes of faithful and unselfish labor are women. An American poet has said, "Lives of great men all remind us we can make our lives sublime," and every boy and girl should *take this lesson to heart*.

10. A Broad Point of View

We can learn the way of patriotic service from other countries as well as from our own. If we wish to join *the army of Chinese patriots* who will serve their country in work of every kind, we should learn from men and women of all times and places. Many of you have read English storybooks and have seen how they presented to us

他們用華文寫成的條記。想一想孫中山先生如何克苦建設中華民國。想一想伍廷芳爲國服務的時期。這些名字是人人所熟知的，可是還有很多不著著名的真正奮鬥的英雄。比如農夫一年年的工作，是爲了出產食物和原料。水手遠涉家鄉，是爲了便利交通。醫院裏的醫師和看護，就是在夜裏也一樣服務。工廠裏的工人一天天的勞動，爲的是製造貨物。海岸上的救生隊和城市裏的消防隊，冒着自己的生命去救別人的危險。國家裏有很多的無名英雄。每個政界裏的人員，不論他地位怎樣低，苟能公正待人，忠實服務，也就是一位愛國志士。凡爲國家謀利益而服務的人民，就是一個公僕。凡如此工作着的中國今昔的大多數人，都可尊重的啊！也許他們不會列入歷史裏，但他們卻深印在人心之中了。一個孩子若知道他的父親是個名譽公僕，是個忠心的工人，是個誠實的商家，是個懇切的教師，——總之，不論是哪一類爲國奮鬥的英雄——他就可大膽地，榮耀地抬起他的頭，傲視世界了。每個孩子如有一位賢母，也是一樣的，因爲做忠實正義工作的英雄，至少有一半是婦女。有一位美國詩人說過：『注意偉人的生活，亦可使我們自己的生活化爲崇高。』孩子們應當把這個教訓放在心上。

十 廣大的眼光

不論從本國或別國裏，我們都一樣可學到愛國的工作方法。假使我們要加入爲中國盡任何義務的愛國志士的隊伍裏，我們就應明白各時代各地的男女歷史。你們當中有好多人讀過英文故事書的，也會經見過它們介紹給我們的，

heroes not of one nation but of many. Who has not read of the leadership of *Napoleon*, of the constructive work of *Peter the Great of Russia*, of the patient and useful service of *George Washington*, of the work of the Italian hero *Garibaldi*, of the persistence of *Robert Bruce*; of the faith of *Alfred the Great*? The lives of such men teach the whole world lessons of great value.

There was a time when people said: "China does not learn from other nations. She studies her own history but not the history of other nations." She looks to the past and not to the future, inward and not outward. Her point of view is too narrow." But that is not true now. China is fast leaving her conservatism and taking knowledge from all sources. She wants the best from every nation. She will keep the good things of her past and seek the good things of other countries.

Therefore, in order to develop strong men and women for China's future, we must study the people of other lands. Let us find out their good and useful points so that we too may try to develop such qualities. Let us be friends with them, for that is a good way to learn, is a service to the nation, and is a pleasant way to live in our modern world. The people of this twentieth century in all lands are looking forward to a time when all nations will be friendly one to another. People now see that all can profit by the fullest and closest cooperation. There are now few boundaries to commerce, travel, science, religion, philanthropy, and public service.

11. National Heroes and World Heroes

We have mentioned some great national heroes of Western nations, and you have recalled some great national heroes of China; but we must not forget that the greatest men and women do not belong only to a nation. They belong to the world. They serve not only their own people but all peoples. They do not push out the boundaries of their own country; they extend the

並不祇是一國的，而是許多國家的英雄。誰沒有讀過拿破崙領袖的故事？做建設工作的俄皇大彼得的故事？有耐性的兼做公益事業的喬治華盛頓的故事？意大利英雄加里波提的故事？剛強的羅勃德白魯斯的故事？盡忠服務的阿爾來特第一的故事嗎？這些偉大的傳記，給予全世界以最有價值的教訓。

有一個時期，人們說：『中國不學別國。它讀它自己的歷史，並不讀別國的歷史。它只顧過去，不顧將來，只朝裏看，不朝外看。它的眼光太狹窄了。』可是現在，不是那樣的了。中國很快的脫離了它的保守性，正在學習各方面的知識了。它要學習各國的特長。它一方面保存自己過去的優點，同時搜羅別國的優點。

因此，若要為中國將來培養健強的男女，我們必須研究別國的人民。讓我們去找出他們良好而有用的特點，使我們自己也可以發展。讓我們和他們做朋友，因為這是一種學習的好方法，一種為民族而努力的義務，一種生存在近世中的快樂事情。二十世紀裏的各國人民，都希望有一個時期，可使萬國互相友愛。現在，人們已經知道，要是大家能密切地通力合作，就能獲得相互的利益。現在，商業，遊歷，科學，宗教，慈善事業，公益事業各方面，都已經是不分國界的了。

十一 民族英雄和世界英雄

我們已經敘述過西方各國的好多英雄，你也已經回憶到中國的好多大英雄了；可是我們不能忘記，偉大的男女並不祇屬於一國的。他們是屬於全世界的。他們非但為本國的人民服務，並且也為全世界的人民服務。他們並不開拓自己的國土，他們却發展

measure of the world's good. They build their own nations, not at the expense of other nations but by making their own people a blessing to all other peoples. Such men and women are more than patriots. Their countries take in them a pride that is everlasting and all other countries unite to do them honor.

It is a good thing to read biography. You will find in many books the stories of such men and women as *Pasteur*, who made wonderful discoveries in the study of diseases; *Florence Nightingale*, whose system of nursing-service has stood the test of all time and has been copied in every country; *Edison*, who gave the world electric lights, gramophones, and many other inventions; *Bell*, who gave us telephones; *Marconi*, whose wireless now sends messages, lectures, music, and news to all parts of the world; *John Howard* and *Elizabeth Fry*, who taught us how to take care of prisoners; *Madame Curie*, who discovered radium and new fundamental principles of chemistry; *Watt* and *Trevithick* and *Stephenson*, who developed the steam engine for use in factories and on railways; *Fulton*, who put the engine to driving a boat; *Heilmann*, who invented the combing machine; *Arkwright*, who developed the spinning machine; *Vaucanson* and *Jacquard*, to whom modern weaving owes a great debt. Then there were *Volta*, *Galvani*, and *Faraday* in electricity, *Stevenson* in lighthouse-building, *Morse* in telegraphy, *Langley* and the *Wright brothers* in the invention of the airplane, *Lavoisier* and many others in chemistry, *Newton* and others in physics, *Copernicus* and *Galleo* and *Kepler* in astronomy, *Darwin* and *Lamarck* and *Mendel* in biology. These are only a few of the many famous names. We must go back to *Francis Bacon* and *Roger Bacon*, who turned men's minds to scientific studies. We must go back still farther to find the ancient leaders, among whom are *Hippocrates* in medicine, *Archimedes* in physics, and *Euclid* in mathematics. Try to find time to read the biographies of some of these. Many of them suffered for the sake of the valuable truths they discovered.

掉益世界的計劃。他們建設自己的國家，却並不損害別國的利益，而且還使自己的人民加意於別國的人民。這樣的男女比愛國志士更偉大了。他們的國家固然視他們為永久的光榮，就是別國也是一致尊敬他們的。

讀傳記是有益的。在許多故事書裏，你可找到超人一等的男女：巴斯德於研究病理中造成驚人的發明。弗羅倫斯耐丁格女士的看護術，經過多時的試驗，為醫院所採用。愛迪生供給了世界以電燈，留聲機，及其他發明物。瓦特改良了瓦尼的無線電，現在正向世界各處傳播消息，演說，音樂。哈華德和伊利沙白弗拉伊兩人，教我們怎樣去看管囚犯。居禮夫人發明了鈾鎊和化學上的新的基本原理。瓦特，德萊非西克和斯蒂芬孫改良了汽機，應用於工廠及鐵路。福爾東發明了汽機行駛船。海爾門發明了梳理機。阿克來脫改良了紡織機。福克生和傑瓜德二人對於近代紡織界貢獻很大。此外還有瓦爾德，加范尼，與法拉代的電氣學，斯蒂芬孫的燈塔建築，摩爾斯的電報學，蘭格立和賴德兄弟的飛機發明，拉佛遜等的化學，牛頓等的物理學，葛破尼格斯，加利留，庫布拉的天文學，塞爾文，拉馬克，門特爾的生物學。這不過其中的幾個卓著者吧了。我們得追溯到法郎西斯培根和羅格倍根兩人，因為他們能使人注重科學的研究。我們再追溯到古代的領袖，如希波克來底的醫學，阿吉米狄的物理學，歐幾里得的數學。你們抽空功夫出來去讀些名人的傳記吧。其中有許多人，爲了發明有價值的真理，反受極大的痛苦。

Most of these men and women were inventors and discoverers in science or industry. There is also a long line of world heroes and heroines of other kinds. Try to find time to read about travelers and discoverers like *Columbus, Diaz, Magellan, Marco Polo, Livingstone*; about great thinkers like *Adam Smith, Matthus, Huxley, Spencer, Karl Marx, William James, Bergson*; about great leaders and reformers like *John Hampden, William Wilberforce, Thomas Jefferson, Abraham Lincoln, Mazzini, Robbeson*. We can name only a few here, and we have not named the great religious leaders, great educators, great writers, great artists, or great architects.

This makes us remember how the past can help us in the future. Perhaps it makes us more eager to read the history of our country, to learn more of how men and women have labored to benefit their people and the present world.

QUESTIONS AND EXERCISES

1. Describe the first voyage of Columbus to the New World. Contrast this voyage with the journey you might take to America today.
2. What are some of the advantages of travel to
 - a. The individual?
 - b. The nation?
3. The pioneer spirit never dies. What pioneer work can be done today in China?
4. The old walls and pagodas of China must have looked down upon many interesting events and people. Write briefly of what you would like a pagoda to see in China fifteen years from now.
5. State a few advantages resulting from cooperation.
6. Tell of something important which you think China can learn from the West.
7. What modern subjects are studied in the schools of China today? Can you suggest others that should be studied?
8. Make a list of a few of the world's

這些多數的男女，都是科學界和實業界的發明家與創造家。此外世界裏還有別種的男女英雄。你們也抽點功夫去研究研究，像哥倫布，狄阿斯，麥吉蘭，羅可波羅，塞文斯登等的遊歷家和探險家；像亞當斯密斯，麥爾沙斯，赫克斯來，斯本塞，卡爾馬克斯，惠康傑姆，伯格森等的大思想家；像約翰漢姆鄒，惠康惠白爾斯，湯姆斯傑夫生，亞伯拉罕林肯，馬施尼，盧梭等的大領袖和大改革家。我們只能在此地提出幾個名字來，還有大宗教家，大教育家，大著作家，大藝術家，大建築家等，都未曾提及。

從這裏，我們可以知道過去的事可供將來作為借鑑。也許我們會更熱心去研究世界的歷史，從這歷史裏，更可深切知道男女如何生活，如何工作，以利於自己的人民和世界的人民。

問答練習題

(1) 詳述哥倫布第一次航海往新世界的情形。以這個航海去比較你現在遊歷美國的情形。

(2) 遊歷(A)對於個人有何利益？(B)對於國家有何利益？

(3) 前驅的精神永遠不死。中國今日所能做到的是那種前驅工作？

(4) 中國的塔和古城必有很多的趣事趣人可記。略敘你在最近十五年內所喜看的中國塔。

(5) 說幾種從合作得到的利益。

(6) 試述你所認為中醫可從西方學習的幾種重要事情。

(7) 今日中國學校所讀的是那幾種新式的科目？你能提議其他尚須必修的科目嗎？

(8) 列一張世界幾個偉人的圖表：

- a. Great moral or religious leaders.
- b. Great educators.
- c. Great writers.
- d. Great artists.
- e. Great architects.

9. Of the many contributions made to the world that are mentioned on page 36, which two do you think the most important? Why?

10. What do we mean when we say that China is "not yet crowded"?

(A)偉大的道德家和宗教領袖

(B)大教育家

(C)大著作家

(D)大藝術家

(E)大建築家

(9)在本書的第五十六頁和五十七頁裏，敘述過許多世界的名人，你認得那兩位最重要的？何故？

(10)我們說『中國尚未人滿』還是什麼意思？

CHAPTER VI

STABILITY AND PERMANENCE

1. A Country's Noble Sons and Daughters

One of the most wonderful features of the World War was the manner in which men and women in different countries supported their government voluntarily. Without waiting to be called they came from all parts of the country and offered themselves freely. They never hesitated to obey even when they knew they were going to sure death. They willingly laid down their lives for the safety of their country.

With such soldiers of war and of peace a nation can go forward. If you can depend on a soldier, you can lead him to victory. If you can depend on a leader, you can bravely follow him. If you can depend on a servant in your home, you can go to work with a confident heart. If you can depend on an agent, you can do business boldly and successfully. If you can depend on a buyer, you can sell goods to him cheap. If you can depend on an official, you will find it easy to work for the government. If you trust the judge, you will honor and support the law. If you trust your doctor, you have a much better chance to get well. What lesson is more important? What will do more for a country than to have the people always dependable? How noble will be the history of a people that respects the rights of other countries and gives to its own people just laws and leaders who follow worthy ideals and direct a pure and enlightened government!

2. Dependability of a People

A strong nation must have dependable people. They build strongly. Their bridges do not fall down. Their

第五章 穩固性和永久性

一 國家的高貴子女

歐戰最驚人的特徵，就是各國的男女，自動爲國家出力的情形。他們不待召喚，便從國內各處出來，甘願獻身效勞。雖明知必死，但他們對於復從命令，却也不稍猶豫。他們甘心情願犧牲了生命，謀國家的安全。

一個富有這樣的兵士，不論在戰爭或在和平時代，這個國家都能往前進的。如果你信託一個兵士，你可領他打勝仗。如果你信託一個領袖，你可大膽地追隨他。如果你信託你家裏的僕人，你可放心去工作。如果你信託一位代理人，你可大膽地繼續地經營你的事業。如果你信託一個買主，你可將貨物發賣給他。如果你信託一個官吏，你就可安易地給政府做事。如果你信託法官，你就會敬重並且擁護法律了。如果你信託醫生，你的病好的機會就多了。有什麼教訓比這更重要呢？國家有什麼事比有可靠的人民更好呢？一個民族能尊重別國的利益，供給自己人民的公正法律，依從領袖的高尚思想，指導廉潔光明的政府，這個民族的歷史多麼榮耀呀！

二 民族的可靠

一個強國必須有可靠的人民。他們建築得很堅固。他們的橋樑不會倒塌。

roads do not go to pieces. Their buildings stand. You feel no fear on their well-built ships. They keep things in good repair. They make things solid and dependable, because they are honest people.

Chinese merchants have won an excellent reputation for honesty. We hope that our people will become famous the world over for their dependability in every way. That will make our nation stand as if *founded upon rock*.

3. China has stood for Ages

The Chinese know what "permanent" means, if anybody does. Of all the ancient nations China is the only one which has continued until today. The Chinese have preserved their nation for thousands of years, while other nations have lasted only a few hundred years. Of the very ancient, written languages Chinese is almost the only one which is in use today. The Chinese have preserved not only their ancient history and literature but also their ancient language. The Great Wall is a very permanent thing. When we look at it we think of the things which last. We say: "Here is the ancient time still with us. Here is something which *has stood for ages and will stand*. It is solid, well built, stable permanent."

Two things have made China stand through so many ages: she has been protected from enemies outside, and she has had a stable character within.

In ancient time China feared no enemies from the east, because there were no great navies on the Pacific. She feared no enemies from the south or southwest, because the high mountains protected her. She feared no enemies from the west, because the desert protected her. On the north she built the Great Wall to shut out her enemies, and when they came through the wall, China was already so great and stable a nation that she was little changed by them. She absorbed her conquerors. Her civilization went right on just the same.

他們的道路不會破碎。他們的房屋堅立着。你趁上他們的牢固的船隻，也決不會害怕。他們把東西修理得很好。他們做的東西結實而可靠，因為他們是誠實的人民。

中國的商人因為誠實，贏得最好的名譽。我們的人民因為到處可靠，我們希望會得名聞世界。這樣，我們國家的基礎，就像建設在磐石上一樣堅固了。

三 中國已流傳了若干世代

中國人像別國人一樣，曉得「持久」這個字的意義。所有古國當中，只有中國繼續存在到現在。中國人保存他們的國家已有數千年之久，而別的國家只能保存到數百年。最古的文字中，到現在還使用的，幾乎可算中國文字是唯一的了。萬里長城是一件最持久的東西。當我們看到它的時候，我們就想到許多持久的東西。我們說：「古代依舊在此地伴着我們。這裏的東西已流傳了若干世代了，而且還要繼續存在着。這是堅實的，穩固的，持久的，建築得很好的。」

兩件事情使中國站得住那麼久：第一，對外它不受敵人的侵略；第二，對內它有堅強的民族性。

在古代，中國不怕東面來的敵人，因為太平洋上沒有龐大的海軍。它不怕從南面或西南來的敵人，因為有高山可以保護。它不怕從西方來的敵，因為有沙漠可以保護。在北面中國築有萬里長城，抵抗敵人，等到敵人越過長城時，中國已成為很穩固的國家了，所以於它並無絲毫影響。它吸收它的得勝者。它的文化仍照舊一直發展。

All that is different now. The ocean is not a protection, but a *clear road* for an enemy. China's great sea-coast is an opening thousands of miles long, and people of many nations land upon it daily. The mountains and desert are no longer a sure protection, because modern travel is fast and overcomes difficulties so easily that a country now *lives to itself*. The question is whether China is still a stable nation and sure to *remain whole and independent*.

Now what shall we say of the stable character of China's people? She has been protected by that. Is it also changing? China used to learn nothing from other lands, but now every school teaches the geography of the world, and every middle school teaches Western science, history, and languages. China used to allow no foreigners to enter, but now foreign people are all over China, and Chinese people travel all over the world. It used to be thought impossible to break through the wall of language, but now many foreigners speak Chinese, and thousands of Chinese speak English, French, and other Western languages. China used to know nothing of the *current events* of other lands, but now the news of the world rushes into China *by wire and wireless* and is published in hundreds of newspapers before it is one day old. China used to have only her own books, but now she has whole libraries of foreign books in Chinese and in Japanese and in other languages.

What does all this mean? It means that the ancient common culture of China is passing, and a new culture is forming. Will the new culture unite China as did the old, or will it destroy unity and stability? These are big, *serious questions* for patriotic citizens of the new China to answer.

4. New Learning in Old Europe

The Greeks of two thousand years ago were wonderful athletes, artists, writers, students and thinkers, statesmen, travelers, and even scientists, but the warlike

現在的情形便不同了。海洋不但不能作為保障，反而給敵人作為自由出入的道路。中國的大海岸開闢到數千哩長，各國的人天天都有上岸。高山和沙漠已不能永作確實的保障了，因為近代交通便利，排除困難尤易，因此沒有國家可以閉關自守。目前的問題，就是中國是否仍舊是穩固的國家，是否確實可以保全而獨立的國家。

對於中國的穩固的民族性，我們將有何話可說呢？中國是被這穩固的民族性所保障着的。這民族性也正在改變嗎？從前中國不學外國的東西，可是現在每個學校都教授世界地理，每個中等學校都教授西洋科學，西洋歷史和西洋文字。從前中國不許外國人入關，可是現在中國各處都有外國人，並且中國的人民也到世界各處去遊歷。從前以語言的隔礙是無從破除的，可是現在有很多外國人能說中國話，更有千萬的中國人能說英、法及西方的其他各種語言。從前中國不明白別國的事，可是現在世界的新聞，都藉電報和無線電傳播到中國，而且不到一天功夫就在幾百種報紙上刊出來。從前中國只讀自己的書，可是現在的圖書館裏，卻充滿了中日及其他各國的書籍。

這些事情是何意義呢？就是古代的通俗文化正在變遷，而新興的文化正在抬頭。這新文化是不是像舊文化一樣，會使中國統一呢，還是破壞中國的統一和穩固呢？這些都是重大的問題，是新中國的愛國公民要去回答的。

四 舊歐洲的新學識

希臘在二千年以前，有好多驚人的運動家，藝術家，著作家，學者，思想家，政治家，遊歷家，甚至還有科學家，可是好戰的

Romans conquered the world and *blindly covered up* most of the valuable civilization of the Greeks. The Romans gradually developed organization, and then wealth, rather than general culture and education. Then came the Northern barbarians, and they in turn failed to appreciate either the Roman or the Greek civilization. This brought Europe into *the Dark Ages*.

Through this long period *the Church* preserved and *handed down* much literature, a system and organization, and many high ideals. The Church taught Latin everywhere; so European scholars had a common written language. The barbarian tribes became educated and law-abiding and ready to develop a new civilization.

Then the Greek ideas and methods were found again, and the modern world began. Old languages were studied, books were collected, and new languages were developed. Roman law and order were established and altered until finally the West was under such rules as that of *the Code Napoléon* and of the wonderful French governmental system, of the English common law, of the American republic, and of the many *constitutional monarchies* of Europe and the widely extended republics of South America. Both the rights of the people and the protection of property were established. The earth was proved to be round, and sea routes to all lands were opened. Inventions came, first one at a time, then by dozens, then by hundreds, for often one great invention led the way for many others. Then industries developed rapidly. Transportation caused commerce to grow. Commerce *in turn* awakened the people of all nations. Wealth greatly increased, as did populations and the needs of the people. Knowledge was rapidly increased and disseminated; for inventions (such as printing) and travel and wealth and law and order all made learning easier and more desirable. *Education became the rule instead of the exception.* The Church itself grew and improved; religion developed, so that today the high ideals of the ancient teachers are more fully honored than ever before.

羅馬人征服了全世界，遮蔽了大部分希臘的可貴的文化。羅馬人還發展了組織和財富，忽略了一般的文化和教育。後來北部的蠻族南下，他們對於希臘和羅馬的文化，都一樣的不重視。因此使歐洲重入黑暗時代。

經過了很長的時間，基督教會保存而且流傳了文學，施行了政制和組織，發揮了高尙的思想；它又在各處教授拉丁文，所以歐洲的學者都有一種共通的文字。蠻族也受教育，也受法律的節制，準備發展一種新文化了。

於是希臘重新恢復固有的思想和系統，而文明的世界也就從此開始。書籍有人收集了，舊的文字有人研究了，新的文字也發達了。羅馬的律法和制度也成立而變遷了，直到後來西方都在些制度管轄之下：如拿破崙的法典，法國的別緻的政治制度，英國的和美國民主的平民法，歐洲各國的君主立憲政體，及廣泛的南美的共和國體等等。人民的權利和財產的保護法都成立了。因為地球已證明了是圓的，通到各處的海道也開闢了。發明的東西起初只有一種，後來成爲十幾種，再後來成爲百餘種，因爲一種偉大發明，往往引起許多其他的發明。於是工業也迅速地發展了。因爲運輸便利，商業也發達起來了。而商業又提醒了各國的人民。因爲人口和人民需要增加的结果，財富也一樣增加起。知識進步得快，傳播得也很快；因爲發明（例如印刷），遊歷，財富，法律，制度等等都使人們學習容易而多求知的慾望了。教育成爲普遍的例規。教會憑着自身長成而且改良；宗教發達着，所以今日的古代聖哲的高尙思想，比往昔更受人尊重。

So Europe had a new birth and came gradually into the life of the modern age.

5. New Thought in Old China

Shall we say that the same is true of China today? Yes; China is being born again. Everything is undergoing change, as it was in Europe; we find new thought, learning from abroad, scientific methods, industrial development, revolution, constitution-making, social changes, religious changes. Study the history of Europe and you will better understand the history of modern China.

But there is one great difference. No European name fits the change in China, because China is trying to do in forty years what Europe did in four hundred years. For example, the Western engineers have reached the motor car of today through the development of the cart, the wagon, the carriage, the water wheel, the windmill, the little stationary engine, the old-fashioned traction engine, the railway locomotive, the modern marine engine, the turbine engine, the electric motor, the tricycle, the bicycle, the pneumatic tire, the ball bearing, the gasoline engine, etc. The Chinese gentleman of wealth, however, steps from the ancient cart or wheelbarrow right over all that long process and into his motor car of the latest type. To be sure, only to ride in a motor car does not benefit the country very much. But when we study the science involved in a motor car, we profit by the long experience of the West. Did you ever stop to think how much science there is in one motor car?

So also it is with other modern things—with art and science, with laws and customs, with government and religion. China has many new things to master in government, in science, and in social welfare to keep in step with the rapid progress of the world.

Let us, then, have earnest and open minds. Let us for China's sake be humble learners both of the old and of

因此歐洲有種新的誕生，而且漸漸地走入近世的生活裏去。

五 古中國的新思想

我們可以說中國現在的情形和歐洲是一樣嗎？是的；中國是再生了。中國像歐洲一樣，各種事情都經過了變遷；我們所看到的，例如新的思想，從外國得來的學識，科學的方法，實業的發達，革命，制定憲法，社會的改革，宗教的變遷等等。讀了歐洲的歷史，你更可明瞭現代中國的歷史了。

然而有一種大不相同的地方。歐洲變遷的名稱是不合於中國的，因為歐洲是在四百年內改造成功的。而中國只在四十年內改造成功。比如，西方的技師要經過好多步驟，才能成就一輛今日的汽車，其過程是四輪車，貨車，水車，風車，小型機，舊式曳引機，火車汽機，新式汽船機，旋轉摩托機，發電機，三輪腳踏車，兩輪腳踏車，氣輪，圓轆輪，汽油機等。可是中國的富翁，卻可以從最舊式的四輪車或是手車，一躍而登最新式的汽車。只會坐汽車確是於國家無甚利益的。但是，我們若研究汽車裏面的科學知識，就能獲得西方的豐富經驗的益子。你可曾空閑下來想一想：一輛汽車之內包含着多少科學知識嗎？

其他新式的東西也是一樣，如美術，科學，法律，風俗，政治，宗教都如此，中國有好多新的事物都要去研究——如政治，科學，社會公益事業——俾可與世界迅速的進步並駕齊驅。

那麼，我們得有熱誠的和開明的心智。爲了救中國，我們要做新舊知識的虛心學者。

the new. Let us be eager to seize knowledge, but careful in using it in this changing China.

6. Destruction or Construction?

It is easy to destroy. It is difficult to build up. A Chinese proverb says, "*To complete a thing, a hundred years is not sufficient; to destroy, one day is more than enough.*"

Revolution is a destructive process. It is not constructive. It may sometimes be necessary before the construction begins, just as you may need to *tear down an old house* and dig up the foundation before you can build a new one. It may be necessary; but we must remember that it is destructive and that it *requires all the more labor to build the new if the old is destroyed by storm or earthquake.*

Destroying is easier than building. Has the breaking down of old government and old customs and old ideas in China been difficult? If so, it only shows how strong and stable were the old things! How great they were! How great, then, is our task of rebuilding! We need a thousand builders for every destroyer. Be a builder. Join the noble army of China's constructive men and women. It is too easy to break things down. Let us do the more difficult and heroic work of establishing things. We want China to stand.

7. Talkers or Doers?

It is easier to talk than to act. It is easier to talk than to think. We must think if we act, or else we may suffer from our action, but it is easy to talk without much thought.

The new citizen of China is going to be a *man of action*. He is not going to be *guilty of empty words*. He knows that people talk when they do not know what to

我們要熱心的去求知識，但在這個過渡時代的中國，必須慣於應用。

六 破壞呢還是建設

破壞容易建設難。中國有句俗言說：『成事百年不足，破壞一日有餘。』

革命是破壞的程序，並不是建設。有時在建設之前必須破壞，好比你要造一所新的房子，先得拆除了舊的，並且翻出了基地。也許這是破壞了，而且我們要化好多的人工去建設新的了。

破壞比建設容易。要破壞中國的舊政府，舊風俗，舊思想有何難呢？如果是難的，這僅僅表示舊東西是怎樣堅固怎樣結實了！它多麼偉大呀！那麼，我們建設的工作又多麼偉大呀！我們要千個建設家去做一個破壞者。做個建設家吧。加入中國的所有建設力的男女隊伍裏去。破壞事情實在太容易了。我們得做些更困難更英勇的建設工作。我們要中國站起來呵。

七 空談家呢還是實行家

空談比實行容易。空談也比思想容易。我們要實行必須思想；不然在實行時就覺得行說時的苦痛，但是只憑着空談不用思想的事便很容易。

中國的新國民就是能實行的人。他並不去犯說空話的罪；他知道：當人民不知道怎麼辦，

do, or are afraid to act for themselves. *Silent streams run deep.* The modern man is a thinker and a man of action, and with his brain he produces the great works we see around us.

The easiest sort of talk is destructive talk. What is the easiest thing in the world? There is an English phrase which says "as easy as rolling off a log." Dropping down is the easiest thing. Pulling up is the most difficult. We don't wish to be "on the downward road." Then let us talk construction and encouragement. Let us *turn a deaf ear to* the one who is always criticizing. Let us resist the temptation to say that things are wrong. Let us rather praise the good efforts we see, and *lend a hand to them*, no matter who is managing or how much better we think we could do it. Let us by *our word of cheer* promote every worthy endeavor.

8. A Construction Club

In some schools there is a gloomy spirit of discouragement. Everybody says that things are all wrong. The students criticize the teachers. The teachers criticize the principal. The principal criticizes the school board. The school board says it is the students' fault. Perhaps the one thing needed is to stop criticizing. Then the spirit will change. All will wish to work harder. All will be ready to do better. All will be encouraged where they were discouraged. Work will take the place of talk. Everything will improve. It is weak and childish to complain and be discouraged. We must not be that kind of man or woman if we are to help China in her time of change.

In some schools there is a custom of doing something good for the school every year, something that will be a permanent benefit to the school. The students sometimes build something with their own hands, or give something good to the school. They are builders of that school. They are doing constructive work for it and for China.

或者怕自己實行時，他們便要說空話了。靜默的河流一定是深的，現代人思想家和實行家，用着他的腦筋他創造偉大的事業，這是在我們的周圍可以看到的。

最容易空談就是破壞的空談。世界上最容易的事情是什麼？英國有句成語，「好像滾木頭一樣容易。」墮落是最容易的事。上進卻很困難了。我們不站在墮的路上，那麼讓我們談談建設和勇氣吧。我們不要去聽專門批評家的說話。我們拒絕消極批評者的誘惑。我們要經營有益的效力，我們要和他們握手，不管這件事是誰辦理的，不管我們以為自己比他做得更有成績。我們要用激勵的話，增添各種有價值的努力。

八 一個建設的團體

有些學校裏充滿了消極頹廢的氣息。大家都說事情糟了。學生批評教師，教師批評校長。校長批評校董，校董說這是學生自己的錯處。停止批評，大概是件必要的事情吧。這樣，便可改變他們的精神。大家才會努力工作。大家才會準備做得好些。灰心的地方現在得加上勇氣，實行的精神會代替空談。什麼事情都能改良了。怨恨和灰心是懦弱而幼稚的。如果我們要在中國正在改革的時候去幫助它，我們就不可做那樣懦弱而幼稚的男女。

有些學校裏的學生，每年都有給學校做些有益事情的習慣，這些事情求它有利於學校的。有時學生親自建築東西，或者給學校貢獻了些好的東西。他們是學校的建築家。他們將為學校和國家擔任建設的工作。

There are many kinds of clubs, and many of them are *anti-something*. Those have chosen the easy road of destroying things. Why not have a Construction Club? There would be great satisfaction in making things. It might build a boat, wall, or even a road; it might make a flagpole, a stone seat, a wireless station; a set of bookshelves, or even a complete set of seats for the assembly room; it might develop a collection of plants, or of insects, or of animal skeletons, or of coins, or of stamps, or of pictures, or even develop a whole library; it might put up a flag, or a clock, or some pictures, or a newspaper board with papers on it, or even a whole building, as the students in some schools have done with their own hands.

Can you not form a Construction Club? Perhaps the entire school can be one. Certainly you can be constructive in something and add a little real bit to China's stability and permanence. Guard against starting things that will be a burden rather than a benefit in the future. A school magazine, for example, may in the future be such a great burden as to discourage your successors.

In any case be optimistic. Just laugh at the man or the woman who talks discouragement. We are in China's new day. Let us, with her, be forward-looking and optimistic. Begin now!

QUESTIONS AND EXERCISES

1. In connection with Chapter III you were asked to tell the advantage of China's geographical position. How has this advantage been affected by modern progress?
2. Consult a history of Europe and compare the "new birth" in Europe with conditions in China today as to
 - a. New thought.
 - b. Learning from abroad.
 - c. Scientific methods.
 - d. Industrial development.
 - e. Social changes.
3. Compare methods of transportation in a Chinese city today with those of fifty years ago.
4. Compare a Chinese school curriculum of today with one of sixty years ago.

團體的種類很多，有的是反對什麼事物的。他們藉此作為破壞事物的捷徑。爲什麼沒有一個建設的團體呢？建設一些事物，就能獲得很大的滿意。一個團體可以造一隻船，一座橋，或者一條路，也可以製一根旗竿，一張石棧，一個無線電台，甚至會議室的全套座位；它能採集植物，昆蟲，動物骨骼，錢幣，郵票，圖畫，甚至發展幾個圖書館；它能裝置一面旗子，一口鐘，圍牆，報紙架，甚至一所房子，凡此一切，好似都是學校裏的學生親手做成的。

你們能組織一個建設團體嗎？說不定整個的學校就能組織成這樣一個團體，你們一定能建設些事業，增加些中國的穩固性和永久性。預防着不要做那些開頭困難，而不能發生後來的利益的事情。比如辦學校的雜誌，也許到後來會成一種很大的困難，致使繼續的人灰心。

無論如何，總要樂觀爲是。對於灰心的男女，你們可一笑置之。我們是在中國的新時代裏。我們要跟中國共同前進，共同樂觀。現在就開始實行吧！

問答練習題

(1) 在第三章中你說明了中國地勢的優點。那麼，這種優點，對於現代國家的進步有何影響？

(2) 參酌歐洲的歷史並比較歐洲的「新生」和今日中國的情形，例如：

- (A) 新思想的比較
- (B) 外來學術的比較
- (C) 科學方法的比較
- (D) 實業發展的比較
- (E) 社會變遷的比較

- (3) 比較今日中國城市裏的和五十年前的運輸方法。
- (4) 比較今日中國學校裏的和六十年前學校裏的課程。

CHAPTER VI

ENTERPRISE

1. The Spirit of Enterprise

When we think of the Chinese, who have carried their business and their homes to every country in the world and even to the little islands in the middle of the ocean, we wonder why so many writers have said that the Chinese people are conservative and not enterprising. Surely they have shown enterprise in business.

One of *the striking characteristics* of the modern West is the spirit of enterprise, of boldly attempting new and difficult tasks. While it is true that this quality does not belong to any one people alone, yet we may take America as an example and see how the enterprising spirit has helped the development of that new continent.

It was that spirit of enterprise that carried the people of America westward through the wild forests, over the great plains, across the terrible deserts, and so in a very short time civilized a whole wilderness. It was enterprise that brought money from abroad to build thousands of miles of railroads where there were almost no people as yet to use them.

In the last hundred years there has been an astonishing number of inventions and discoveries in the West. Especially in America these have been used in enterprises and have been developed by large business companies. As the result of these enterprise the country is covered by a network of railways and car lines as well as motor roads; there is a telephone in almost every house, even far out in the country; every child is given an elementary-school education, and even a college education is *within reach of* every young man and woman;

第六章 企業

一 企業的精神

中國人肩着他們的業務，帶着他們的管島，到世界各國去，甚至到海洋中的小島上去。當我們想起這樣的中國人時，我們就很懷疑：爲什麼有許多著作家說中國是守舊的，是沒有冒險性的呢？中國人確已在商業上表示出冒險精神了。

近代歐洲有一種特別顯著的特徵，就是企業的精神——勇敢地試驗新奇困難的事業的精神。固然，這種精神並不祇屬於一個民族，然而像美洲那樣，這精神是如何地幫助發展了新大陸。

美洲的人民所以能往西前進，穿過荒涼的森林，越過廣闊的平原，經過慘惡的沙漠，在最短期間開化了整個荒野，完全是企業精神的力量。這種精神又能吸攷外國的金錢，在人烟稀少交通不便的地方，築起幾千哩路長的鐵路。

最近的百年中歐洲有好多驚人的發明和創造。尤其在美國，那些大事業大公司都是拿這種企業精神去發展的。因了企業精神的結果，全國才佈滿了鐵路，汽車路，電車路；幾乎家家都有電話，鐘錶的機關也有；孩子們都受小學教育，青年男女則受大學教育。

grain is raised on so large a scale and handled by such wonderful labor-saving machines that now the price of daily bread is within the reach of almost every person; the streams are made to work, and great waterfalls are made to furnish electric light and electric power; modern scientific methods of construction have been used not only to build some of the world's greatest bridges but also to build the world's tallest houses.

American enterprise built the Panama Canal, which unites the Atlantic and Pacific water routes. The great difficulty was the danger from disease. It was said that *one man had died for every tie laid on the former Panama Railroad*. American enterprise combined medical skill, especially in preventing disease, with engineering skill, and used government organization to finance and manage the undertaking. It was in every way a success.

Someone has said, "*China needs a Roosevelt to develop her resources.*" Yes; China needs a *Roosevelt, a Goethals, an Edison, a Hill, a Cecil Rhodes, a Pasteur, a Northcliffe, a Lloyd George*, and a great many other men of large ability, strong character, and bold enterprise; and China must find them among the people of China, upon whom rests the responsibility of her development. Do all you can to encourage among your people such important qualities as that of enterprise.

2. Ambition and Enterprise

Everybody likes to see a young man or woman who is ambitious, who is not satisfied with the place where he or she is if there is a chance to do better, who is eager to advance, who is always watching for a chance to learn more and become more able to do good work. He is a poor employee who says, "I will do more work if you will pay me more." He is ambitious and enterprising who goes ahead and does more work without *calculating the returns*. He is the one who gets an advance in pay and position without asking for it.

大量的穀米到處播種，並用巧妙的節省人力的機器去灌溉，所以日常麵包的價格低廉，使人人都有購買的力量。利用江河發動機器，憑藉大瀑布供給電燈和電力。採取近世的科學建築方法，不但造成世界上最大的橋梁，而且也造成世界上最高的房屋。

美國的企業，疏濬了巴拿馬運河，因而聯絡了大西洋和太平洋的水道。最大的危險是疾病的危險。據說當初巴拿馬鐵路放置一根枕木，就得死一個人。美國的企業包括醫學的技巧，機械的技巧，尤其是防疫的技巧，這種專業的財政和工程，是用政府組織法去經營的。所以不論用了任何方法總是達到成功的。

有些人說：『中國需要一位羅斯福去發展它的富源。』是的，中國是需要一位羅斯福，一位葛鎊士，一位愛迪生，一位希爾，一位西先魯斯，一位巴斯特，一位腦士克立夫，路易喬治和其他許多力量大，品格好，勇於從事企業的人。可是中國必須在中國人民當中去找的，中國的發展責任，是全靠他們身上。盡你的力量，向你的人民，鼓吹這種企業的重要品性吧！

二 志向和企業

人人都喜看一個有志向的男女：他若有機會去改良他所處的地位，便覺得不滿足；他熱誠的往前進行，他常注意多多學習的機會，養成做更好工作的能力。一個末等的庸人，他老是這樣說：『如果你給我更多的工資，我就做你更多的工作。』一個有志氣而富於企業的人，他祇是一心向前，並不估計報酬的多少。像這樣的人，就是不去要求，也能立刻得到金錢和地位的。

A big exporting firm in a thriving city had in its office three bright young men, all ambitious and eager to get ahead. There was an opportunity to advance one of them, but which should it be? One noon, after a busy morning, the manager announced that the office would be closed all the afternoon—everybody could have a half-holiday. When he greeted his assistants the next morning, he asked each how he had spent the previous afternoon. One young man had been to the theater, the second had not done "much of anything," the third, with a happy face, exclaimed that he had gone down to the wharf to watch the loading of the big cargo of supplies which the company was sending to a foreign country.

Until he saw for himself, he had not realized how much skill it took to pack away hundreds of tons of boxes and bales so that no space would be wasted and no goods would be damaged. He had talked with the engineer, who explained that because of an improvement in their machinery they expected to be able to increase the rate of speed half a mile an hour and thus save several thousands of dollar on each trip. He had also talked with a weather-beaten sailor who had "sailed on every sea," and from him had learned some of the difficulties of stowing away cargo. It was that young man who was advanced. In his half-day of liberty he had learned some valuable lessons. He had been both ambitious and enterprising.

There is an old saying that Opportunity comes knocking at your door, but that if you do not open the door and take her in, you will find that she never comes again. An ambitious and enterprising young man or woman is eager for an opportunity to advance and is quick to seize it when it appears. Many boys and girls at this moment are standing about doing nothing while opportunities to learn, to be active, practice, to grow, to do things, are being lost. Others are filling every hour with the activities that opportunity offers them. They are enterprising and ambitious. Two boys in a certain middle school, occupied

在一個繁華的都市裏，有一所經營出口事業的商行，該行的寫字間中有三個伶俐的青年，他們都有志向，都誠心謀上進。他們當中只有一個人有升職的機會，可是升誰好呢？有一天，早上忙過以後，到了正午，經理宣佈下午放假——人人都可休息半天了。到了第二天早上，他招呼着問這三個青年，怎樣消遣了昨天下午。第一個回答說去看戲，第二個回答說沒有做什麼事情，第三個露着快活的臉容，說他在碼頭上看怎樣卸貨，這些貨物是該行運到外國去的。

他先前並不知道，裝幾千噸重的貨箱，在不佔地位不損貨物的條件下，要用多大的技巧，直到他那天親眼看見才明白了。他同機器師談話，他就解釋給他聽，因為機器的改良，他們每小時能把速度增加半哩，這樣，每開一次船，便可省下幾千塊錢了。他又和一個久經風浪走遍四海的水手談天，從他那邊他知道安放貨物的困難。後來被升職的就是那個青年。在這半天假期裏，他學了些有價值的知識。他是有志向而又富於進取心的。

古語說，「機會」來敲你的門時，你若不開門讓它進來，它就永遠不再來了。凡是有志向有進取心的青年男女，是候着機會預備上進的，機會一來，便能馬上把它抓住。許多男女好逸惡勞，不做事情，所以學習的，活動的，練訓的，生長的，做事的各種機會，一概喪失。還有些男女，只要機會一來，便時刻活動不已。他們確是有進取心，有志向的。某中學有兩學生

their spare time by translating a series of books. They kept at it for many months. At last, after hard labor, they finished the series and offered it to the Commercial Press, which gladly purchased it. A pocketful of money and a great sense of satisfaction were two of the rewards that came from their enterprise and ambition.

3. Invention and Enterprise

One day the owner of a small chemist's shop in America mixed together two common liquids, and found that the new mixture made a very pleasant drink. Perhaps many people had made the same discovery already, but this man was enterprising. He did three things: he patented the mixture, he advertised it, and he sold it. The result was that in a few years *his business was worth fifteen million dollars.* What was the difference between that man and the other people who had made the same discovery? What are the elements of his success?

Three things are important in such cases. The first is the discovery of something good. Many discoveries are made by chance, but most of them come from long working and thinking and searching. Even those made accidentally are usually made by people who are *working hard and thoughtfully upon some related problem.* Discoveries and inventions *laid the foundations of the modern world.* They are extremely important for every country. Remember that they come by hard work, keen thinking, and an enterprising spirit that *seizes upon the underlying principle* when it appears.

The second important item is the patenting or the copyrighting of the article. In the first place this protects the owner of the invention, discovery, name, book, or whatever it may be. He may make and sell it, but for a term of years no one else may do so without his permission. Under such protective laws people are eager to invent good things. Without them people become discouraged and say: "What is the use of trying? Some big company will steal my invention."

他們利用閒暇去譯一書卷。他們費了好幾個月的功夫。最後，經過努力的工作，他們竟把書譯完，交給商務印書館，該館也就很高興的給它買下來這一筆酬費和這一種徵心，就是從他們的進取心和好勝心帶來的報酬。

三 發明和企業

美國有一片小化學商店的主人，一天他調和了兩種普通的液質，發見了這種新的混合物就是一種很合口味的飲料。也許好多人已有這樣的發明了，但是這個人是具有企業精神的。他做了三件事：第一，他取得了這種混合物的專利權；第二，他登載了廣告；第三，他發賣了這種混合物。結果，不到幾年，他的營業就值一千五百萬元。這個人和別的發明同樣東西的人有怎樣的分別呢？他的成功的要素是什麼呢？

這樣的成功有三種要素。第一是發明好的東西。許多發明是偶然的，但大多數是從長久的工作，思想、研究得來的。就是那些偶然的發明，也是由於刻苦耐勞，反覆思索，在相關的某項問題上得來的。發明和創造打定了近世的基礎。它們對於每個國家都是非凡的重要。你得記住：發明和創造是從刻苦的工作，精細的鳳想，企業的精神——當它發現時就抓住潛在的原理——得來的。

第二種要素是取得發明物的專利權或著作權。在第一種立場上，可以保障發明者的創造發明，名譽，聲望，及其他各種利益。他可以製造並發賣那項物品在一定期間內，非得本人許可，別人即不能製造和發賣。在這樣的法律保障之下，人們就熱心發明好的東西了。如果沒有法律，人們就會灰心而且還要說：『努力有什麼用呢？大公司要竊取我的發明呀。』

The patent and copyright laws are valuable for another reason. Each new discovery is described, and the description is permanently preserved. There is no danger of its being lost. Before these laws were established, people kept their discoveries secret. A father passed on his secrets to his son; but sometimes the father died suddenly without telling his secrets, and the world thus lost them. Often, when you admire some work of skill and beauty, you are told that the process is now lost, or that it is a secret known only to a few. If it is good, it ought to be preserved and widely used.

There are now in China many materials, processes, devices, plants, medicines, etc. which *the whole world needs and is ready to pay for*. They ought not to be lost, nor should their use be limited. China and the world will gain if enterprising people bring them forth and make them available. Oil is an example of a Chinese product which brings to China riches from all the world. In 1935 China exported 46,458,583 taels' worth of vegetable oils and 53,568,447 taels' worth of oil-cakes. Enterprise of the right kind will develop hundreds of such sources of great revenue to China and of great benefit to the world. One department of the United States government recently employed an American woman for some time in finding out how Chinese bookbinders made a certain sort of paste. Pictures and books using this paste are not eaten by insects and rats. If this paste is so valuable, why could not some enterprising Chinese bookbinder produce it for the market and so benefit himself, his country, and the world? He can; but he must be *wide-awake and enterprising*.

4. Advertising

The third item in the success of the man mentioned above was advertising. Forty years ago there was very little advertising in the world except *the putting up of signs*. Even in America only a few kinds of business had begun to advertise. The three greatest advertisers were

專利法和著作法尚有另一重觀的理由。各種新發明都有一種說明，這種說明是永遠可以保存的。它決沒有失去的危險。在法律未成立以前，人們的發明總是保守秘密的。父親把他的秘密傳給了兒子；但是倘使父親忽然死了，來不及告訴他的兒子，世界就會損失這種發明。當你羨慕某項精巧的美術品時，往往就有人告訴你說製造的方法已失傳了，或者說，現在曉得這種秘密的人已經很少了。如果這發明是好的，便應該妥為保存，並且應該廣為使用。

中國現在有很多的材料，方法，計劃，植物，藥品等，都為全世界所需要，而且預備去購買。這些物品不應被埋沒，他們的用途也不應受限制。要是富於企業精神的人能把它們取出來利用，那麼中國和世界可同樣得到利益的。例如油類是中國的出產之一，它能使中國奪得世界的資財。在一九二五年中國運出口的菜油值銀四六、四五三、五八三兩，油餅值銀五三、五六八、四四七兩。正當的企業，可發展幾百種的富源，它不但可增加中國大量的收入，同時也有利於全世界，美國政府的某部落最近請了一位美國婦人，教她化相當的時間去研究中國釘書工人製造漿糊的方法。用了這種漿糊，各種的書箋便不致被蟲蛀鼠咬了。這種漿糊既那麼可貴，中國的富於企業精神的釘書工人為何不設法製造，銷售到市場上去，利己，利國，利世界呢？他是能够做得到的；但，他必須誠實而又富於企業的精神。

四 廣 告

上面所述的人類成功的第三要素，便是廣告。四十年前，世界上的商店除掛了一塊招牌外，刊登廣告的事情就很少見。就算在美國，也只有幾種營業的廣告。其中最大的三種。

The proprietors of patent-medicine companies and tobacco companies, and P. T. Barnum. Barnum, the first great advertiser, said, "The people love to be humbugged." Therefore he and those who advertised the medicines and the tobaccos deceived the people constantly and got their money. Barnum advertised wonderful animals, such as the "great bikorned amphibian bevolopus," when there were no such animals in the world. The advertisement of the patent medicines promised to cure all diseases, when, in fact, the medicines could cure almost none. In China, the early great advertisers were also patent-medicine makers. These first great advertisers taught the world that advertising promotes business.

Now advertising has become an honorable part of business. Modern business fights against dishonest advertising. The people refuse to deal with a shop that *lies about its goods*. Honesty has been found to be the best policy. The magazines and newspapers could not live without their income from advertisements; they are therefore careful about the character of those advertisements. Some magazines will print no untrue statements in their advertising pages and no advertisements of unlawful or immoral things. The readers demand truthful and high-grade advertisement. This cooperation between publishers and readers is *the means of raising the standard of advertising*. You can do much in this matter. You can write to your newspaper and magazine and call their attention to false or immoral or unpatriotic advertisements. Gradually such letters will bring about improvement.

Advertising is now one of the largest factors in commercial success in the West. Someone has estimated that America now spends each year \$600,000,000 (gold) for published advertisements. It is said that one foreign tobacco company in China spent \$1,000,000 in advertising its cigarettes before it began to sell any. One store in Canton is said to spend \$30,000 a year for printing alone.

Why does business put so much into advertising? How can a motor-car company in America afford to pay

是醫藥廣告，煙草廣告，和巴納蒙馬戲團的廣告。首先登大廣告的巴納蒙氏說：『人們是愛受騙的呀。』所以他和醫藥商店和煙草公司，就常登廣告欺騙人民，騙他們的錢。巴納蒙氏登着怪獸的廣告，如兩角的水陸兩棲的大牛，但是世界上並無這種動物。醫藥商登着包醫百病的廣告，其實連一種病也不能醫治的。在中國，最早登大廣告的，也是醫藥商。這些登大廣告的主人，他們告訴了世界，廣告足以推進營業。

到了現在，廣告已成為營業最重要的一部分了。近代的商業反對那種虛偽的廣告。人們也不願與自吹自擂的商店去交易。誠實是最好的政策。雜誌和報章如果不登廣告，就不能存在了；所以它們對於廣告的性質是極謹慎的，有些雜誌在廣告欄裏不登虛浮的消息，也不登不合法不道德的廣告。讀者所要求的是真實高尚的廣告。出版界和讀書界的合作，是提高廣告標準的方法。這個方法你們很能去實行的。你們可以寫信給自已所讀的報紙和雜誌，教他們注意，不要登載虛偽的，不道德的，不愛國的廣告。這類信件便能逐漸使廣告改善了。

廣告是現代西方商業的成功要素之一。有人估價說，美國每年所化的廣告費，需六〇〇、〇〇〇、〇〇〇美金。又有人說在中國創設的某外國煙草公司，當未開始營業以前，就化一百萬元為紙煙作廣告。廣東有一分店，據說單算印刷費一項，每年就得化三萬元。

為什麼商業上要化這許多的廣告費呢？為什麼美國一另汽車公司，在某週刊上登了一個廣告，要化

eight thousand dollars (gold) for one advertisement in one issue of one weekly paper? The answer is the well-known sentence "*It pays to advertise.*" People will not buy if they do not know what you have to sell and why they should buy it.

If you want to help promote good things in China, you should know something about advertising. It is still a new thing in China. It is scarcely past the early stages of advertisements of patent medicines, tobaccos, and shows. We must lift it to a higher level.

Another caution is necessary. It does NOT always pay to advertise. If it is not necessary, it is a waste. If it does not succeed, it is useless expense. If it is not properly done, it may only *kill the business* it ought to develop. It must be wisely and carefully done even when it is bold and extensive. Advertising is not merely enterprise. It is giving out information of use to others. It must be true to fact. Then it is a good thing. Advertise your own school. *Advertise the good qualities of your friends, of your city, of your country, of the world you live in.*

5. Motion Pictures

A remarkable example of rapid development by enterprise is found in the motion-picture business. It began only about twenty years ago. At first it was only an interesting invention. Very few people realized how well it suited the demands of the mass of the people. People who do not read much want to spend a great deal of time looking at things, especially up-to-date things, and they want stories. Some of those *who saw the future of the motion picture were not rich, but they were enterprising.* They went right to work and developed one of the biggest businesses in the world.

Some people claim that *Charlie Chaplin* is the most famous man in the world. Some declare that *after the school the greatest educator is not the newspaper, but*

八千元美金呢？這個解釋是人人所共知的，「代價就是登廣告了一下」倘使人們不知道你們所出售的是什麼，和他們爲什麼需要買這件東西，他們便不去買了。

如果你願意幫助中國提倡良好的事物，你必須明白廣告的關係。廣告在中國還是一件新奇的事呢。它尚未脫離醫藥商店，煙草公司和馬戲團廣告的時代。我們要把它的程度提高起來

還有一件要注意的事：登廣告不一定永遠是經濟的。如果不是必要，那就是一種浪費。如果不生效力，那就是無爲的浪費。如果登的不得法，反而使一向能發展的營業受損失。所以登廣告一事，務宜謹慎從事，單是大膽和推廣還是不夠的。登廣告並非單單是企業，它還可以給別人報告有用的消息。因此廣告必須合於事實。然後才算一件有益的事。你可以給你的學校做廣告，給你的朋友，你的城市，你的國家，你所住的世界的優美的特質做廣告。

五 電 影

企業中一個發展最速的特例，就是電影事業。電影事業的起首，是在二十餘年以前。當初，這不過是種有興趣的發明。極少的人明白它是怎樣美滿地適合大眾的需要。不多讀書的人，都做晝化點時間去看東西，尤其新奇的東西，而且他們也愛故事。有人以爲從事電影事業的人將來並不會發財，可是他們卻富於企業精神。他們立刻去經營了，於是就成了世界中最大的事業之一。

有些人說，卓別麟是世界上最著名的人。有些人說，學校成立之後，最大的教育者不是報紙

the motion picture. Some say that the Chinese people are learning more about the West from the motion pictures than from any other source.

Unfortunately not all that comes from motion pictures is good. If they teach and influence so many people, we ought to try to keep out the bad pictures and ask only for those of high grade. Much of what is learned from them is false. Some people who go to the "movies" think that all Americans are either wild riders and constant fighters or else only lazy people who answer telephones, write notes, smoke cigarettes, and *ash away in motor cars*, but do no real work of any kind. They think that Englishmen are always either doing something very funny or else haughtily standing about in formal dress or fine uniform. They come to think that Western women do nothing but dance and listen to love-making.

On the other hand, many Western motion pictures have also misrepresented Chinese life and the Chinese people. If a picture has a Chinese character, he appears *with a queue* and long finger nails, and usually plays the rôle of a mysterious, treacherous, vicious murderer. Many Westerners have come to think that the Chinese are mysterious and dangerous people. This is a great obstacle to *international understanding and good will*. We must fight against films that tend to misrepresent the Chinese, and we must guard against *drawing wrong inferences* about other peoples from bad motion pictures.

Motion pictures too often are stories about robbery, fights, and indecent people. Why can they not be pictures that tell some noble and interesting events, show the scenery and custom of foreign lands, reveal the processes and conditions of industries, relate historical episodes or important current events, or tell humorous but clean stories? People will get both recreation and useful knowledge from such pictures.

Here is a great business spreading all over the world very rapidly. Will it benefit the world? It ought to be

乃是電影。還有些人說，中國人由西方學來的東西，比任何方面學來的爲多的，要算電影了。

不幸得很，從電影方面傳來的東西，不是完全都好的。如果電影能教育並影響若干人民，那我們就該保存一些高尚的，取締惡劣的片子。有好多從電影裏學來的東西是虛偽的。有人看了美國電影，便以爲美國人若非粗野橫蠻勇於好鬥，就是懶惰的人，他們只是接電話，寫信，吸香煙，開汽車，並不作正當的工作。他們以爲英國人總是舉動談諧，趾高氣揚，穿着禮服或華麗制服的。他們也以爲西洋女子什麼也不做，只知道跳舞和戀愛。

再看別的方面，許多西洋的影片又誤會了中國人和中國人的生活。如果電影中有中國的演員，他老是拖着辮子，長指甲，並且還常表演着神祕的，陰險的，狠毒的殺人犯。因此好多西洋人總認爲中國人是神祕的陰險的民族。這是國際間的諒解和善意的大障礙。對於誤稱中國人的影片，我們必須提出抗議，對於不道德的引起人們誤會的影片，我們也必須先事防範。

電影裏常表演強盜，鬥爭，猥褻的故事。爲什麼他們不表演高尚有趣的事情，外國的風景和風俗，工業的過程和現況，歷史上的事實，重要的時事，或者是幽默和清白的故事呢？像這一類的片子，都能使人得到娛樂和實用的知識。

這是一種很快就傳播到全世界去的大事業。它有益於全世界嗎？
電影是應當

made a benefit. Public opinion can control it. We must meet enterprise with enterprise. We must guide such growing enterprises in China for the good of the nation.

6. Developing China's Resources

Advertising and motion pictures are only examples of what marvelous things enterprise can do. The radio and the aeroplane are other examples. You can think of many more. Notice that in each case there is something people need and are ready to pay for, then somebody enterprising and wise enough to put that thing before the people. Large industries are built up in this way.

China's natural resources offer just such chances for rapid development. Here are things needed. Who will bring them forth? The last generation lived and died and received no benefit from China's undeveloped resources. How many more generations of our men and women will pass away before these riches begin to be enjoyed?

Think of the waterfalls and the rapids whose power could be turned into electricity! Here is light and heat and power that millions of people might be enjoying; but it is going to waste every minute, while the people suffer for lack of it.

Think of the beds of coal that have lain for thousands of years under our feet, while we like our ancestors, need it to cook our food, to warm our houses, to run our engines, to feed our power plants, and to make our new manufactures possible. Think of the precious forests that are being burned up for fuel every hour, while the coal lies untouched.

Think of the great quantities of iron ore that are waiting to be mined, while China buys iron goods from England and America. Iron is the foundation of modern industry. The manufacture of everything is dependent in some way upon iron. If China is about to begin her great industrial development she must have iron, and

成爲有益專業的。公共的輿論可以控制它。我們必須用企業的精神去應付企業的精神。我們必須領導這種在中國正在發展的企業，藉以有利於全國。

六 開發中國的富源

廣告和電影不過是奇妙的兩個企業的例子吧了。無線電和飛機是別的例子。你還可以想出其他的例子來。我們應該注意，每種事業裏面，都有些人民所需要而且預備付代價的東西，因此有些人，很聰明的辦起事業來，放在大眾前面。大的實業就是這樣興辦起來的。

中國的天然富源，正是發展這種專業的好機會。這裏有好多人民需要的東西。誰將去開發呢？前世紀的存存亡亡，並未得到中國未開闢的富源的利益。我們這一輩的男女又要死了多少，才能享受這些富源呢？

你想，瀑布的速度本來是可以轉動電力的！光和熱的力量本來是可以使百萬人民享受的！可是這東西時刻都被耗廢了，而人民正苦於缺乏它。

想想埋在我們腳底下的數千年前的煤礦吧：像我們的祖先一樣，我們要它來烹調食物，溫暖房子，發動機器，供給主要植物的原料，製造工廠的新出品。想想那寶貴的森林，常常劈下當柴燒，可是地下的煤卻無人動用。

想想大宗的尚未開採的鐵礦，可是中國反向英美兩國去買鐵貨。鋼鐵是現代實業的基本原料，無論製造什麼，都是需要的。如果中國開始發展偉大的實業，她必須有鋼鐵。

she must have large quantities of it. Shall she take gold from her pocket to buy iron when she has her own iron under her feet? It might be far better for her to take out a little of her gold and employ some experienced mining engineers to develop her iron mines.

Iron and coal are needed together. The coal helps to dig the iron ore, and is necessary in turning the ore into iron. China has both in large quantities. *Mr. V. K. Ting*, Director of the Geological Survey of China, says that China's iron reserves are 677,000,000 tons, and that her coal reserves are between 40,000,000,000 and 50,000,000,000 tons. He adds that China is the only nation on the Pacific which has great coal reserves. She cannot advance her prosperity until she opens up this great source of wealth and *means of development*. Get out your geography, and copy some more figures to show China's undeveloped resources.

Think of the thousands of hills and mountains upon which sheep and cattle may be fed, or trees grown for fuel, lumber, nuts, oil, spices, etc. What could give an enterprising man more joy than to develop plains now covered only with grass?

Trees are a splendid investment. Some people do not think so, because they wish to get rich quickly, and they have no thought for their children and grandchildren. There is an old saying, "Be always planting a tree, for it will be growing while you are sleeping." China's floods are due partly to the bare condition of the mountains. Reafforestation, or planting trees again upon the mountains, would not only prove a good investment but would do much to prevent floods.

Most of China's agriculture has been on level land and much of it even on water-soaked land; but if the people only learn the principles of upland agriculture, the hills can be used also, and *that without the labor and expense of terracing*.

而且要有大量的鋼鐵。它自己的腳底下有了鋼鐵，爲什麼還要從國外掏出金錢去買呢？這不如用了小數的金錢，請一位有經驗的開礦師，去發展它的鐵礦爲好了。

鐵和煤是同樣需要的。如欲開採鐵礦使礦化鐵，非用煤不可。無論煤鐵，中國都有大量的出產。中國地質調查所所長丁文江先生說，中國的鐵礦有六七七、〇〇〇、〇〇〇噸，煤礦有四〇、〇〇〇、〇〇〇、〇〇〇至五〇、〇〇〇、〇〇〇、〇〇〇噸之間。他還說中國是太平洋上惟一產煤的國家。如果中國不開採這大富源，不知道發展的方法，中國是不能致富的。翻開你的地理，再多多地抄錄出幾種中國未開發的富源吧。

想想那成千的大山小山，上面可以牧畜牛羊，上面生長着的樹木可作燃料，材料，果實，油類，香料等。一個富於企業精神的人，一旦開發了一片長滿野草的平原，還有什麼事情比這更快樂呢？

種樹是最好的投資。有些人並不這樣想因爲他們想急於發財，所以不爲他們的子孫着想，古諺說：『要常常種樹，因爲當你睡着的時候，樹木是在生長呢。』中國的水災大半就是山上不種樹的緣故。所以上山種樹，非但是好的投資，而且可以預防水災。

中國大部分的農業是在平地上，甚至好多還在低窪的濕地裏；要是人民懂得高地耕種的原理，那麼山地也便可以應用，同時還能省去建築土台的人工和費用。

Our forefathers did some wonderful work in irrigation, but with modern construction methods, engines, pumps, *hydraulic rams*, windmills, and well-boring apparatus the development in China's dry regions ought to be rapid and far beyond the dreams of our ancestors.

The same things are true of flood prevention, of diking the rivers and of reclaiming and protecting the lowlands. Pumps and windmills are needed to keep the land dry enough to cultivate even when the flood waters are kept out. Enough valuable land is waiting for this sort of development *to pay off China's national debt* many times over.

7. Transportation

Look at the railway map of China. You can easily see that China has already planned a great national *transportation system*. Find the length of the roads from the north to the south and of those from Shanghai to the Far West. It is a big thing. Shall you not want *to have some small part in its development?* Men take great pride and interest in working in such great modern enterprises as a national railway or a transoceanic steamship line. There is something grand and inspiring in it even to the humblest worker. Did you ever notice *how important a little trash boy feels?* So every man in the employ of the company feels uplifted and proud to be in it.

Look again at the map, and see how much of that great system of railroads is already built and how much still awaits the enterprise of men of your generation.

Look at it again. You have not seen a tenth. Compare the map with a railway map of America, especially of the central and Eastern states. This map is black with railways. The large trunk lines are utilized for traveling hundreds or even thousands of miles, but there is also a great network of railways which serve to transport passengers from town to town, to carry produce from the farms

我們的祖先對於灌溉方面，曾有了驚人的成績，但是如果用了新式的構造方法、機器，抽水機，水壓機，風車，鑽孔器，中國旱地發展的迅速，誠非我們祖先所能夢想到的。

疏濬江河，開墾窪地，防護窪地，也都是一樣預防水災的方法。抽水機和風車是使土壤乾燥的用具，把水抽出之後就可以耕種了。中國最肥沃的土地都等待着這種發展，以償付國債，且尚有數倍以上的淨餘。

七 運 輸

看一看中國的鐵路地圖。你能很容易的看出中國已計劃了一種全國的運輸方法了。找一找從北到南路線的長度和從上海到極西路線的長度。這是一件很大的工作。對於這樣偉大的發展，你不願稍盡一點義務嗎？一般近代的偉人，從籌經營全國的鐵路和通過海洋的汽船蒸線，他們這種事業多麼榮耀而有興趣啊。就是最低級的工人，他們也有榮耀和興奮的事情在內。你不注意火車中的茶役如何覺得重要嗎？因此，公司的職員沒有一個不覺得興高采烈的。

再看看你的地圖，研究研究中國有多少大計劃的已經造成的鐵路，和許多尚待你們一代的富於企業精神的人去建築的鐵路。

再看看地圖。你還沒有看見十分之一呢。你且拿中國的鐵路地圖和美國的鐵路地圖比較比較——特別是美國中部和東部各部的地圖。美國的地圖都佈滿了鐵路而成爲黑色了。大的幹線通過數百哩或數千哩長的路程，還有很多網形的鐵路，運載搭客往來於村鎮之間，裝運出產品自農場至城市。

to the cities, and also to carry goods from the centers to the small places.

All this requires enterprise like that of a Chinese who was working on a railway in the northwestern part of the United States. He did such good work, his conduct was so good, and he showed so much good sense that he was made the foreman of a section. After several years he came back to China. Fortunately he was an enterprising fellow. In his district in Kwangtung there was no railway to the sea; he went to work and built one. It is a good railroad. It serves the people well, is safe, and makes money. It is a successful enterprise.

Many a great city in China will double its size when *its railways come*. Many a coast port will fill its harbor with ships when its railways come. Many a starving region will never again find food *too scarce and high* when its railways come. Many a *backward district* will come into the new life of China when its people can *get in touch with* the busy modern world. Many a little valley which now has surplus food that the cities need is shut away from everything for which people like to exchange excess food. Every such place, when a railway passes near it, will become a real and valuable part of the nation. Such a process is almost like extending the boundaries of the country.

But *trunk lines* and all the little connections are not enough. There must be train lines (or street-car lines) inside and outside the cities. There must also be a great network of motor roads. Then the country can be fully developed, fully protected by police, and thoroughly enjoyed. We must not forget China's undeveloped resources of beauty. We must seek to make China not only a safe and comfortable home for a great people but also a place of beauty and enjoyment. There are mountains, waterfalls, temples, groves, and lakes to enjoy. Only by good roads can we reach and enjoy the beautiful places in all parts of China. A good example of Chinese enterprise in the building of motor roads under great

同樣的又把貨物從中樞運往各小區。

這些事業是需要富於企業精神的一位中國人的：這位中國人曾在美國西北部的鐵路上服務。他有良好的成績，他有優美的品性，他還有豐富的常識。因此他就當了某段鐵路的工務長。過了幾年他回到中國來。可幸的，他是富於企業精神的人。在他的故鄉廣東，並無通到海岸的鐵路；於是就開始工作造起了一條。那條鐵路不但給人民便利、穩妥，而且還賺錢。這是一種成功的企業。

中國的許多大城，若有了鐵路，便能加倍其面積。許多海口若有了鐵路，也會充滿往來的船隻。許多饑荒的地方，通有了鐵路，食物便不至於缺少而物價也不會昂貴了。許多退化的區域若能與繁盛的新世界接觸，就能得到中國的新生活了。許多小山谷中的人民，他們有若干餘下的食物是城市的人民所需要的，但他們卻不能得到交換東西的機會。要是各處都造成了鐵路，這些小地方也就成爲國家真實可貴的一部分了。像此類的事業，差不多就等於開拓國家的邊界。

可是幹線和小支線還不夠的。在城市的內外尚需要火車路線，或者是電車路線。至於綢形汽車的路也是一樣的需要。然後國家始能充分發展，警察始能盡量保障，而人民始能完全享受幸福。我們不要忘記中國秀麗的地方。我們不但要設法使中國成爲全民的平安而舒適的家庭，並且也要使它成爲一個好看的快樂的地方。中國有高山，瀑布，廟宇，森林，湖澤等可以欣賞。只要建設良好的道路，我們便能達到中國各部的名勝區域去欣賞了。中國企業的一個模範，就是經過一

difficulties is found in Canton, where nine miles of wide streets were *cut through the city* in the year and a half between January 1, 1920, and July 1, 1921, and many more miles have been built since that time. In the last few years Kwangsi Province has built over 1400 miles of motor roads *linking up a number of cities*. There are now more than 500 busses running between cities and giving regular transportation service. Other parts of China are also making rapid progress along this line. In China as in Western countries prosperity will follow the development of a great transportation system.

China has not yet 8000 miles of railways, while the United States has 265,000 miles. *The latter* has, in addition, about the same mileage of good hard motor roads. China, however, has not nearly as many miles of motor roads as she has of railways. In the United States there is, on an average, one mile of railway for every 473 people, while in China there is one for every 55,000 people. It is said that China should have at once 50,000 miles of railways to unite and develop the whole nation.

Do what you can to encourage thought about this great transportation problem. Money must be invested in railways. *Nobody should stand in the way of* good roads. Join the Good-Roads Movement.

QUESTIONS AND EXERCISES

1. Tell the story of a Chinese who undertook a difficult task and accomplished it successfully.
2. Think of any ways in which you can apply the same principle in the work you do at school.
3. Why are patent and copyright laws valuable?
4. Write three advertisements of Chinese merchandise. Make a poster advertising some event about to take place at your school.
5. Think out a few ways in which you can now prepare to be ready when Opportunity comes knocking at your door. Tell the class about them.
6. Explain how all honest work can be made a stepping-stone to something better.

番困難在廣州城造成的那條汽車路，因為從一九二〇年一月一日起至一九二一年七月一日中的年牛功夫，那兒開闢九哩長的大街，自那時起又建築了若干街道。近年以來，廣西省造了一千四百哩長的和別的城市互相聯絡的汽車路。現在往來城市間的公共汽車有五百輛之多，並且還兼辦有條理的運輸事宜。中國其他的各處，對於汽車路的發展也有迅速的進步。中國和西洋各國一樣，等到大的運輸制度發展之後，當能強盛起來。

中國的鐵路還不到八千哩長，而美國的鐵路則有二十六萬五千哩長。同時美國尚有和鐵路一樣長一樣堅固的汽車路。可是，中國的汽車路尚不及鐵路那麼多。在美國，平均每四百七十三人中有一條鐵路，但在中國則五萬五千人中始有一條鐵路。有人說，中國急需五萬哩長的鐵路，去統一去發展整個國家。

關於這個運輸的大問題，你應當盡量地去思索一番。金錢必須投資於鐵路才好。誰都不會反對建設良好的道路。請加入優美的路政運動吧。

問 答 練 習 題

- (1) 述一個由克苦耐勞而成就事業的中國人的故事。
- (2) 舉幾種與你校內工作原理相同的任何校外事業。
- (3) 專利法和出版法為什麼可貴？
- (4) 寫出中國商品三種廣告，做一張關於你將發生的校事的招貼廣告。
- (5) 當機會來敲你的門時，想幾種現在你能預備的方法。試向校友報告出來。
- (6) 說明各種誠實工作為達到較好事情的理由。

7. Describe a motion picture you have seen recently. Do you think its influence good or not? Why?

8. Write a scenario for a motion picture that would give Western people a good idea of Chinese customs.

9. Give a few examples of what enterprise could accomplish for China.

10. Tell what you can about modern irrigation.

11. Can you mention some difficulties in building good roads in China and think of any ways of overcoming them?

-
- (7) 描寫你最近看過的一種電影。你以為它的影響是好還是壞呢？何故？
- (8) 寫一篇電影本幕，給西洋民衆得到中國風俗的良好觀念。
- (9) 舉幾個可為中國實行的企業的例子。
- (10) 盡你所知道的說明各種新式灌溉方法。
- (11) 你能陳述些中國建設良好道路的困難嗎？你也能想出消除這些困難的任何方法嗎？

CHAPTER VII

EFFICIENCY—ECONOMY AND SUCCESS

1. Enterprise and Efficiency,

Enterprise has a very important mate, whose name is Efficiency. The two ought always to go together. Enterprise dares attempt; Efficiency pulls Enterprise through to a successful end. Enterprise is bold; Efficiency is cautious. Enterprise sees the goal, and Efficiency finds the shortest and best road that leads to it.

Someone has said that an engineer, a really efficient engineer, is a man who can construct for one dollar what any fool can build for two. Anybody can build a strong bridge. The question is how much stone and iron and cement and time and labor he will require. A good engineer makes it strong enough, but not much stronger than *the greatest strain it will ever have*. That is of course efficiency; it is success with economy. China has many bridges to build and rivers to dike and roads to construct and schools to organize. Efficiency will make these possible, will do the work quickly, and will make further undertakings always easier and surer of success. Lack of efficiency will make every undertaking difficult and uncertain and, even if it succeeds, will make further efforts still more difficult and uncertain. Efficiency does not necessarily mean spending the least money, because if, by spending less, values are decreased, then it is inefficiency.

2. Two Returned Students

Two young men returned from the United States, where for some years they had studied chemical engineering and *had won university degrees*. They were cordially

第七章 效率——經濟和成功

一 企業和效率

「企業」有個很重要的伴侶，它的名字叫「效率」。它們是應該常在一塊兒的。「企業」並不怕試驗；「效率」拉着「企業」達到成功的路徑。「企業」是勇敢的；「效率」是謹慎的。「企業」看見了目標，「效率」找到一條最短最好的達到目標的路徑。

有人說過一個工程師——一個真正有效率的工程師——能用一塊錢做出任何庸人用兩塊錢能做出的事情來。不論何人都能造一座堅固的橋梁，所要問的是他需要多少石頭，多少鐵，多少水泥，多少時間，多少勞力。一個有才幹的工程師能建造的很堅固，但那樣的堅固並不超過它的最大的努力罷了。這自然是效率，也就是經濟的成功。中國要建設許多橋梁，建設許多堤壩，建設許多道路，建設許多學校。效率可使這些建設事業成功，工作迅速，並且也能常使將來的各業更容易的更確實的成功。缺乏效率，各業就覺困難，毫無把握，縱使成功，也必經過最大的努力，而且比前更覺困難和無把握了。效率的意思，並非一定說耗費不多，因為耗費不多，價值也得減低，於是就不濟事了。

二 兩個回國的留學生

有兩青年自美國回來，他們在那邊研究好多年的化學工程，並且還獲得大學學位。他們受了

received by their families and old friends. *Banquets were given in their honor* as if they had already really become chemical engineers. There was much discussion of their plans for industrial developments. Everybody admired their knowledge, zeal, and energy. They started to work. Both were full of enterprise, but only one was efficient.

The first young man, Chang, decided to develop a big glass factory. He saw that China was using a great deal of glass, a rapidly increasing amount of it. People were putting more windows in their houses. They are using more medicine in bottles and drinking more bottled soda water. *Lamp chimneys* were being used more and more. Increasingly people were drinking from glasses instead of cups. There was no doubt that the demand for glass was great and would be greater. There was no difficulty in getting people interested in the proposed glass factory. There was, it is true, some difficulty in getting them to agree to provide the money needed, but finally it was secured—a large sum. An organization was formed. Officers were elected and men were employed. Chang was chosen manager and given a high salary. He bought a good site and proceeded to build a large modern factory. He bought a great deal of equipment, some of which was not of just the right kind and had to be changed. Step by step he prepared to open his factory and begin work, but *in the process* he was spending money and producing nothing. So long a period of time was taken in this preparation that the capital was used up before the equipment was all ready or the raw materials bought. The company therefore failed and *went out of business* before it produced a single bottle or window pane.

The other young man, Wu, was interested in the increasing demand for turpentine, resin, alcohol, and varnishes. He therefore started a *little turpentine still* in his own home. He learned by experience where to get the best raw materials; how to distil the turpentine from the resin with the least waste and the purest products: where to sell the turpentine in China and how best

家庭和老友之熱烈歡迎。很尊重的爲他們設宴，好像他們確已成爲化學工程師了。對於實業發展的計劃，他們討論的很長久。大家都羨慕他們的學識，他們的熱心和他們的能力。他們開始工作着。兩人都富於企業精神，但祇有一個是有效率的。

第一個姓張的青年，決意去創辦一片大玻璃廠。他看出中國需要大宗玻璃，這種需要增加非常之快。人們的房子多開窗戶了，藥水多裝瓶子了，並且也飲瓶裝的汽水了。燈罩的用處也一天天多起來了。人們用玻璃杯飲喝也比用普通杯子增加了。無疑的，玻璃的需要是日新月異了。創辦玻璃公司並不難引起人們的興趣。不過要他們供給資本，倒有些困難，但是結果籌成了資本——大宗的資本。玻璃廠於是成立。然後選舉職員雇用工人，張氏被聘爲經理，並領高額薪金。他買了一塊好地皮，開始建築這所新式的大工廠。他又買了大宗的器具，可是有許多並不合用，必須調換的。他一步一步的復備開廠工作，但在起首他只是墊本，並無出品。費了長期的籌備，在器具尚未完全辦妥，原料尚未購買之前，資本卻已用完。因此公司倒閉了，停業了，連一隻瓶子或是一片窗上用的玻璃也沒有造出來。

另外一個姓吳的青年，他注意松香油、松香、酒精和漆需要的增加。於是在自己家裏，開始製造少量的松香油。他憑了經驗曉得往何處去買原料；怎樣從松香蒸發松香油，減少浪費的材料而得最純潔的出品；在中國何處銷售松香，用什麼最好的方法

to ship the resin to Singapore, where it was in greater demand; and finally how to construct a better still, exactly suited to the use of local fuel and native buildings. At the same time he was making money and *putting it by*. Soon he rented a house *with a narrow access to the river but with plenty of room for work and storage*. Here he built a large still. This was profitable at once, and he was ready to begin making one for dis-filling alcohol, which would be used with his resin in making varnishes. Thus step by step Wu's undertaking was built up, while step by step Chang's was destroyed. One was an efficient manager, while the other was inefficient; and although both had started with the same university degrees, one was a success and the other a failure.

3. Economy or Waste?

There are two ways of serving a meal (either a Chinese or a Western meal). At an ordinary meal in one's own home the food is put into large bowls or dishes and placed upon the table or *handed to each person in turn*. In this way each one may take what he wants. The result of this method is that at the end of the meal the bowl or plate of each person is usually empty, and whatever food has been left is still in the large bowls or dishes and may be eaten at another time. This is the economical way of serving a meal. The other way is wasteful. By this second method, which is common at banquets, almost all the food is served in individual bowls or plates, from which each person eats what he wants. The result is that frequently a great many servings are left half eaten and then thrown away. These two methods of serving a meal illustrate the difference between economy and waste.

China has not usually been considered a wasteful nation, but the fact is that her need for rapid and efficient development, is so great that her patriotic sons and daughters will have to practice every economy and make every effort to prevent waste.

謀往新加坡，以供大量的需要；末了是怎樣建設一個較好的工廠，適應於本地的燃料和本地的房屋的使用。同時他還賺了錢把它備齊起來。不久他租了一幢房子，有一條狹路可以通到河，但是房子裏面有好多房間可以工作，可以藏貨，就在這裏，他造了一所大的廠屋。因為立刻就獲利，他又預備建設一個火酒蒸溜廠，利用火酒和松香去製漆。吳氏的專業就一步一步的建設起來，同時張氏的專業卻是一敗塗地。一個是有效率的經理，一個是無效率的；雖然兩人同時入學，同樣獲得大學學位，可是一個達到成功，一個却陷於失敗。

三 經濟呢還是浪費

進餐有兩種方法。（不論是中餐或西餐）在自己家裏吃飯，總是把食物盛在大碗或大盆中，放在桌上，然後依次分給大家。這樣子，人人便可得到他所需要的了。這種方法的結果，就是大家的碗盆在飯後都空了，但那大碗或大盆裏的所剩下來的一切食物，還可留作下次食用。這是經濟的吃飯法。另一方法就很浪費了。第二種方法是宴會時常用的：差不多所有的食物都裝在各人的碗盆裏，人人吃他所愛的東西。結果往往把剩下一半未吃完的食物隨便倒掉了。這兩種用餐的方法，可表明經濟和浪費不同的地方。

中國並不能常算一個浪費的國家，然而照事實說來，它的需要急切而有效率的發展，既是那麼浩大，那麼，它的愛國的兒女們就該竭力實行緊縮，切戒浪費才好。

4. Economy in Quality

A man planned to build a house for \$10,000. He found that he would be able to rent it for \$1000 a year. That seemed to him a good investment of money until he carefully counted the annual costs, thus:

Interest on \$10,000	\$400 per year.
Insurance at 1 per cent of the cost	100 per year
Repairs (average for the life of the house)	200 per year.
Wear and tear (the house useless after twenty years)	500 per year
<i>Total annual cost</i>	<u>\$1200</u>

Of course he must have interest on his money. After that, what was the large item? It was "*writing off the cost.*" The wear and tear which cannot be repaired, which finally *brings the house down to the ground*, any and all forms of decay and destruction against which you cannot insure—these required him to charge about one twentieth of the original cost *against its value* every year. As a result he decided that this was not a very good investment.

What was the trouble? He did not plan to use good material and to build in such a permanent way that the house would (except for an earthquake) stand forty or sixty years. By spending a little more money for concrete and other durable materials, he could increase the life of the house (that is, decrease the wear and tear) *out of all proportion to the extra cost.*

It is just the same thing when you buy for fifty cents an umbrella which will go to pieces in three months, instead of buying for two dollars one that will last for two or three years. It is not economy to buy articles of poor quality. The only person who should buy cheap things is the one who is too childish to take care of them. Most people find it advantageous to pay more and get durability.

四 品質的經濟

有一個人，他打算用一萬塊錢造一所房子。他覺得一年可收一千元的租金。這對於他好似是一種良好的投資，後來他仔細的將每年所耗費的計算出來：

一萬元的利息.....	每年四百元
百分之一的保險費.....	每年一百元
房屋平均的修理費.....	每年兩百元
房屋的破遺（二十年後即不能用）.....	每年五百元
總 計	一千二百元

自然，他的錢是要收利息的。此外還有大的名目嗎？所化費的也得寫下來。房屋的破損是不能修補的，結果勢必坍塌，房屋的腐朽毀壞也是不能保險的；這些用度，大約每年要使他耗費原價的二十分之一。結果他才明白它不是一種好的投資。

問題是在那裏呢？他並不計選用好的材料用牢靠的方法去建築，使那房子（除了地震以外）可以保存四十年或六十年。要是他願意多化點錢，買些水泥和耐久的材料，便能增加房屋的壽命，（就是減少損壞）雖然耗費略多，但是房屋却也可堅固不少。

這和買雨傘是一樣的：你如化半塊錢買把雨傘，不到三個月就破損了；反之，你如化兩塊錢買把雨傘，那就有二三年好用。買品質不佳的貨物是不經濟的。只有一般很幼稚而不慎用東西的人，才要買便宜貨。多數的人都明白：多化點錢去買耐久的東西，才是實惠的。

5. Three Ways to use Things

Three men bought rice at a shop. One took his rice home and threw it at a bride and groom—one of the silly ways people have of teasing a newly married couple. The second cooked and ate his when he was hungry. The third planted his and received both pleasure in watching it grow and profit in reaping it when it was ripe.

Three men bought fish at a market. The first, *in obedience to the commands of a monk*, put his fish back into the river, thinking that he *was gaining merit* for himself, but in reality he was just wasting the time and labor of the fishermen. The second cooked his fish for his family to eat. The third put his fish into a pond and raised many fish from them.

Three men bought motor cars. One used his for "joy riding" until one day he carelessly *drove it into a carriage* and ruined both his car and the carriage. The second used his to carry himself and his two sons *to and from their business* every day and to take his family out into the fresh air of the country. The third used his to carry passengers at thirty cents each until he made enough money to buy a home.

Three sons inherited wealth. One wasted his. One used his. One invested his in productive enterprise.

6. Waste of Materials and of Products

China is famous for her habits of economy in materials, in purchases, and in the use of most articles. When an American cooks a chicken he throws away a large part of it. He makes no use of the feet, of the brain, of the wing tips (usually), of the entrails, of the marrow in the bones, or of the feathers. A good Chinese servant or housewife knows how to use all these *in one way or another*. One could name many large and small savings that the Chinese have learned to make in their use of various articles and materials. They utilize even the skins of oranges, which are generally thrown away.

五 使用東西的三種方法

有三個人在米店裏買米。第一個揣了米回家，把它撒在新郎新娘的身上——這是向新婚夫婦开玩笑的一種無意義的方法。第二個把米煮熟，等到餓了就吃。第三個把穀去播種，不但在生長時看了快樂，成熟時收穫起來也得到利益。

有三個人在市場上買魚。第一個聽了和尚的勸告，把魚放回河裏，以為他自己做了功德了，但是實在說起來，他是浪費了漁翁的時間和勞力。第二個把魚燒熟，給他一家人吃。第三個把魚放在小池中，因此繁殖了好多小魚。

有三個人買汽車。第一個坐着享樂，有一天，他駛得不小心，撞着一輛貨車，於是二輛車子都損壞了。第二個每天和他的兩個兒子坐了汽車經營業務，有時攜着他的眷屬到野外去吸吸新鮮空氣。第三個把汽車去載客，每人收三角錢的車費，最後他所賺得的錢正够買一所房子。

有三個兒子承繼了遺產。一個浪用了它，一個使用了它，一個投資做了些生產的事業。

六 原料的浪費和物品的浪費

中國對於原料，對於購買，對於使用物品都以經濟的習俗聞名。當美國人煮一隻雞的時候，他拋棄了一大部分。他不要腳，髒，囊，骨，骨髓和羽毛。一個聰明的中國傭人或主婦，都知道這些東西有各種的用處。一個人能指出中國許多大小物品，這些物品是中國人用各種剩下的原料製造的。就是一般人都拋棄了的橘皮，他們也能相當的利用。

There are, however, some kinds of economy that for the sake of China's progress *need far greater attention than they have received in the past*. One of these is the better use of certain articles and materials and of money—their use in such ways as to *give larger returns to the country*. An enormous amount of chemical material and paper is used each year in fireworks, to produce what? Noise. Still more valuable labor and material are consumed each year in incense, to produce what? An odor. A large amount of wealth still goes into certain drugs, to produce what? Sleep. A still larger amount—the price of a province—goes into tobacco, to produce what? Smoke. An amount probably still greater goes to buy wine, to produce what? Nothing but weakness. These are some of the wastes that patriotic Chinese men and women are beginning to fight against. When expenditures bring returns equal to their costs they are not wasteful; but people now consider the total cost to the nation itself, as well as to themselves, of all the small items that make up such great expenditures. They ask questions like these:

Does the purchase mean production, or only consumption?

Does the consumption bring either new strength or lasting satisfaction?

Does the purchase bring the greatest return that this amount of expense can secure? Is it the most for the money?

7. Is China Poor?

China is sometimes said to be poor—too poor to pay her debts or to build her railways or to dike her rivers; but the fact is that the land, labor, time, and money *which go into tobacco in China would be sufficient for all these* in a very short time. Cement and electrical machines and apparatus *are of great value to China*. In 1924 she imported 2,000,000 taels' worth of cement and 9,600,000 taels' worth of electrical machines and apparatus, but of foreign cigarettes and tobaccos she bought

但是，過去有那種不很經濟的事，要使中國進步，將來還須特別注意。其中的一種就是善用物品，原料和金錢——一定要用的得法，使國家挽回更大的利權。每年用大宗的化學原料和紙張製造蠶竹，產生了什麼結果呢？吵鬧吧了。每年耗費了極寶貴的勞力和原料製造佛香，產生了什麼結果呢？氣味吧了。大宗的金錢耗費在某種藥品裏，產生了什麼結果呢？睡眠吧了。還有更多的金錢——這些金錢有全費的代價——用來吧造捲煙，產生了什麼結果呢？煙霧吧了。也許還有更多的金錢去買酒喝，這又有什麼益處呢？不過衰弱吧了。這些耗費，是中國的每個愛國男女宜急起抵制的。如果收入能和支出相抵消，那便不是耗費了；但是人民現在正想着：各種小的數目就是大的耗費的總代價，對於國家如此，對於個人亦如此。他們所要問的好像是這些問題：

- (1) 購買是生產的意思呢？還只是耗費？
- (2) 耗費能產生新的力量或是持久的滿足嗎？
- (3) 購買能生產最大的利益嗎？能得到所耗費的代價嗎？這是金錢的最大代價嗎？

七 中國是窮的嗎

時常聽說中國是窮的。——窮到不能還國債，不能造鐵路，不能築堤壩；但是，照事實看來，中國耗於紙煙的土地，勞力，時間，金錢，已足在最短期間完成上述各項事業了。水泥，電氣機械和器具，對於中國都有極大的用途。在一九二四年中國輸入的水泥值銀二、〇〇〇、〇〇〇兩，電氣機械和器具值銀九、六〇〇、〇〇〇兩，但是輸入的外國煙和雪茄價值

53,000,000 taels' worth. It is said that China now consumes over 29,000,000,000 cigarettes a year.

China has some very valuable oil which all the world needs, but some of these are handled in very wasteful ways. They ought always to be purified properly. They ought to be of standard qualities, so that *all doubt of their value would be removed*. They ought to be handled in proper markets, so that each producer would get the maximum benefit from his sales. They ought to be *prepared for market* in the most salable forms so that the difficulty of getting what one wants would be reduced to a minimum. It is now common for Chinese to buy in China a sauce made in Europe from soy-bean oil originally exported from China. In shops in China there are for sale many imported varnishes which were made from Chinese wood oil exported to some country where it was refined, mixed, and put up in salable form to be sent back to China. Why can we not do the manufacturing ourselves? What is wrong when we have raw materials for manufacturing, labor to do the work, capital to build up our industries, and yet there is great poverty among our people?

8. National Economy in Business

There are now progressive companies doing just the kind of work which will make great savings in Chinese raw materials. Several companies are making biscuits and candies just as good as most of those imported. Some companies are canning meats, fruits, and vegetables to supply the great and growing demand for these things. Factories are *working up Chinese cotton into Chinese goods* for the Chinese market. Silk is now being handled by the same modern methods and machinery which are used in Western countries. Leather is being tanned in China and made up into shoes for the growing home trade.

A good example of utilizing a wasted material is found in the use of bamboo for making baskets. In southern

五三、〇〇〇、〇〇〇兩。據說中國現在一年要耗二〇、〇〇〇、〇〇〇、〇〇〇枝的香煙。

中國有很寶貴的油類，是全世界所需要的，但其中有的製造不得法，浪費的很多。這些油類應特別提淨，應具標準的品質，這樣售價不致發生問題了。他們應當善為經營，廣為推銷，那麼出品人就能獲得較大的利益了。他們應當預備各種銷售的方法，那麼需要這類東西的困難就能特別減少了。中國人在中國買醬油是極普通的事，不知這種醬油的原料，就是由中國出口的荳油，在歐洲製造的。中國商店出售入口的漆品，是從中國運往別國的桐油製造的。中國的桐油在外國提煉，攪和，裝成像樣的外觀，仍舊運回銷售。為什麼我們自己不能製造呢？我們有原料可以製造，有勞力可以工作。有資本可以發展實業。然而我們人民還如此貧窮，這錯處究竟是在那裏呢？

八 商業的國家經濟

現在有好多進步的公司，正做着經濟地利用中國原料的事業。有幾家公司製造的餅乾和糖菓，完全和舶來品一樣精美。有些公司製造罐頭的肉類，蔬菜，水菓，去應付這方面日益增加的需要。有些工廠用中國的棉花，製成中國的貨品，銷售給中國的市場。現在絲織品也用西洋各國的新法和機器製造。中國善於硝皮，製造皮鞋，以供給國內貿易發展的需要。

廢物利用的一個好例子，就是用竹製籃。中國南方

China there has been more bamboo than could be used. The finest long bamboo pole used to bring less than ten cents. Bamboo was made into baskets, but there were more baskets than the market could handle, more than people wanted even at the lowest prices. Then some shops began to make baskets for the foreign markets. They made them of *fine outside bamboo*, colored them nicely, and made them so that they could be packed one inside another in "nests" so as to be shipped economically. Then a five-cent basket became worth ten cents. A profitable trade was thus *built up out of a wasteful one*.

Such commercial economy is patriotic, for every item of it makes China richer and stronger. When a man saves, he saves the property of the nation of which he is a part; when he wastes, he wastes that property.

9. Getting Full Value out of Equipment

It is waste *to allow things to lie idle*. If a man owns a horse and does not use it, he is wasting a horse, wasting the money he paid for it, and wasting the nation's animal-food supplies. The waste may be little, but this shows what we mean by waste through idleness.

If a railway buys so many cars that a number of them *are unused much of the time*, it is wasting cars and wasting the tracks they stand upon. If a railway buys so few cars that freight lies idle waiting for cars to carry it, and tracks built to hold the cars lie idle waiting for cars to be run upon them, again there is waste. Efficiency gets the most value possible out of the equipment.

In the United States there are miles of railway belonging to a great many different companies, each of which has its own "*rolling stock*." Now suppose a railroad in *Georgia* is sending its cars full of vegetables to *Boston*; a road there is sending its cars full of fish to *St. Louis*; a road there is sending its cars full of shoes to *Alabama*;

所產的竹是取用不盡的。最好的長竹竿售價還不到一毛錢。竹可製篾，但市上銷不了這許多，價值雖然便宜，人民也用不到這許多，因此有的商店製造竹籃運到外國市場去賣。他們用最好的竹青，上美觀的顏色，一個個像巢形的套起來，以便於經濟的運輸。於是向來售五分錢一個的，現在可賣一毛錢。這種贏利的營業，是從廢物中利用出來的。

這種商業的經濟是愛國的，因為每項事業都能使中國富強。一個人的節省，就是節省國家的財力；一個人的浪費，也就是浪費國家的財力，因為他是國家的一分子啊。

九 有設備須得十足的利益

東西擱着不用，就等於荒廢。如果一個人有一匹馬不去用牠，他便荒廢這匹馬了，便白化所付的代價了，便耗費國家飼養的食料了。像這樣的荒廢自然不多，但這是表示有物不用，就等於荒廢的意思。

倘使鐵路購了很多的車輛，有好多不常使用，這就是荒廢車輛，荒廢行車的軌道，倘使車輛購的太少，貨物擱着等待車輛去運，同時建設好的軌道放棄不用，這也是一種荒廢。能從設備的東西得到最大的利益，就是效率。

美國有好多哩的鐵路是歸各大公司管理的，每個公司都有自己的車輛。比如喬治亞有條鐵路的車輛裝滿蔬菜運往波士頓；又有條鐵路的車輛裝滿魚類通往聖魯易士；又有條鐵路的車輛裝滿皮鞋運往阿拉巴馬；

and a road there is sending its cars full of cotton to a seaport in Georgia. Soon each road will have no cars of its own, and many cars of some other road will be lying idle or returning empty. This would mean great waste in idle cars and in the drawing of "empties." Therefore all the railroads in the country have adopted tracks of exactly the same ("standard") width, so that any car may go anywhere; and they have agreed under certain conditions to use whatever cars are available, no matter whose they are, and to pay the owners rent for them. Thus there is little waste of equipment, and the Georgia cars finally return by some roundabout route, such as Boston to St. Louis to Alabama to Georgia.

There is inefficiency if a boat is too big for its engine or the engine is too big for the boat. There is inefficiency if the engineer does not make the engine do full work. That is like letting your workman or manager sleep half of the day when he is fully able to do a day's work. An engineer has said that in the factories in Japan the machines are run at about 60 per cent of the speed they are meant to make. A big wheel revolves sixty times a minute when it might just as well revolve one hundred times a minute. A machine turns out sixty articles a minute when it might just as well turn out one hundred. This is waste through not *getting full value out of equipment.*

10. Efficiency and Public Service

The lessons of efficiency are not to be learned for private benefit only. They should make us better citizens. China is a republic, and in a republic it is very difficult to secure efficiency in government and public service. Let us *do what we can to carry these ideas of efficiency into all forms of public service.* It is easy to get officers appointed, but it is not easy to make sure they do their work well. It is easy to organize a street-cleaning department, but it is not easy to get the department to clean the streets properly. It is easy to get

又有條鐵路裝滿棉花運往喬治亞海岸。不久每條鐵路上面沒有自己的車子了，可是別的路上的車輛，不是被荒廢，就是空車回來。這種荒廢的和回來的空車是極大的浪費呀！所以國家所有的鐵路都採用闊度相等的（即標準的）軌道，使各種的車輛能開往各處；並且他們又商議過，在某種情形之下，不論看見那種空的車輛，不論車輛是屬於誰的，便可向業主出錢租用。如此，則設備上的浪費就可減少，而喬治亞的車輪最後也繞路回來，比如從波士頓到聖魯易士到阿拉巴馬，到喬治亞。

如果一隻船太大，機器太小，或者機器太大，船太小，都沒有用。如果機器師不能使機器盡量工作，也沒有用。這等於讓你那能做全日的工作的工人或經理睡去了半天一樣。有個機器師說：日本工廠裏的機器。只准達到百分之六十的速度，一個一分鐘能轉百次的大輪盤，現在只准它轉六十次。一架一分鐘製造一百件出品的機器，現只准它製造六十件。凡是有設備而不能得到充分的利益，就是浪費。

十 效率和公共事業

學習效率的知識，並非專謀私人的利益，却應當教我們做個更好的公民。中國是個民主國，在一個民主國裏，政府和公共事業要能得到效率，是很困難的。我們要盡力把效率的意義放到公共事業上去。委任官吏容易，可是要他們辦事認真便難了。組織一個清道機關容易，可是要那機關實行清道工作便難了。提倡減政運動容易，

up an anti-mosquito campaign, but it is not easy to get rid of all the mosquito-breeding places. Often the money is provided, but there is no good man to handle it; or the officer is appointed, but he has no money to work with. Often there are too many officers appointed and not enough money is left to carry on the work. Sometimes there are too many workers of one kind and not enough of another, so that some get in each other's way, and others have too much to do. If we can learn efficiency in our own affairs, we can help to make the public service efficient. If we can prevent waste of time, use of too many helpers, lack of equipment in our own business, we may know how to help to secure efficiency in government.

If we can be efficient in our school life and activities, we shall be taking the first important step toward that goal. Are the athletics of your school efficiently managed? Is every student committee an efficient body? Are the students in your school learning how to *have efficiency in a republic by having it in every one of their organizations and activities?*

QUESTIONS AND EXERCISES

1. What is WASTE? Can you think of any ways to prevent waste in your school? in your community?
2. Tell the story of three sons who inherited wealth: how one wasted his, one used his, and one invested his in productive enterprise.
3. Can you think of another example of utilizing a waste material besides the one mentioned in the text?
4. Discuss the question Is China poor?
5. Try to make your school life more efficient; for example, make and bring to the class a list of your weak points in English. Do you use your school time to good advantage?

可是要把各處的日子完全剷除便難了。往往金錢籌足了，但無適當的人材去辦事；或者職員已經派定了，但又缺乏財力去進行。有時職員過多，經費不充裕，亦無法進行事業。又有時某部的職員太多，而另一部的職員又太少，便發生有的空閒，有的忙碌的現象。我們若是能在自己的事業上研究效率，我們也能幫助公共事業發生效率，我們並能不浪費時光，不用過多的助手，不缺少自己業務上的設備，我們也許會知道怎樣去幫助政府得到效率了。

如果我們在學校生活和活動方面發生效率，我們必須採取最首先最重要的步驟去達到目的。你們學校裏的體育事項辦理得有效率嗎？每個學生會的執行委員會是有效率嗎？你們學校裏的學生，是否曉得怎樣研究各種組織和活動的效率而使民主國發生同樣的效率呢？

問 答 練 習 題

- (1) 什麼是浪費？你能想出什麼方法可使你的學校不浪費嗎？可使你的社會不浪費嗎？
- (2) 試述三個兒子承繼遺產的故事；一個怎樣濫用，一個怎樣使用，一個怎樣投資作生產的事業。
- (3) 除了本書所述以外，你還能想出一個廢物利用的例子嗎？
- (4) 詳論「中國是窮的嗎」這個問題。
- (5) 試努力使你的學校生活得着更多的效率，把你的弱點用英文製成一張表，帶到課堂裏來。你會把你在學校的時間利用到有益的事情上去嗎？

CHAPTER VIII

CONSERVATION

1. Conservation of Resources

The word "conservation" is not so difficult as it looks, for it is closely related to the common word "preserve." It means the saving of our resources. The adjective "conservative" usually means "slow to let go our ideas," but the noun "conservation" usually means "being slow to let go our resources."

2. China has Great Resources to Conserve

There are few countries in the world with so rich and deep a soil as China has. Her soil was in most places rich and deep *to begin with*, and she has kept it rich by the use of natural fertilizers. But, as we shall see later on, economy could be practiced in the greater use and the more efficient preservation of that soil.

Statements, both wild and moderate, have been made about China's mineral resources. Without trying to estimate them we can say that as yet so little mining has been done in China that very little waste of these resources has resulted. They still await development. Very few mines have been opened. The waste in some countries comes, as we shall see in another chapter, from unscientific methods of mining; the waste in China is rather in the idleness of these mines. Riches are lying unused. They are like the lost ships loaded with gold that lie upon the floor of the ocean. Unable to bring them up, you would not give a penny for them. They will be of no value to the world until someone discovers and raises them. So it is with China's mineral resources.

第八章 保存

一 保存富源

「保存」兩個字，看來好似並不怎樣難，因為它和普通的「保藏」兩字有很密切的關係。它有保存我們富源的意思。「保守」的這個形容詞，常作「保守我們的思想」解釋，但是「保存」這個名詞，卻又常作「保存我們的富源」解釋。

二 中國有鉅大的富源可保存

世界上祇有少數的國家，它們的地土能像中國一樣肥沃一樣深。中國的地土，好多地方起初就是肥而深的；它施用了天然的肥料，去保守着肥沃。可是，經濟的力量，能使中國的地土更有用處，更有好的保存方法，這件事我們以後就能說明。

關於中國的礦產，有人說多，亦有人說少。這我們且不必去評價，但是我們可以說中國礦業頗不發達，所以富源的浪費也就不多。這些富源正待開發，已經開發的數目甚少。別的國家的浪費，是因為不用科學方法去開採，關於這一層，我們可以參看另外一章。至於中國約浪費，根本就在不去開採。財富深埋土中，並未使用，好似失蹤的船隻，滿載金子沉沒海中。如果不把它撈起來，這是一錢不值的。如果不被人發見而去提起了它，對於世界亦一無所用。中國礦產的富源也是如此。

This generation of Chinese may die just as poor as the last. The next generation may open the mines and enrich themselves and their nation, or else they may leave these resources untouched and in their turn pass away just as poor as is this generation because of its neglect of great opportunities.

A word should be said here on *both sides of the question* of the conservation of mineral resources. It is wise to open the mines in such ways, as to get the greatest output for the money and labor expended; to lose no ore, coal, oil, etc. through wasteful handling; to market these to the best advantage; and to see that the benefits come to the public, to whom the mines really belong, rather than to a few enterprising companies or officials who secure mining rights at small cost. On the other hand, conservation may go so far as to leave the valuable ore unmined and so let it remain only as "potential" wealth.

3. Natural Objects to be Preserved

In America the conservation of resources has come to mean chiefly the preservation and right use of forests and streams. Some of the great trees of California are over two thousand years old, and a single one at its base is almost or quite as large as your classroom. The whole nation takes pride in such interesting things as these trees, and wants to have them preserved. Therefore the government has taken charge of many sections of the country containing such beautiful and interesting things as these big trees. Other natural beauties are the lovely waterfalls, deep gorges, hot springs, high mountain peaks, clear lakes, natural bridges, and large caves. These features are preserved in public parks. No one may use these parks for any business purposes except by permission. The government polices them and keeps the roads in good condition. If they were not so protected, it would not be long before the trees would be cut, the waterfalls would be used, and the land would be

這一代的中國人，死的時候也許和上代的一樣窮苦。下一代的中國人能開採礦產，也許可以富己富國，否則若仍不去動它，因而失了良好機會，也就和這一代的人一樣窮了。

關於保存礦產的富源問題，這裏有一句應說的話。開礦的方法最好是這樣：要從耗費金錢和人工中得到最大的生產額；不要經過耗費的手續，不要喪失鐵，煤，油等礦產；要運往市場出售最高的價格；要把利益讓給大眾——礦產確屬於大眾的——不可歸於少數經營業性質的公司或官吏，因為他們只要稍許化費點錢，就能得到開採權了。在另一方面，保存的意思，是不開發寶貴的富源，而祇讓它保藏在地下。

三 保存天然的作品

在美國，保存富源的意思，大抵是指保存和善用森林和河流。加里佛尼亞州的大樹，有的竟在兩千年以上，其中一個樹根差不多有你們的課堂那麼大。全國都誇耀着這樣有趣的樹，而且要去保存它們。所以政府管理着許多像大樹一樣優秀一樣有趣的地方。其他的天然美景，有可愛的瀑布，深峽，溫泉，高山，清幽的湖澤，天然的橋梁，和大的山洞。這些佳蹟都保存在公園裏。非經准許，人人不得利用公園作為營業處所。政府派兵保護，並且維持道路的秩序。如果它們不這樣被保護着，那麼，不久樹就要被砍伐，瀑布就要被糟塌，地方也要充作

taken for ordinary use. But these things of interest and beauty are too good for common uses. They are for the enjoyment of the whole people.

4. The Forests must be Preserved

Conservation is the protection of such things as the forests and streams so that they can be put to ordinary uses. If they are not protected, they are wasted or even entirely ruined or destroyed. China's loss in forests and, *as a consequence of this loss, from floods and droughts has been enormous*, perhaps greater than anywhere else in the world. Probably the forests were first burned off because they gave protection to enemies and to dangerous wild animals. Then the constant cutting for fuel and timber kept them from growing up again and still further reduced the large forests which remained. *Bare hills are cut into by the water that runs down them*, especially where very heavy rains come after a long dry season. Trees have difficulty in getting started, even when people plant and protect them. The barer the hills become, the drier the seasons are; and the drier the seasons, the more the water cuts away the hills *when the rain does come*. The people suffer increasingly from droughts, from sudden floods, and from the loss of good soil washed away or covered up with sand. Therefore the preservation of the forests means the preservation of the plains and of well-distributed rainfall. Reafforestation (or the planting again of lost forests) will improve China's climate and soil, and will increase her streams and wood supply.

5. The Forests must be Properly Used

France and Germany have gone much further than America in the care of forests. In America the forest rangers give their attention chiefly to the prevention of fires. The forests are so big, so largely uninhabited, and at times so dry that once a fire is started it often does

尋常的用途了。可是像這樣有趣的笑題的佳跡，若充作普通用途，未免太可惜。因為它們是給全國民衆娛樂的。

四 森林必須保存

保存的意思，就是保護森林和河流一類的東西，使成爲尋常的用途。若不加保護，便被荒廢甚至完全毀滅了。中國森林的損失——損失的結果是造成了旱災水災——也許比全世界的任何地方都重大。起初大概因爲森林可以保護敵人和猛獸的緣故，所以就給它們燒掉了。後來又常砍下當柴燒當材料用，以致不能再生長，並且大的樹木逐漸減少。空山被水沖擊，尤其經過長期的天旱，大雨忽然降落的地方。雖然人民去種植樹木，保護樹木，但樹木在初時是不易生長的。山上的樹木愈少，天氣也愈乾燥，天氣愈乾燥，下雨的時候，山被水沖毀也愈厲害。人民也愈要受到旱災，水災，及良土爲水所沖或被沙泥掩沒的損失。所以保存森林的意思，就是保全平原和調濟雨量。重造森林可以改良中國的氣候和地土，並且還能增加河流和木材的供給。

五 森林必須有正當用途

關於管理森林，法德兩國比美國還周到。美國的森林管理者僅注意防範火災。因爲那邊的森林是那麼叢密，而居住的人又是那麼稀少。如果天氣乾燥，而且起火的時候

millions of dollars' worth of damage before it can be stopped *on its destructive path*.

When an American company decides to cut down its forests and to bring the lumber to market, the process is very interesting. It used to be done in winter, because the men worked better then and because the melting of the snow in the spring would carry the logs down to the sawmills on the rivers. Now railways are used more, and the sawmills are taken right into the forests. There the waste wood is used for fuel in the sawmills, and the good sawed lumber is shipped out ready for market. Now all this may be very efficiently done, but often there is one great waste that is not permitted by the more economical governments of France and Germany. When a forest is cut, it ought to lose only the big trees. The young trees ought not to be injured. The branches that have been trimmed from the trees after they are cut down ought not to be left where they will easily catch fire or hinder the new growth. Where open places are left by the cutting, new trees should be planted, not just old stumps left to grow brush. This kind of care results in forests which will last forever, conserve the soil and rainfall, and always be furnishing fuel and lumber and other forest products.

6. A Sad Story

One autumn a group of boys and teachers from a school in China camped out for several days in a certain forest upon a mountain side. The smell of the pines was sweet; The ground was like a clean carpet; a stream of delicious water ran down where they had their camp kitchen and bathing places; and at night everybody slept soundly *to the music of the breeze* in the pine trees. It was a delightful spot, although the trees were small—so small that beds, swung between them, almost pulled some of the trees over. The campers thought, however, about the value of that young forest; and of the good camps the school would have there year after year as the trees grew

倘不立刻把災區處理，就往往有百萬金以上的損失。

美國的森林公司決定伐下森林把木材運往市場的時候，進行的手續是很有趣的，這件事是在冬天舉行，一來因為那時工人可增加工作的效率，二來因為春天的雪溶解了，就能把木頭順水沖到沿河的鋸木廠。現在運輸多利用鐵路了，鋸木廠也就移到森林中間。廢棄的木頭充作鋸木廠的燃料，有用的材料預備運往市場。這些事都辦得很有成績，但有一種大的浪費是法德兩國經濟的政府所不贊同的。砍伐森林只能犧牲大的樹木。小樹是不應該損傷的。小樹上砍下來的枝桠，不可留在原處，以免發生火災或是阻礙新樹的生長。在樹木被砍下的那塊空地，宜種新樹，不應留下老根蔓生野草。這種保護法，結果能使樹木永遠存在，使全地土和雨量，繼續供給燃料和木材及其他森林中的出產品。

六 一個傷心的故事

一年的秋天，中國某學校的一隊師生，在山坡上的樹木中紮營露宿了幾天。松樹發出芬芳的氣息，草原宛如雅潔的地氈；清澈的河水自高流下，就在那兒他們作為煮飯和洗澡的地方；到了夜間，大家喜歡聽着林中清風的音樂而熟睡了。這是個快樂的地方，雖然林木還很幼小——幼小得幾乎被吊牀曳下來。可是，露宿的人想着這怎小樹木的價值，想着等待滋長時，學校可以年年到此地旅來行

larger. They were careful about their fires. They did not injure the trees.

The next year that school camped there again. What do you think they found? Not one tree, not even the smallest, stood on that mountain side! The price of fuel having risen for some reason, the villagers could not resist the temptation to cut rather than wait; and when they cut, they cut all and failed to plant again. Thus we see that China needs much patriotic service in the matter of conservation of forests and reafforestation. Do you plant trees on *Arbor Day*? You have already learned much about China's plans for planting trees on mountains and along railways. Write to the proper officer of your province and ask him what he is doing in reafforestation this year.

7. Streams are Valuable

Although there are many ways in which streams are valuable, the value is great in every case in proportion to the reliability of *constant character* of the stream. It should have about the same depth all the time to be perfect. It should neither go dry nor overflow. It should neither become too shallow for use nor so high as to be dangerous. The presence of forests is one of the most important factors in the preservation of good streams. However, as in the case of forests, the government and people must cooperate to protect and improve the streams. They must be properly diked. They must be kept deep and clear of obstructions. They must be kept free from poisons that would destroy the fish, and free from anything that would interfere with traffic. They must be properly guarded and marked for navigation. Dams and locks may be needed. Power sites must be properly disposed of. All this, again, demands true patriotic service. How can such things be accomplished if the government and people do not cooperate to these ends? What will make them cooperate but a strong and

所以他們然火燒時很是謹慎，並不損傷樹木。

第二年，學校又在那邊築營了。你想他們看看的是什麼？山坡上一株樹也沒有，就是最小的也沒有了？因為柴價爲了某種原因高漲，而村人又不能待其跌價，坐失機會，便把樹木砍伐了；當他們砍伐的時候，是一株也不留的，而且砍了之後又不再種新樹。由此我們可以看出，中國需要保存森林和重植森林的愛國事業。你們在植樹節種樹嗎？你們已知道中國要在高山上和在路旁種樹的計劃了。寫封信給你本省的官長，問問他本年植林的計劃。

七 河流是寶貴的

河流雖然有好多寶貴的地方，但價值的大小，是以它的可靠性和永久性爲比例的。它必須終年終月有一樣的深度。它必須避免過於乾燥過於高漲的弊病。它必須沒有太淺太深的缺點；太淺不能行駛船隻，太深則易發生危險。森林的存在，就是保存好的河流的最重要的原素。但是爲了森林，政府與人民亦必合作去保護去改良河流。河流宜築堤壩，宜常保留水的深度而排去淤塞的東西，宜清除有害於魚類的毒質，宜拋開有礙交通的物件。此外也宜有相當保護而劃清航行的界線。河壩與水閘有時很需要。水力的位置必須善爲處理。這些，都需要真正愛國的工作。像這樣的事業，要不是政府和人民通力合作，怎能成功呢？除了強固的有意識

intelligent sentiment in favor of such national public work? Each one of us can help develop this patriotic sentiment and can become more intelligent upon these important matters.

8. Keeping Rivers within Dikes

The diking of the streams is a kind of work that has been done in China for ages. There are good modern ways of diking which make permanent banks that neither give way in flood times nor are washed down gradually by the waves from launches or steamers. Dikes should be safeguarded by tree-planting and by secondary dikes behind. In all this work, which everybody agrees is for the good of all, the difficulty is merely in getting coöperation in work or finance and in getting competent official direction. The determination upon the part of leaders to continue to insist upon such work until it is done will in time bring it all about. Two cautions, however, are necessary. Coöperation in finance or work and efficient management must be upon a scale large enough to prevent the cost from falling upon one community while the benefit goes to another; and such work must be according to a large plan worked out by scientific men after surveys of whole river basins. That is why the government of China has established the National Conservancy and Irrigation Bureau, which coöperates with and assists local and provincial organizations. If you wish to learn of some of the wonderful plans and operations of such organizations, read the report of the Shanghai Conservancy Board, of the American Red Cross in China, the Kwangtung Conservancy Board, and of Sun Yat-Sen in his book on the development of rivers and harbors in China. If there is such a report for your own region, get it, study it, and discuss it, if possible, in the classroom. *Closely connected with all this is our next subject.*

的愛護國家公共事業的熱忱以外，還有什麼方法能使政府和人民通力合作呢？我們大家都應發揚愛國的熱誠，並且在這些重要事業上增加更多的知識。

八 使河流在堤壩裏

江河築壩這種工作，在幾世紀以前中國就實行了。好的新式築壩方法，可使河堤永遠牢固，水災發生時既不會崩潰，大槓或輪船經過時也不會被泛起的波浪沖倒。河壩須種樹木或在後邊建築副堤以事保護。這種工作誰也知道是有益的，所困難的全在勞力和財力的合力和取得官方的正當的指導。領袖方面須有始終如一的決心，來維持這工作，直到完成為止，這樣便有可觀的成績了。但有兩個注意之點，是必要的；財力或勞力的合作和相宜的管理，須有巨大的規模，以免由這個社會負責而利潤倒反歸於別個社會；而且這種工作必須先由科學家測量全部河身，然後依照大計劃去實行建築。所以中國的政府設立全國水利局，協助區立和省立的分局。如果你要曉得這些機關的偉大計劃和事業，可讀上海疏濬局，美國駐華紅十字會，廣東疏濬局的報告，與孫中山先生所著的中國濬河計劃和設立軍港的計劃。假使你本鄉也有這類報告，要是可能的話，就去拿來在課堂裏研讀一下。與這件事有密切關係的，就是下面的一課。

9. Transportation by Streams

The diking of a river helps transportation by keeping the channel in the same place and keeping it deep. There are other important tasks in connection with keeping the streams *open and safe for navigation*. Maps must be made and frequently corrected, for the channels often change. Pilots must be examined, in order that boats can be required to carry good pilots for the protection of passengers. Boats also must be licensed, so that only safe ones may be permitted to use the streams. *Marks by day and lights by night* must always be maintained wherever it is necessary to show the channels. Landing places must be provided and cared for. Obstructions must be removed. Pirates must be suppressed.

To preserve a good stream is equal to building a good railroad.

10. Streams give Food and Drink

A paper-mill company proposed to build a mill upon the bank of a small river. The people there knew that the mill wanted *trees to make paper of* and a stream into which to pour the waste from the mill. Knowing that this meant the loss of the forest and the spoiling of the river, they *declined the proffered mill*. A town not far away was more "businesslike." The people there said that this was a *good opportunity for development*. They invited the paper-mill company to locate there. At that place were forests and the headwaters of a beautiful and famous river. The mill was built. The trees were cut. The poisonous wastes from the mill were poured into the clear waters of that stream until the fish died and the river all across the state became black and foul.

A river is a thing of beauty, a place of pleasure, a health resort, a water supply, and a source of food. For all these purposes it should be kept as clean as possible. Every ordinary stream is a home for fish, but without any protection some kinds of fish are easily destroyed.

九 河流上的運輸

建築河壩，可使水道穩定，並能常保水的深度，實助運輸便利不少。關於開放河流，安全航行，尚有其他重要的連帶工作。地圖是要靈活的：而且時常應該校正的，因為水道常有改變的時候。舵工須經考驗，因為船隻的來往，須有好的舵工始能保障旅客的安全。船隻必須領有執照：只有平穩的船才可在江面上通行。在必須指明水道的地方，白天宜做標記，黑夜須放燈光。上岸的地方應有設備和照料。障礙的東西必須移去。海盜必須剿滅。

保存一條好的河流就等於建造一條好的鐵路。

十 河流供給食品 and 飲料

有一片造紙公司，打算在一條小河的岸上建築一所工廠。近河的人們都知道工廠需用樹木造紙，並且也需要一條傾倒工廠廢物的河流。他們知道這是樹林的損失和河流的污損，所以就拒絕了造紙廠的要求。離那裏不遠，有個只顧營業的城子。那邊的人民說，這是繁榮市面的好機會。他們印歡迎在城裏開設紙廠。那地方有濃密的樹林，有優秀著名的河流。工廠建造起來了。樹木也被砍伐下來了。工廠的含有毒質的廢物倒入河的清水中，總來魚都死了，全部的河流也都變成漆黑而骯髒了。

河流是美的景緻，是娛樂的地方，是健康的所在。並且是供給飲料和食物的來源。爲了上述的各種需要，它當盡量保持清潔。通常的河流都是魚類的家鄉，可是沒有相當的保護，有幾種魚就容易遭殃。西洋有多國家？

In some Western countries there are *strict laws* which permit the catching of certain fish only at certain times, and *even then they must not be under size* and may be caught only in limited numbers.

11. Water-Power Sites

If a stream is too rapid and perhaps too shallow for navigation, it may be just the place for a dam. A dam, by raising the level of the water above, may make navigation good where there was no navigation before, while *the addition of locks* would permit boats to go from one level to the other either way. The dam would also provide the source of power. A high waterfall provides power without a dam. The amount of water and the height of the fall determine the amount of power.

Water power used to mean only a mill for grinding grain or a method of pumping water up to high levels. Water power now usually means electricity. Electricity means light, heat, and power carried in any direction and for long distances. If a railway passes near a good water-power site, through the development of electricity it may light, heat, and actually run its trains for hundreds of miles *as many months in the year as the stream runs*, and do this forever.

Once a rapid or fall is fully taken up by a power plant, that source of power is no longer available. The rapid does not run; the fall no longer falls. Therefore the question must always be faced whether that power site should be used in that way. It belongs to the public.

Does the public want it used in that way? Does the public wish it thus to *pass out of its hands*? If the power plant is a public utility and remains under the control of the public, it is certainly a wise and good thing to develop the power site, for as long as it remains undeveloped all that value in power is *running to waste*. Of course, the waterfall is sometimes so beautiful that the people enjoy it more than they would enjoy what it

定了嚴格的法律，只准在一定的時期捉捕指定的一種魚，不但如此，並且小魚也不能捕捉，同時捕捉的數目亦有限制。

十一 水力和地位

如果江河流得太快或太淺不便航行，就得建築河壩。河壩可使水位升高，可使從前不能航行的地方現在便於航行。若加上了水閘更可使船在兩條水棧中間行駛了。水閘是供給水力的來源。寬的瀑布不用水閘，也能供給水力。水力的大小，須看水量的多少和瀉落的高低而定。

從前的水力只用來研米穀，或者是抽水至高處的一種方法。現在的水力常指電力而言。電就是光，熱，和能達到任何方向不論遠近的意思。假使一條鐵路通過良好水力的所在，便可利用電力發生光和熱，使火車行至數百哩遠，只要江河川流不息，就能永遠利用了。

急流或瀑布一經設立水廠，那種力量便不復存在了。急流不再奔駛，瀑布也停止傾瀉。所以那種水力的地方應作那種用途，是先決的問題，因為這是屬於民衆的。

民衆需要那種用法嗎？民衆願意從手中失去嗎？如果這水廠是種公共用業，仍歸於民衆管理，那麼發展水力的所在，自屬聰明的善舉，因為若不去發展水力，任其荒廢，當無價值可說了。自然，瀑布有時是很美觀的，人民欣賞它，甚於欣賞由它所發展而獲得的利益。

would produce if developed. In that case it ought to be preserved.

Here again public-spirited people are needed. Patriotic boys and girls must *keep these things in mind* and grow up to be the public-spirited men and women who will conserve and develop the resources of their country.

QUESTIONS AND EXERCISES

1. Make a list of China's great resources that should be conserved.

2. Discuss the question of the conservation of mineral resources.

3. How can the government and the people cooperate to preserve the forests?

4. Read about the national parks in America and report to the class.

5. Explain why the government of China has established the National Conservancy and Irrigation Bureau. Tell what you know about this bureau.

6. Describe a beautiful river of China. Why should rivers be kept as clean as possible?

7. Locate several water-power sites. Discuss whether any one of these should be taken up by a power plant.

在這種情形之下，這是應當保存的。

關於這件事，也需要熱心公益的人。愛國的兒女們必須把這件事放在心裏，等到長大時做熱心公益的男女公民，去保存去發展本國的富源。

問答練習題

- (1) 列一張表，說明中國應當保存的大富源。
- (2) 詳論保存礦產富源的問題。
- (3) 政府和人民如何合作去保存森林？
- (4) 讀一讀美國國家公園的大概情形，並報告給全級同學聽。
- (5) 說明中央政府設立全國水利局的原因。舉幾種你所知道的局內情形。
- (6) 描寫中國的一條美麗的河景。河流為什麼要盡量保持清潔？
- (7) 查幾個水力的地位，應研究那幾種水力可利用來建設水廠。

CHAPTER IX

TIME AND LABOR

1. Saving Time

The old saying "Time is money" contains a great deal of truth. To save time often means to save money or to make money, to save or to get wealth or success of some kind. History is full of stories of how *the difference of a few minutes* resulted in some great victory. If the Germans had been *only a little later at the battle of Waterloo* in 1815, the French might have won, and the whole history of Europe might have been different. We have already shown how *one great invention that was for the world's good* could not come until some other had preceded it. *Time lost in developing one kept the world from benefiting by another*, and so on. Thus, we see that many events of importance *depend upon certain times as well as upon certain things*.

Time is a highly important factor in many forms of business efficiency. All interest and *other returns upon money lent or invested or held back in any way* are calculated upon a time basis. For every minute you hold my money you should pay me interest, because in that time you have the use of it and may get returns from it, while I am prevented from doing so. Not to pay me interest is the same as stealing from me. *The same principle holds in all loss of time*, for some money or other wealth is always waiting, and so losing its interest and other returns.

A woman engaged a motor car at six dollars an hour; that is, at ten cents a minute. She lost ten minutes' time talking to a friend on the street; she lost five minutes more by giving the chauffeur the wrong address; she

第九章 時間和人工

一 節省時間

古語說：「時者金也」這句話包含很大的真理。節省時間，就等於節省金錢，就等於賺錢，也就等於儲蓄致富，或成功事業一類的意思。歷史上記載着好多事實，怎樣地在幾分鐘內獲得最大的勝利。在一八一五年滑鐵盧之役，要是德國人遲了一會兒，法國便打勝仗，而整個歐洲的歷史也要因之變更了。我們已經說過，一種有益於世界的大發明，是隨着以前的發明成就的。如果一個人單守着過去的利益，時代便不能發展，餘則由此類推。所以我們可以看出，許多重要的事業都依賴一定的時間和一定的事物。

在若干專業的效率中，時間是最重要的原素之一。不論所借的金錢，各種的收入，或由投資所生的利息，其計算法都以時間為原則的。你如借了我的錢，在每分鐘內都應付我利息，因為那時候你可利用這筆錢得到利益，而我則不能。不付我利息，就和偷我錢是一樣的。凡是把金錢或別的財富擱着就損失了利息及其他的利益，時間的浪費也是一樣的道理。

一婦人租一汽車，每小時化六洋六元；換言之，即每分鐘化一洋錢。她在街上和一友人談天費去十分鐘；她對車夫說錯了地址又費了五分鐘；

waited five minutes at a shop for twenty cents' change; and a procession on the street held her up five minutes. Altogether she lost considerable time, and much actual money. In that case time was clearly the same as money.

A man bought a motor car, for which he paid \$3000. He sold some shares of railway stock in order to get the money to buy it. His shares were paying him at the rate of 6 per cent. Immediately after buying the car he *had to go away for six months*. He put his car in his garage, where it remained until he returned. How much did that idle car cost him? Interest on his money for six months (\$90) besides the rent of space in his garage and the insurance on the car.

If a man is taking fruit to market, a delay on the road may cost him *part or all of the value of his fruit* in one or more of three ways: he may reach the market after prices have fallen; his fruit may spoil before he reaches the market; he may *miss a train or steamship connection* and never reach the market at all. If a ship full of silk for a market in Europe leaves Shanghai three days late, or loses three days on account of bad seamanship, or is obliged to run its engines so slowly as to arrive three days later than it should, that ship *has held the value of the silk tied up for three days*, which may mean, in interest on money, a very large sum. The interest on such a cargo, worth, say, \$1,000,000, at 6 per cent is about \$165 a day.

The values of many things *depend upon the times they are available*. Ice is valuable in the summer; furs, in the winter; medicine, when you are ill; a ticket, when you wish to travel. Delays may *keep things out of season* and destroy their value. A merchant once said, "I sell a straw hat at twice its cost in June, at cost in July, and at half cost (a quarter of the first price) in August." Therefore, he *made every effort to sell out his stock as early as possible*. If he *carried it over to the next year*, he not only lost in interest and storage and depreciation but he also *ran the risk of losing all by changes in style*.

她在店裏換兩角錢又費了五分鐘；街上有人結隊遊行阻她前進，又費了五分鐘。總計起來，她損失好多寶貴的時間和一筆實用的金錢。這樣看來，時間顯然就是金錢了。

一人買一汽車，化大洋三千元。他售去鐵路股票，把所得的錢去買汽車。他的股票原有六厘息金可得。買了汽車後，他又要立刻出門六個月。他將汽車放在汽車間裏，一直等到他回來。這輛不用的汽車損失了他多少錢呢？除了他的六個月息金（九十元）外，尚有汽車間的租費和汽車的保險費。

若有一人運水菓到市場上去，路上的就擱可使他受一部或全部水菓價值的損失，不外乎下述的三種情形。第一種情形是：假定他到了市場之後，水菓已經跌價了；第二種情形是：假定他未到市場，水菓就損壞了；第三種情形是：假定他趕不上輪船火車，不能達到市場。若有一隻船裝滿絲織品由上海開往歐洲的市場，因為遲了三天，或者因為輪船不好，在途中就擱了三天，或者出於不得已要使輪船開得慢些因而遲到三天，這就等於那隻船把絲價擱起了三天，也可以說擱起了資金的利息——大宗的利息了。假定這批貨物值銀一百萬元，若以六厘利息計算，每天的利息就有一百六十五元。

好多有價值的東西，都依靠有價值的時間。夏天的冰是有價值的；冬天的皮是有價值的；病時的藥是有價值的；旅行時的票子是有價值的。遷延時日，便使貨物失時，而且損失價值。有一次某商人說：『我賣一頂草帽，在六月裏可得雙倍的價格，七月裏適值普通價格，八月裏僅得價格的半數。』（即第一次價格的四分之一）因此他盡量趁早出售他的草帽。要是把貨物擱到明年，那他不但損失利息，化了棧房費，受了貨物陳腐的跌價，並且更因改變式樣而冒全部價格的險。

2. The Importance of the Time Element

Time is an important element also in all kinds of scientific and industrial work. The ship's captain locates his position on the sea by the sun (or stars), whose position he knows because he knows the exact time. He carries *very accurate timepieces* for this purpose. The conductor of a train carries a good watch in order that he may follow his schedule exactly. If his train arrives late, his passengers may suffer both inconvenience and *some of the many losses which arise from delays*. If his train leaves late, it may cause delays to many other trains whose schedules are connected with his own. If he leaves or arrives early, he may not only cause inconvenience and loss to passengers and others but he may even endanger lives by running on a track at the time it has been reserved for another train.

The exact length of time that the steel is melting in the furnace is very important. So it is with the soap in the factory, the sugar in the refinery, the porcelain in the kiln, the food in the cannery, the wood in the furniture shop, *the brine in the salt flats*, as also the seed in the soil and the chicken in the egg. A few years ago there was suddenly a great demand for bricks in Canton. To meet this demand the kilns were opened *three or four days sooner than usual*. The bricks were not properly baked. The result was that the quality of the bricks was far below the good standard of bricks previously used. Houses built of these bricks were unsafe. It all came from *neglecting the time element in brick-burning*.

Reinforced concrete is a modern type of construction. A beam with *an inside framework of steel rods* properly placed is made of a mixture of cement, sharp sand, and broken stone in *about the proportion of one to three to five*. After this has "set," it is like a solid piece of stone. Then *the supports* may be taken away and the beam or floor put to use. Now, great difficulty was experienced *at first in this and other uses of cement*, because the

二 時間成分的重要

時間在各種科學和實業裏，也是一樣重要的原素。船長在海洋中依着太陽（或星）的地位，計算船隻所在的位置。他所以知道太陽或星的位置，就因為他知道一定的時間。他所備的測量器非常準確。火車的車務員帶了好樣便可按時辦事。要是他的車子遲到了，旅客必受不便與由遲到所引起的種種損失。要是他的車子遲開了，那麼別的和它時間表相關的火車也要耽誤了。要是他開得太早或到得太早，他不但要使旅客和其他的人蒙受種種不便及損失。並且在一條鐵路上佔據了留作別的車輛使用的時間，還有生命的危險呢！

熔鐵爐裏熔鋼的一定時間，是很重要的。他如工廠的製肥皂，煉糖廠的煉糖，瓦窯的燒磁，罐頭公司的食品，傢具店的木頭，鹽田的鹽水，土壤的種子，蛋殼中的小雞，也必須有一定的時間。數年前，廣州急需大量的磚瓦。爲了答應這種要求，窯裏就比平時提早開工三四天。因爲磚燒的時間欠足，結果，品質就比以前用的標準磚遜劣得多了。以致用這些磚造房子也不穩靠了。這都是由於違背燒磚的一定的時間原則。

水泥鋼骨是新式建築的原料。欲造一棟，先須將鋼條妥爲裝置，次將水泥，細沙，碎石，共混合作一，三，五的比例，圍着鋼條使成棟的形式。凝結之後即像一條堅固的石柱。於是移去支持的東西，這石柱或地面便可應用了。起初使用這種建築法和使用水泥時，很覺得困難，

workmen were accustomed to dealing with lime, the setting of which is entirely different from that of cement. Lime, to harden into stone, takes carbon dioxide from the air to make its crystals. It therefore requires a long time to set, and may be handled slowly without doing it any harm. Cement, on the other hand, hardens by taking up water. It does not need air. It will set in the bottom of a river. As soon as you add water to it, it begins to form its crystals. If you handle it for any length of time afterward, you spoil it. The sooner you leave it, the better it sets. This shows how workmen who do not regard the time element may be inefficient and even dangerous.

3. Be Prompt

A certain official once said: "I never plan to attend a meeting on time. I always arrive late. I let the others do the early work and then wait in expectation for my arrival." He did not realize that he was stealing the time of other people, hindering the progress of scheduled work, shirking his duty, losing opportunities, and setting an example that did great harm wherever it was observed. He failed in his work and lost his position. The people should never elect an official who disregards courtesy, justice, and punctuality.

The history of commerce is full of examples of success coming from promptness, and of failure arising from tardiness. Modern men often transact a dozen important pieces of business in one morning. If you have an appointment at eleven o'clock, appear at the place of appointment exactly at eleven. To be late places you at a disadvantage and may cause people to give far less attention to your business. It is safer to allow yourself a little margin of time and provide a way to use that margin if you have to wait.

The modern railway and steamship schedules are compelling people to be on time. They even make people so nervous about being left that passengers are often at

因爲工人向來就慣用石灰的，而石灰的凝結性和水泥又是完全不同的。石灰硬化成石頭時，必由空氣中吸取二氧化碳使之結晶。所以需要長時間的凝結，並且可以漸漸移動，而能使它不受任何損害。但是，水泥的凝結祇是用水，並不需氣。即在河底亦能凝結的。你把它加上水分，它就成爲晶狀了。待結晶後你若常去觸碰它，它便受損；你碰它愈早，結晶亦愈快。由此可知不注意時間成分的工人，不但會減少效率，抑且會遭遇危險。

三要敏捷

某官吏有一次說：『我決不打算按時赴會。我要常常遲到。讓人家先去做些事情，然後等我來到。』他並不明白他偷了別人的時間，妨礙辦事的程序，卸棄自己的職責，失去了種種的機會，而且養成遇事即作大惡的榜樣。他因不忠於職，便即失其地位。故人民對那些於不重禮貌，不愛正職，不守時刻的人，不宜選他們去充當官吏。

商業史上滿載着因敏捷而成功，因懈怠而失敗的例子。現代人在一個早晨就做十件以上的要事。如果你十一點鐘有約，就在十一點鐘正到約會的地方。若是遲到你必蒙損失，而你的業務也就被人疏忽了。比較穩妥的辦法，是寧願早到一會兒，若須等待，亦必利用那時間才好。

現代鐵路輪船所定的時間表，是使人們守時刻。但是有的旅客往往遲恐不及，

the station hours before the train leaves. Promptness should not cause people to waste time. That is going from one extreme to the other.

Schools also are helping to form habits of promptness. Modern schools, like modern business and modern transportation, are running on exact schedules. The students who cooperate to maintain the schedules are both public-spirited and patriotic, for they are making the life of the community easier and building up an important national virtue.

4. China is "Speeding Up"

A witty man, who was well known in China some years ago, called China "*the Drag-on Nation*." He meant that China was *dragging on*, doing things in a slow way. China has now begun to "*speed up*," as the whole world so well knows.

A foreigner, deeply interested in the progress of China, once asked a Chinese, "Why do you not move faster?" The Chinese replied, "We have not started yet, but when we start we shall move *too fast to suit you*."

Many think now that China is going too fast. They say she changes so rapidly that she cannot change wisely. They fear that in the changes she will lose the good things of the past. They complain that changing too fast is sure to mean going too far—going so far that she cannot return and *make good her losses*. China must guard against this. Such speed would not be efficiency. Progress must be safe, though it may seem slow at times.

There are, however, many ways in which China is now saving time. Official orders are telegraphed where they used to be sent by messengers. Soldiers are sent by train where they used to go on foot. China's relations with foreign countries are carried on by cable instead of in the slow ways of earlier days. News is received at big centers and sent out in newspapers. We know today what

到了車站幾個鐘頭，火車尚未開出。所謂敏捷，並非教人浪費時間。不然便犯到此失彼之病了。

學校也是助人養成敏捷習慣的地方。近代的學校和近代的商業與近代的交通一樣，必須遵守時刻。學生能合作遵守時刻，是愛國而好公益的，因為他們使社會生活過的更舒適，並且養成可貴的民族的德性。

四 中國正在趕上前去

數年前，中國有位著名的諷刺家，稱中國為「迂緩的國家」。他的意思是說，中國徐徐前進，做事總是慢慢兒地。可是中國現在趕上前去了，這是全世界的人都知道的。

一位極關心中國進步的外國人，有一次對一中國人說：『你為什麼不快點動作呢？』中國人回答說：『我們現在尚未起首，等到起首時，我們的動作比你更快呢！』

還有好多人以為中國跑得太快了。他們說中國因為變化太快，所以改革不能適宜。他們憂慮這種改革會喪失過去的好處。他們埋怨着說，改革太快，必趨極端——趨極端便不能回頭去補償損失的好處了。中國應當防備到這一點，那種趨極端的方法，決不能發生什麼效率。進步必須穩妥，雖然有時似有遲緩之跡。

但是，中國現在有許多節省時間的方法。從前政府的命令用信差遞送，現在卻用電報傳達了。從前的軍隊步行，現在都搭火車了。從前中國和外國來往很是遲緩，現在利用海底電線了。新聞由極區接受，再從報章刊出。昨天所發生的國內和世界大事，今天我們就知道了。

happened yesterday in many parts of the country and of the world. People and goods go from place to place at twenty or thirty or forty miles an hour where they used to travel at three or four miles an hour.

5. The Hurry Call

In this matter of speed China is merely *taking her place in the modern world*. There is a call to her to hurry in order to keep pace with the world, and she is responding to that call. An American, who wrote a book about how China is changing, said one evening to a group of Chinese students: "You must now master the learning of the West; but you must remember that in the thirty years that you will take to learn it all, the West will not be standing still. The West is still moving forward and at an increasing speed. You must HURRY to catch up."

Every boy or girl who learns how to do things efficiently, who forms habits of promptness, who works rapidly as well as carefully, and who does not waste time is *helping China to speed up*. Perhaps your teacher, through politeness, does not tell you to hurry when you are wasting time. Ask your teacher to help you to *value time more fully*. Study your daily life to see if any of your time is wasted in idleness. What do you do at *recess time*? Do you use all your recreation time in real outdoor exercise? Do you use your other free time in good reading? How much time do you spend in useless talk or *aimless loafing about*? Be careful, also, of the time of others. If you go to see anyone, do not waste his time. *Have your business clearly in mind* and finish it promptly. Then if your host wishes to talk longer and *entertain you*, you may remain. If he does not, you should leave at once. If you take his time, he sure you are *free to do so*. A busy man usually wants you to transact business and leave. Never idle in anyone's office.

從甲地到乙地的客人和貨物，從前一點鐘只能走三四哩路，現在一點鐘可走二十哩，或甚至三四十哩了。

五 緊急的呼喚

講到這後，中國在近代世界上可佔一席之地。這是一種緊急的呼喚，要中國與世界並駕齊驅，對於這個呼喚中國是答應了。一位美國人，他著了一部書，論到中國如何變遷，一天晚上他對一般中國學生說：『你們必須研究西洋學術；在三十年中你們當然可以都學了，但西洋的學術並不停止。它依舊往前推進，而且加增速度。你們必須趕快追上。』

少年男女若知道怎樣做事才有成效，若能養成敏捷的習慣，若能做事迅速又謹慎，而且不耗費光陰，就是幫助中國增加速度了。也許你的教師，是對你客氣，當你耗費光陰時，並不教你趕快追上去。懇求你的教師幫助你，重視光陰的價值。研究你的日常生活，看有沒有因懶怠而耗費了光陰。休息的時候，你做些什麼呢？遊戲的時候，你是否作真實的戶外運動呢？你會利用暇閒去讀書嗎？你費了多少時間在閒談和無意識的遊玩上面呢？你還得重視別人的光陰。如果你要看什麼人，別耗費他的光陰。將你的事務清楚地記在心中，趕快做完了它。如果你的主人願同你多談一會天，肯招待你的，那你不妨多坐一息。反之，你就立刻退出。你若佔了人家的時間，應當先設身處地想一想。事務繁忙的人，往往希望你做了事情，快快離開。千萬不可在任何人的辦公室中耗費光陰。

The principal of a school said recently: "I like to deal with that boy Wu. He comes to me, for example, to get permission to go to the city. I decide that I cannot let him go. He accepts my decision cheerfully and goes out to play. He does not *hang around my desk* for an unpleasant hour or so, as some boys do. He *has regard for my time and pleasure*. He is a good citizen."

A school is a good place to learn good citizenship. Regard for the time and convenience of others makes one public-spirited.

6. Labor-saving Devices

Saving labor is closely connected with saving time. When a man uses a cart instead of a carrying-pole, you may say he is saving time or saving labor. He is saving both of these, together with food, clothes, money, etc.

Strange to say, however, there are some queer ideas about saving time and labor. One man has the idea that he does well to save himself labor, but not necessarily to save himself time. He will try to avoid work, but will quite willingly sit down and spend a great deal of time for nothing. Such people are foolish and of no benefit to the nation.

Another person works faithfully but in a time-wasting and labor-wasting way, and yet does not want to see labor-saving devices introduced into the country. He says that if a machine using only one man does the work of five men, it is clear that four men have lost their jobs. Is he right? Do labor-saving machines and methods improve the condition of the working people or make it worse?

One of the greatest labor-savers ever invented in the West was *Cyrus McCormick's reaper*. It made bread cheaper. Was that good for the laborer? It raised the grade of harvester from that of a knife-swinger to that of a mechanic and paid him much higher wages. Was that an advantage to farm labor or not?

某學校的校長最近說過：『我喜歡同姓吳的學生來往。比如，他上我此地來，請假到城裏去的一件事吧。我決不准他去。但他卻愉快地服從命令，到外邊去遊戲了。他並不像別的學生，不高興的站在我的桌前直到一個鐘頭以上。他尊重我的光陰，尊重我的快樂。所以他是個好公民。』

學校是個學習好公民資格的模範場所。重視人家的時間和方便，就是有公德心的人。

六 省工的方法

省工和省時有很密切的關係。一個人用車來代替扁担，你可說他是省時而又省工了。他不菸了這兩樣，還省了食物，衣服，金錢等等。

但是，很奇怪的，對於省時省工還有好多異議。有人主張盡量省工，卻不一定情願為自己省時。他避免工作，寧可坐着消閒，耗費光陰。此種人是愚蠢的，是無益於國家的。

還有一種人，他很忠心工作，但他的方法是費工費時的，他不要看那種從外國輸入的省工法。他說，如果一架機器只用一人就能做五人的工作，那麼其餘四人的失業是顯而易見的了。他的理論對嗎？省工的機器和方法，是改善工人的狀況呢，還是使他們的情形更惡化？

西洋最重要的省工機器，就是馬可宋克發明的收穫機。這架機器可使麵包的價格減低。這於工人有好處嗎？它提高收穫人的階級，從前用鐵刀的工人，現在都成為機器匠，並且還增加了工資。這是不是有利於農場工作呢？

A labor-saving machine makes things cheaper for everybody and as a rule raises the grade and standard of the laborer. It also does something else. It increases capital and employs more people. A machine that is run by one man and that does five men's work not only cheapens the product and pays that one man far more than any of the five used to receive, but it also earns more money for the employer, who thus can and usually does invest in more machines to employ more men, and so on. When the launches were first started on the rivers and canals, the junks and houseboats complained that the sailors would starve for lack of work; but as a matter of fact the economy of labor, time, and money so increased business that the sailors soon had better positions, at higher wages than ever before, and more of them were employed. It was the same way with the railways and the carriers; with the shoemakers and the tailors when stitching-machines came in; and with many other occupations that you could name yourself. The sawyers have a strong guild and are so convinced that sawmills will take the food out of their mouths that few mills have as yet been started in China. What can you say to these men about labor-saving machinery and their own and their country's good?

7. China's Great Labor Supply

Some people, however, say that China has so great a supply of labor that there is no need to save it. What difference, they say, does it make if we use twice as many men to grow each bushel of wheat and to make each pair of shoes? We have plenty of men. Why should we use a machine instead of four men? The answer is that a machine does not eat that wheat and wear out those shoes. It produces more for the people and eats up less. Without machines the laborers, no matter how many there are, often consume all that they can produce. Is the country, then, better off after their labor? How can the nation develop if the laborers cannot turn out excess

一架省工的機器，可使人人享受貨物便宜的利益，並可增高工人的身分和標準。此外還有別的好處。它能增加資本，雇用多數的工人。一架由一人管理而做五人工作的機器，不但使出品減低價格，使一人所得的工資高於五人中的任何一人，而且也給業主賺得更多的金錢，因此他便能常購更多的機器，雇更多的工人，以及其他等等的利益。輪船初次在江河中行駛時，帆船和棚船都怨天怨地的說，這般舟子要因失業而至餓死。其實輪船的人工，時間，金錢都節省了，營業也增加了，航船的人也得到較好的位置了，而且工資比前增高，被雇的人數也逐漸多了。鐵路和脚夫也如此；新式縫衣機對於鞋匠和裁縫也如此；其餘你所知道的各種職業也不外乎如此。鋸木工人有個團結力堅強的工會，會裏的人都相信機器鋸木廠將奪取他們的營業，所以中國的鋸木廠設立並不多。關於省工機器的本身利益和國家利益，你們能用什麼方法去開導這般人呢？

七 中國的大宗人工的供應

但是，有些人說，中國有大宗的人工可供給，故無節省的必要。他們說，如果我們用雙倍的人工去種一升麥子或者做一雙鞋，又有什麼關係呢？我們的人口很多。爲什麼要用一架機器來代替四個人呢？回答是這樣的：機器並不吃麥子也不穿鞋子。它只是爲人們多生產而少消耗。若沒有機器，那麼所有的工人都把出品消耗盡了。他們這樣工作着，於國家有益處嗎？如果工人不能製造充足的出品，國家怎能發展呢？

products? Add machinery to labor, and *by the saving made* you have greatly increased the product. Thus the country becomes richer; everybody has a larger share.

Think of the amount of labor which is wasted in carrying things. Mr. R. D. Welcott says that twenty million men, one fifth of China's male laborers, are only carrying instead of producing. In the United States, where also there are great distances to carry, only one twentieth of the male laborers are engaged in transportation.

8. Strikes and Lockouts

Another and quite different sort of waste of labor is found when laborers refuse to work, in order to force employers to treat them better or pay them more. This may (or may not) have good results, but while it lasts it is a waste of labor.

To refuse to work until certain things are done is called a strike. To strike means to stop work. The opposite of a strike is a lockout. In this case the employer locks the workmen out, so to speak, and refuses to let them work. Perhaps he cannot afford to pay what they demand; perhaps his factory has failed and closed down; perhaps he only wants to force them to *do more or stand more* or receive less. In any case there is loss of capital, of time, of profits, of labor, and of benefit to the nation. Strikes and lockouts are becoming more and more common in China. Citizens ought to know what causes them and what harm or good they do. Even if there is no violence or other lawbreaking, there is great loss to laborers, to employers, and always to the general public also. Therefore it is the duty of laborers, employers, public officials, and ordinary citizens too, to understand these matters and to do all they can to prevent such difficulties and losses. *China's national train* is already a little behind time; it must not be hindered and further delayed by useless troubles. Rich and poor, high and low, all must work together to help China to advance.

入工再加上了機器，所餘下的勞力就能大增出品的數量了。如此，則國家更富，而人民所分享的利益也就更多。

想想那挑背東西的，費了多少人工吧。華爾考說：中國兩千萬工人中，有五分之一的人工，不能製造貨品，只在做着挑的工作。在美國，也要挑東西到遠處去的，但從事於運輸工作的人工，全國祇有二十分之一。

八 罷工和停業

還有一種完全不同的耗費勞力，就是工人拒絕工作，強迫業主改良待遇或是增加工資。這也許有（也許沒有）好的結果，但最後不過荒廢人工而已。

拒絕工作 等到某種目的達到時為止，這就叫罷工。罷工便是停工的意思。罷工的反面是停業。停業是業主閉門禁止工人進去，不讓他們工作。也許是業主不願發工人所要求的工資；也許是他的工廠經營失敗而倒閉；也許他要強迫工人多做工作，多延長時間，或減少工資。無論何種情形，總是資本，時間，利潤，人工，和國家進益的喪失。罷工和停業在中國是逐漸增多了。國民應當研究其中的原因及其利弊。就算不暴動，不違法，工人，業主，和其他的民衆也要受相當的損失。所以工人，業主，官吏，民衆，都須明瞭這些事情，並且要盡職去阻止風潮的發生及其損失。中國的事業已落人之後；此後更不可被無謂的煩瑣所阻止。不論貧富，不論尊卑，所有的民衆必須同心協力幫助中國前進。

The important thing is not for each to get as much as he can, but for each to act for the best progress of the whole nation.

9. Wasted People

There is another kind of waste—by idleness. Idle men and women are a terrible waste to a nation. There are idle poor people, idle rich people, and idle people who are neither rich nor poor. Why should some people work while others *eat up the fruits of their labor*? Some people do not raise or make or carry or sell anything for the other people of the country. They do not educate or amuse or in any other way serve the people. No matter how much money a man has, he should not be idle. He should serve his people.

A large number of students who have had higher education in China or abroad are wasting their time in Shanghai, Nanking, and other large cities. They are idle, because they cannot find easy and well-paid jobs and refuse to *take on work* that is a really useful service but pays a small salary. Is this patriotic, when you consider how few people have the opportunity of higher education and how much useful work needs to be accomplished in China?

Workers must often seek work. Men are wasting themselves and keeping their town or city poor if they stay where there is no work for them. In cities there is a terrible waste of people. Strong, eager men and women *come in from the country*. Many of them wander to the crowded section of the cities where there is little work. They do not know that work waits for them in the country. They live in a few rooms; they have little food. Their strong bodies and their great courage are wasted in an overcrowded city. *The towns and villages are greatly in need of them. There is work to be done if only they are enterprising enough to undertake it.* There are roads to repair, bridges to build, dikes to strengthen, streets to clean, *schoolhouses to put up,*

最要緊的，並非各人謀自身的最大的利益，乃是要盡力設法使全國有最善的進步。

九 無用的人

還有一種荒謬，就是遊手好閒。懶惰的男女對於國家是一種可怕的耗費。這裏有懶惰的窮人，懶惰的富人，和懶惰的中產階級。為什麼有些人應當工作，而另有些人却剝削別人勞力的結果呢？有些人不耕種，不製造，不負物，不販賣，以謀人民和國家的利益。他們不教育人家，不娛樂人家，也不用別種方法為人民服務。一個人無論他有多少錢，總不能懶惰，他應當給大眾做事。

有一批在中國受過高等教育的，或曾在外國留學的學生，都在上海，南京，及其他大都會裏優遊度日。他們的懶惰，是因為不能找到一種容易的而月入頗豐的工作，並且不願擔任薪金雖微但確為有益的事情。你想想，中國受高等教育的人是那麼稀少，而正待完成的有用事業又是那麼多，這樣地終日閒散，難道是有愛國心的嗎？

工人必須常找工作。如果插足在無相當工作的地方，這是浪費了他們自己，同時還要使那個城鎮也貧窮下去。都會裏的閒人最多。強健的熱心的男女，大都來自鄉間。好多人在熱鬧的城市中彷徨着，可是那邊很少有工作的機會。他們不知道鄉間有工作正在等待着他們去做。他們住的房子不多，吃的東西也很少。他們強壯的身體和偉大的勇氣，都消磨在狹窄的都會裏，村鎮裏極需要他們。只要他們有豐富的企業精神，就有工作可做。比如修理道路，建築橋樑，建設堤壩，清潔街道，設辦學校，

trees to plant, and good work of many other kinds to do. They say that the village is too poor to raise the money, but why is it poor? Because it lacks young men and women of energy and faith to develop it and improve it and put life and courage into it. Usually the public work can be done with little or no money. Villages can be cleaned and roads can be built by village labor with village tools. Those who escape this duty and *drift into the cities*, only to be idle there, are national labor wasters.

Make up your mind, while you are reading this chapter in school, that you will not be found *eating up your country's wealth in idleness*. Keep busy. Think what China can do in the world if her great supply of human labor is really put to efficient use. Remember that the happy people are the busy ones. The idler is missing the best fun in life; *that is, really doing things*.

10. Partly Wasted People

A young man who might be teaching school is partly wasted if he is keeping accounts. A man who carries goods is partly wasted if he has the ability to manage a store. Every bit of ability that a person has should be used for the good of himself and his neighbors. If Dr. Sun Yat-Sen had not made use of his ability in politics and government but had followed the profession of medicine, for which he was prepared, he might have been only an ordinary medical doctor and China might still be a monarchy. Every ability that one has may be very valuable to him and to society if he uses it. Many a young man is keeping a shop which could be kept by many others, when he ought to be teaching a school which is waiting year after year for someone with his ability. A certain young man went to Peiyang University and studied engineering; when he could not find a position in an engineering company, he accepted a position in a shop, although at that time many schools were without teachers of science and mathematics, both of which subjects he was capable of teaching.

種植樹木，及其他各種有益的農桑等。有人說農村破產了，不容易籌款了，可是農村爲什麼破產的呢？就是因爲缺乏有能力有信心的男女去發展它去改良它，把他們的生活和勇氣灌輸到裏面去的原故呀。通常的公共事業，不用很多的錢就可舉辦起來；用本鄉的人工和本鄉的器具，可以澆灌水溝，可以建築道路。一做逃進了職責，漂泊到都會去，只在那兒優遊度日的人，就是國家的廢而不用的人工。

你們在學校裏讀了這課書時，要決意：從此不再荒廢光陰而坐吃國家的財富。你們要勤勞。如果能將大批的人工供給切實有效的地方，中國在世界上是能做一番事業的。要記住：忙碌的人就是快樂的人。閒人是失了生活中最好的興趣的人；所謂最好的興趣，就是指切實的工作。

十 半 廢 的 人

能在學校教書的青年，若去充當書記員，就是一半荒廢了。能有才幹經營店務的商人，若去從事搬運工作，也是一半荒廢了。人人應培植他的才能去爲自己 and 他人謀利益。如果孫中山先生不運用他的政治才能，但專研究他所準備的醫藥，說不定他說做個普通醫師，而中國依然還是帝國呢。各人所具的才能，若能善用它，便能有益於自己 and 社會。好多青年很可以在學校教書，但他們卻要開店，而這種商店是很可以由別些人經營的，在另一方面，學校則年年等待着像他們一樣有才幹的人。某青年在北洋大學研究機械，他不能在機器廠裏找一個位置，就在一另商店裏任職，而那時學校裏正缺少科學和數學教員，並且這兩種課程，又正是他所能勝任愉快的。

It is of great importance to your country as well as to yourself that you find your proper place in life and *occupy it fully*. One of the features of modern education is *vocational guidance*. Teachers try to help students to discover and enter the vocations in which they will be most successful and of the greatest service to their community. As you read further in this book, keep this matter in mind. What are you going to do with *your life's labor*? Shall you be like one of those hundreds of middle-school graduates who were found by the Vocational Association to be living in Shanghai in idleness? They had never *entered upon any vocation*. Everyone must choose; must seize his opportunities; must avoid letting small opportunities pass while waiting for a big one; must do something; must make a beginning; must learn by experience, not by waiting and talking; must remember that it is the busy man who is given the higher work to do, and the idle man who is overlooked and forgotten or considered lacking in ability. *Be up and doing!*

QUESTIONS AND EXERCISES

1. Tell a story to illustrate the saying "Time is money."
2. In what forms of business efficiency is time an important factor?
3. Look back over the last few weeks and see if you have always been prompt.
4. Many people think that China is going too fast. Why?
5. Can you think of any other ways besides those mentioned in the text in which China is now saving time? Can you suggest other means by which time could be saved?
6. Find out what you can about strikes. What causes them? What harm do they do? Do they do any good?
7. Is idleness waste? Explain.
8. Make a list of desirable vocations.
9. Discuss the advantages of education.

你要在社會生活中找個相宜的位置，這是對於自身和國家有重大關係的。現代教育的一個特點，就是職業教育。教師應幫助學生找尋職業，登記職業，這樣可使他們得到最大的成功，在社會盡最大的義務。當你將本書讀下去時，且把這件事放在心裏。你將利用你的學生的勞力去作何種職業呢？據職業教育社的報告，上海有幾百遊手好閒的中學生，你願做其中的一分子嗎？他們從未作過任何職業。每個人都必須選擇他的職業；必須抓住他的機會；不可放過小機會等待大機會；必須做些事情；必須從頭做起；必須從經驗中學習，不可期望或空談；必須記牢，只有勤勞的人，始有高尙的工作，懶惰的人，被人忽視，被人遺忘，被人認為少才幹。起來吧，工作起來！

問答練習題

- (1) 述一故事，引證「時者金也」的古語。
- (2) 在何種職業效率中，時間是重要的原素？
- (3) 檢點你過去數星期間作事會否敏捷？
- (4) 好多人認為中國跑得太快。何故？
- (5) 除了本書所述的以外，你能想出中國別的省時方法嗎？你能提出些別的可以省時的方法嗎？
- (6) 盡量舉出幾種罷工的事情，罷工的原因是為什麼？罷工有何種好處沒有？有何種益處沒有？
- (7) 遊手好閒是荒廢嗎？試說明其理由。
- (8) 列一張表說明你所希望的職業。
- (9) 詳論教育的價值。

CHAPTER X

THRIFT, INVESTMENT, AND SECURITY.

1. Idle Money is Wasted

Idleness means waste. Unused money is wasted. To keep coins in an old box, to have bureaus full of clothes that are not needed, to let good land lie idle, to have equipment that does no useful work—this is to be wasteful. If a farmer who has a hundred acres of land that would yield good crops does not cultivate his land, he is wasting it. He should either use the land or sell it to someone who would use it. So also money laid away is wasted.

Money ought always to be kept at work. We can and should make money our servant. Day or night it should never be idle. Did you know that the wealthiest men, those whose fortunes are counted in millions, have not an idle penny? Except for what is necessary to pay their living expenses, all their millions are scattered over the country, working as only money can. The harder money works, the faster it grows.

A rich man's small son one day wanted a small motion-picture machine for family use. The father refused, saying that he did not have the money. "I thought you had over \$100,000; and a small motion-picture machine would cost only a few hundred dollars," the boy insisted. The father said that sensible men never hoarded their money, but kept it hard at work. He explained that he had invested his money in the following ways:

\$10,000 was working on a railroad in Kyangtung, and brought him \$600 a year.

第十章 節儉，投資，和安全

一 金錢不用即是耗費

閒暇既是耗費。金錢不用即是耗費。把錢放在舊箱子裏，把不穿的衣服滿裝在衣櫃裏，良田荒蕪不用，有設備而不做有益的工作——這些都是耗費。如果一個農夫有百畝田地可以出產好的五穀，但不去耕種，他就荒廢它了。他應當使用他的田地，或者賣給要耕的人。同樣的，金錢放着不用，也就是耗費。

金錢應該常常使用。我們能夠而且必須使金錢作我們的僕人。日夜都不可擱着。你可知道那些富人，那些百萬家財的人，有一個錢留下不用的嗎？除了他們應付的生活費外，所有百萬的財產散放在全國各處，使它流通。金錢的用途愈多，它的增益也就愈快。

某富人的幼子：一天要買一架家用的小影戲機。父親不答應，說是沒有錢。他的兒子堅持着說：『我想你已有十萬財產了，那架小影戲機不過值數百塊錢。』父親說，有知識的人決不把金錢擱起來的，却總是要不斷地運用的。他解釋他把金錢投資於下列各種用途：

(1) 一萬元投資於廣東的一條鐵路，每年獲利六百元。

\$20,000 was working in a publishing company in Shanghai, and earned \$1500 a year.

\$50,000 was working on a rubber plantation in the *Straits Settlements*, and earned \$4000 a year.

\$10,000 was helping to develop a coal mine near Hankow, and earned \$550 a year.

\$10,000 was helping to build a farm in Manchuria, and earned \$600 a year.

The boy did not tell his father, but he had always supposed that men kept their money *in the vault of a bank*, piled up in silver dollars and five-dollar bills.

2. Making the Dollar Work

Even a single dollar need not lie unused. Many savings banks accept a deposit of as small an amount as this, and pay four cents a year interest. This dollar will then be helping to build a house or *run a railroad* or do some other piece of useful work. The savings bank always keeps enough money in its vaults to *supply the depositors who may want to draw out part or all of their money. The rest it puts to work.* If the savings bank will not accept the dollar, then in many countries its owner can take it to the post office and lend it to the government. The government will set it to work at once and pay for its use. The Chinese post office has a postal savings system.

A nation would soon become very poor if all the people hoarded the money they *did not need to live on.* Money saved and wisely invested by the people makes any nation prosperous.

3. What is Extravagance?

Money may be wasted through idleness or by wrong use. Wrong use we sometimes call extravagance. Families which buy more food than they need and spend too much for clothes are extravagant. A town which has *high-power arc lights* for its streets when small lights would do is extravagant. But the mere spending of

- (2) 兩萬元投資於上海的一另印刷廠，每年獲利一千五百元。
- (3) 五萬元投資於海峽租借地的一個樹膠園裏，每年獲利四千元。
- (4) 一萬元投資發展漢口附近的一個煤礦，每年獲利五百五十元。
- (5) 一萬元投資建築滿洲的農場，每年獲利六百元。

那個孩子並沒有對他父親說，但他總以為人們是把錢放在銀行的銀庫裏，把銀幣和五元鈔票堆放在那裏的。

二 使錢幣有用

就是一塊錢也不要攔着不用。許多儲蓄銀行甚至肯接受一塊錢的存款，並且還付年息四厘。這一塊錢可以幫助建設鐵路，修蓋房子，或作其他有用的事業。儲蓄銀行常在銀庫裏存放充足的款項，預備存戶提取一部分或全部的存款。其他的存款都放出去的。如果儲蓄銀行不接受這一塊錢，那麼各國的存戶便可將儲金送到郵政局裏去借給政府。政府立刻就利用它，並付其利息。中國郵政局裏有郵政儲金的機關。

假使所有的人民把生活上餘下的錢都保藏起來，這個國家不久就要成為很窮的了。任何國民若節省金錢，適用金錢，則他的國家一定能夠興盛起來。

三 奢侈是什麼

金錢不用或用而不得其法，就是耗費。用錢不得其法，我們有時稱為奢侈。家庭中買意外的食物，做太多的衣服，這是奢侈。一個城裏的街上，本來只須用小燈光就可以，若改用高度的弧光燈，也是奢侈。但是，

large sums of money does not necessarily mean extravagance. Perhaps one town spends \$40,000 for a public library, and another town of the same size \$15,000. Is the first town extravagant and the other thrifty? It is more likely that the second town is short-sighted. The town which spends \$40,000, if the spending is well done, is not in the least extravagant. The more books and the more beauty that a library has, the more helpful it can be and the more pleasure it can give.

If a company spends \$1000 for a motor-boat engine, it is not more extravagant than the company which buys one for \$200, provided the thousand-dollar one is five times as well made and will do more work than the cheaper one.

4. Thrift in China

The Chinese people are thrifty, but this is a time when they must be even more thrifty than ever before. They must also be careful spenders and good investors.

Many a man is a good saver but also a foolish spender or a poor investor. Many a woman saves food only to let it spoil. Many a man saves time only to waste it. Many a man keeps his pennies only to lose them as dollars. He is "*penny wise and pound foolish*." There is an old saying, "*Take care of the pennies, and the dollars will take care of themselves*." This is not a true saying. One may pile pennies up into dollars and pile dollars up into hundreds and thousands, and then lose all by some sort of foolish venture. He is like a child who gives his penny to a beggar who promises to bring him a gold watch in return the very next time he comes that way.

Thrifty people in all lands save, but they do not always invest. Sometimes they spend foolishly. They eat their savings up in a single banquet, or they spend all on a wedding or a funeral, or, worse still, they borrow money against future saving and spend it carelessly.

使用大宗款項的，不必定是奢侈。比如一個城化了四萬塊錢設立一所公共圖書館，另一個同樣大小的城中的圖書館只化了一萬五千元。還漂也可說第一個城奢侈，第二個城節儉嗎？這不過第二個城見識不多罷了。用四萬塊錢設立圖書館的那個城，如果用的得法，絕不能說是奢侈。因為圖書館的書愈多，裝飾愈好看，它的幫助也愈多，它給人家的快樂愈大。

一個公司化了一千元買一隻汽船，還有一個公司只化了二百元就買了一隻，如果化了一千元買的汽船，比化二百元買的貨色好上五倍，並且有更大的用途，那麼，這並不算奢侈。

四 節儉在中國

中國人是節儉的，但是現在比從前更應節儉。他們必須慣於用錢，善於投資。

好多男子很會儲蓄，但不會用錢，也不會投資。好多女子節省食物，但是徒使食物腐爛。好多男子節省時間，但是徒使時間浪費。又有好多男子省的是銅元，用的是銀元。這種人就是所謂『智於銅元，愚於銀元』的。有句古語說：『只要注意銅元，銀元自會注意。』這句話不見得有理。一個人可以由銅元積成銀元，再由銀元積成數百數千的數目，倘若有了惡運的冒險，便全部破產了。一個人若拿一個銅元給乞丐，是因為乞丐答應他下次來時報他一隻金手錶，那窮的人就等於小孩子罷了。

各處節儉的人都從事儲蓄，但不常投資，有時他們還浪費了金錢。他們或者在一次宴會裏吃了所有的儲蓄，或者在一次婚禮一次喪葬裏傾家蕩產。最壞的是借債濫用，拿將來的儲蓄作為抵償。

If a custom demands that a family waste its money in any way, that family should *rebel against that custom*. If your friends ask you to put your money into an unnecessary celebration, say to them that China needs capital and will never have it unless her people save money and do not spend it foolishly. It is your duty to refuse to waste money even if others dislike your decision.

Of what use to China are the great gaudy processions of hired priests and decorated girls and beggars carrying banners that stretch for a mile along the streets of Shanghai at either the marriage or the death of some rich man? If money is invested, it makes work and wealth for many; but if it is spent thus, it is thrown away and benefits nobody for more than a day or so.

If one wishes to help poor ragged beggars, that is a bad way to do it.

5. Thrift in Enjoyment

Thrift does not mean *the abstinence from all enjoyments*. Wise people learn what is good and exactly how much is necessary for the best enjoyment, and then they consider carefully whether *they can afford to spend*.

When should anyone spend for a thing that is not really necessary? When he and his family have by good investment properly provided for the future. Even then it is doubtful if his country can afford to lose the capital he throws away. It is said that China is a poor country. Is it true? Do the people make money? Is there enough capital to build railroads and motor roads all over every province? Is there enough capital to buy all the ships on the Pacific which have Chinese sailors on them? Where does capital come from?

6. Investment

One of the safest ways to invest money in the West is to buy the bonds of a stable government. People in

如果習俗強迫家庭浪費金錢，家庭就該起來破除那種習俗。如果你的朋友要求你把錢用在無謂的慶祝上，你可對他們說，中國現在需要資本，假使人民不知積蓄，專事浪費，這資本便無從籌劃了。就是別人不同意你的主張，你也要節省金錢，因為這是你的責任。中國富人舉行婚喪的時候，總是雇了大批的道士，乞丐，和化妝的女孩，執着旗幟，結隊成羣，在上海的街道上排了一哩路長，這於中國有什麼用處呢？如果用這錢去投資，便可使一般人得到工作因而致富了；可是像這樣用法，只是白白地拋棄，並無人能得一天以上的好處。

若說有人願幫助窮苦襁褓的乞丐，那麼這也不過是一個壞方法吧了。

五 快樂的節儉

節儉的意思，並非指禁止一切的享樂。聰明的人知道什麼是有益的，並且十分明白要化多少錢才能得最好的享樂，然後他們細心考慮自己已有無化這些錢的力量。

一個人要在什麼時候才能化錢買不需要的東西呢？就在他同家庭能辦好的投資防備將來的時候。然而投資，他也得考慮考慮，他的國家是否會損失他墊進的資本。有人說中國是一窮國。這話對嗎？人民顯錢嗎？中國有沒有充足的資本在各省建設鐵路和公路呢？有沒有充足的資本可購買那些用中國水手開駛的太平洋上的輪船呢？資本將從何處來呢？

六 投 資

西洋一個最穩妥的投資法就是買國家可靠的債券。

America are willing to accept as little as 3 per cent or 4 per cent per year on the best national government bonds because they are so safe and so sure of price and payment. If they buy railroad bonds they feel *almost but not quite so sure of these*, and so they demand about 5 per cent interest. City and business bonds and the stocks of large companies whose reputation is good pay 6 per cent or 7 per cent. The stocks and bonds of those companies which are a little less secure must pay more interest, because as the risk increases it becomes more difficult to find people to buy them. You can judge *fairly well of the soundness of an old company* or of a government by the price and interest of its stocks or bonds, if these are in the stock markets.

7. Gambling

Do you know what a "gold brick" is? What is a "wildcat scheme"? They are *slang expressions* for some of the ways dishonest persons have of getting ignorant people to invest good money in bad stocks. They offer large returns and so persuade people to take risks.

That kind of investment is gambling, and all gambling is both foolish and bad. Gambling is foolish, because *by it there is loss but never real gain*. Two men go to a gambling place: one loses and the other gains; thus there is a balance of loss and gain. *But account must be taken of the service and light and rent and everything else which is paid for and lost*, and of the time wasted by each—all of that is loss to the country, which has gained nothing, as it would have done from production and honest business. Moreover, there is a great loss in the spirit of industry and thrift. This is a terrible loss. Gambling destroys the spirit of honest labor.¹¹ We say a man gets "the gambling fever," for it is like a disease that *heats the man as with a false warmth and leaves him cold and weak when his strength is gone*. Every nation should fight gambling as it would fight a bitter and cruel enemy till it has been entirely destroyed.

英國人很願意買國家最好的三四厘的公債票，因為性質穩固，價格相宜，而付息也可靠。如果買鐵路債券，他們就覺得不十分放心，因此要求五厘的利息。城市與商業的債票及大公司的股票，信用卓著的，有六七厘的利息。那些不甚可靠的公司的債券和股票，所付的利息更多，因為冒險性增加，愈難找人去買了。依照政府與老公司的債券或股票在市面上的價格和利率，你便可鑑定它們穩健性質的限度。

七、賭 博

你知道什麼是所謂「金磚」嗎？（譯者注：這是美國騙子以假金磚冒充真金磚而出售於人者。）你知道什麼叫「賣野人頭」嗎？這些都是俚俗的名詞，滑頭的人用以吸收愚民投資到不正當營業方面去的方法。因為他們所給的利潤優厚，所以人民樂於冒險。

這種投資就是賭博，而所有的賭博都是愚人的墮落的。賭博所以愚人，因為祇有輸沒有贏。兩人到賭博場上去：一個輸，一個贏；這是損失和利益的平均。然而還得計算因賭博而耗費的工作，燈光，房租，及其他所供給的和損失的，並且各人所浪費的光陰——這些都是國家的損失，毫無利益可言，不像生產事業和正當商業那樣可靠。此外，對於勤奮的精神也有很大的損失。這是一種非凡的損失。賭博敗壞了誠實工作的精神。我們說一個人得了「賭博的熱病」，因為賭博很像一種會傳染的假熱病一樣，當他精力衰弱時，身體就寒冷衰弱了。各國都極反對賭博，好似反對刻毒殘忍的敵人，直待它完全撲滅為止。

Thrift and wise spending and sound investment of capital, therefore, are not merely personal virtues; they are also national virtues. They are patriotic virtues. Builders of a nation must be thrifty, wise, careful, in money matters. Spending money is a test of character.

8. Banks gather Capital

China has some of the oldest banking houses in the world and was one of the first nations to coin money, to issue paper money, and to establish banks. Coins issued a thousand years ago are *in circulation* still. The abacus of those ancient bankers is in use in the largest Oriental banks today, side by side with the *latest calculating machines* and *printed tables of exchange and interest*. —

The Chinese were such good bankers that other Oriental countries employed them *until their own bankers could be trained*. Far more Chinese than foreigners are employed in the foreign banks in China.

There is in China today a great and rapidly growing number of banks. What do banks do, and why are they increasing in number so rapidly?

We have said that China needs capital, an enormous amount of it. The banks are gathering this capital. Many people put small amounts into the banks for short or long periods. Most of it is available for investment. Sometimes the depositor takes out his money and invests it. Sometimes the bank invests it. Sometimes it lends to an investor. Sometimes it lends to another bank, which *in turn gets it invested*. The banks, therefore, are the *chief channel through which the savings of the people become invested capital*.

It is unfortunately true that banks in China prosper and grow rich from the exchange business. Exchanging one kind of money for another is not producing anything. All unnecessary exchange is a loss to business and to the country. If there were one standard currency for

所以節儉 善於理財，和穩妥的投資，不僅是個人的美德，而且還是國家的美德，甚至是愛國的美德。國家的建設份子，對於金錢方面，必須節儉，明智，謹慎，用錢原是人格的試驗。

八 銀行積聚資本。

中國在世界上有最老的銀號，並且還是鑄造錢幣，發行鈔票，設立銀行的國家之一。千年以前所鑄的錢幣 至今還流通着。古時銀行家所用的算盤 現在仍在東方最大的銀行裏使用，而且和新式計算機和兌換表利息表在一起並用。

中國人是有些有經驗的銀行家。東方各國在未訓練自己的銀行人才以前，都要聘請他們。在中國設立的外國銀行，裏面的職員以中國人比外國人為多。

中國現在有很多大銀行，並且增加甚速。然則銀行做些什麼呢？銀行為什麼增加這樣快呢？

我們已經說過，中國需要資本——雄厚的資本。銀行是聚集資本的地方。好多人都把少數的資本放在銀行裏，或是長期的，或是短期的。這些存款，大部分可作為投資事業。有時存戶自己提出去投資，有時銀行拿出去投資。有時銀行把資金借給投資者。有時銀行把資金借給別的銀行，別的銀行又轉借給別人。所以銀行是個重要的機關，在這個機關裏，人民的儲蓄就成為投資的資本。

事實上，中國銀行的興盛和發財，可惜是專靠在外換事業上面的。用一種錢去換別的一種錢，並不生產些什麼。各種不必要的兌換，是國家的損失，也是營業的損失。如果中國有種標準錢幣，

all China, and quick and safe means of transporting it from place to place when needed, there would be little exchanging for the banks to do and a great gain to all business throughout the country. This shows us one of the great tasks that lie before the government.

9. Banks supply Working Capital

A company which has land, buildings, equipment, and working staff may lack only "*working capital*"—*ready money* with which to buy raw materials, pay wages, and get the goods on the market. If the company's business is sound, it is sure to be able to pay the money back as soon as the goods are sold. Without this working capital *to make the wheels go round* the company can do nothing. The banks stand ready to supply such money when needed.

Likewise the farmer often *calls upon the bank for money* with which to get his grain cut and marketed. The shipowner *in the same way* gets his ship to sea; the merchant gets his store *stocked with goods*; the inn-keeper gets his building built for him; *the broker gets his orders filled and shipped*.

The supply of working capital to the right kinds of business stimulates productive activities and should be one of *the proper ways for a bank to make money*.

10. China handicapped by High Rates of Interest

In Western countries, for all money deposited for any length of time the bank pays interest—2 per cent, 3 per cent, 4 per cent; rarely more than that. For all money supplied to borrowers the bank charges interest—6 per cent, 7 per cent, 8 per cent; rarely more. That gives the bank good profit. In China, however, a borrower may be charged 10 per cent, 20 per cent, even 30 per cent or more. This means that business in China *is greatly handicapped*. How can China compete with other

並在需要時能用迅速妥當的方法運往各處，那麼免推商業就可減少，而全國的商業亦可獲利了。由此可知這是中國政府當前的一件重大的工作。

九 銀行供給營業的資本

一個公司有了土地，房屋，設備，職員，也許會缺少營業的資本：所謂營業的資本，就是用以購買原料，付給工資，和將貨物運往市場的現金。如果公司的營業可靠，待貨物售出之後，即可立刻償還債務。若無這種營業帶動一切，那公司就不能做什麼事了。銀行就是準備在必要時供給這種資本的。

農人也往往到銀行去借款，藉作收穫和把出產運往市場之用。船主同樣的去借款，藉以便利航行；商家為商店批購貨物，旅店主人建造房屋，經紀人承辦和運輸貨物，都可向銀行借款。

銀行把營業的資本供給正當的商業，可以鼓勵生產事業，而且還是銀行獲利的正當方法。

十 中國吃高利貸的虧

在西洋各國，銀行對於存款，不論期限長短都給二厘，三厘，四厘的利息，再高的恐怕就少有了。可是，銀行對於借出的錢，那就要六厘，七厘，八厘的利息；再高的也就少有了。這種營業可使銀行獲利。在中國，向人借錢，須付一分，三分，或者比這更高的利息。這表示中國商業的衰落。如果中國要負那種高利貸，

nations in the world's business if she has to carry such heavy burdens of interest? Although some foreign governments tax business heavily,—far more heavily than the Chinese government does,—the foreign business gets the benefit of the services paid for by the taxes; but Chinese business gets no service in return for its extra burden of heavy interest on loans. Such high rates are called usury, and in many countries are considered unjust or even unlawful.

11. The Greater the Risk, the Higher the Rate

High rates of interest are due to two things: risks are so great that the banker often loses his money, and capital is so scarce that borrowers compete with one another until they push the rates far too high. A man often comes to the banker and says: "I must have money. I know you are afraid to lend to me, but I must have it, and I will pay you a high rate of interest." Rates of interest can be reduced to the world standard by two means: by making the risk less and by increasing capital. It is easy to see that a business which is good, or a landowner who is honest and efficient, or an enterprise which is sound may get money without trouble. The difficulty in China is that so many borrowers are risky. They do not carry insurance, or they have too many employees, or they are not sure of sales, or they do not have proper deeds to their property, or their buildings are not in good repair, or their reputation has not been perfect. Perhaps the risk lies in the weakness of police protection or in the uncertainty of justice in the courts. Not until risks are reduced will rates come down. Some men are able to save up their own money and use that instead of borrowing. That is a slower way, but it is better.

12. There is too much Borrowing

The greater the demand, the higher the price—this is the tendency in all things. If people would borrow

怎能和世界的商業競爭呢？雖然外國政府有的對於營業稅抽的很高——一說不定比中國政府所抽的更高——然而外國的商業却能得到同樣的好處。但中國的商業雖納了額外的高利貸的借款，却無應得的利益。種種高利貸即所謂剝削，是好多國家視為不公平，甚至不合法的。

十一 危險性愈大則利息愈厚

高利貸的原因有二：因為借出的錢含有危險性，所以銀行往往損失它的金錢；因為資本缺少，致使借債的人互相競爭，而增高其利息。人們常到銀行去對職員說：『我需要錢。我知道你怕借給我，但我却非借不可，我寧願付你優厚的利息。』有兩個方法可使利息減到世界的標準：第一是減少出借的危險性，第二是增厚資本。凡是一種發達的商業，或是一個誠實的和有能力的地主，或是一種可靠的企業，都可以很容易看出，而且借債並不費事。中國的困難，就是借債人太冒險了。他們或不保險，或雇工人過多，或不能確定營業的銷路，或財產沒有相宜的契據，或房屋沒有好的修理，或信譽不著。危險的原因，或係警察保護力不足，或係法庭常不能主持公道。危險如不減少，利息亦決不會減低。有些人善於儲蓄，並不將錢借給人家。方法雖較緩慢，但比冒險却穩當多了。

十二 借貸過多

要求愈大，價格愈高——這是各種事業的趨向。人民倘借貸交步，

less, they would find rates of interest less. To borrow working capital against sure returns is good business for a man, a company, a nation. It is best for a nation, which is always so large that *it can easily stand a possible loss*. It is next best for a company, which is usually "limited," or "incorporated" (which means that *the possible loss will not fall upon the individuals themselves*), or a group of "partners," who will *share the loss among them*. It is least good for an individual or a family to borrow money, because all losses will fall entirely upon them. The result is that *many and many a good family* has been brought down to the lowest condition by failure to collect money enough to repay loans.

Governments do not hesitate to borrow large sums for constructive purposes. One reason is that once a profitable enterprise, such as a railway, is built, *it will itself repay the loan* and the interest. Another reason is that a good investment for the people such as a motor road or a river dike or a public bridge or an open park will benefit the people permanently, so that they will be willing and glad to pay the interest forever if necessary. But governments try not to borrow for *current expenses*. That is bad borrowing, because it is *making future generations pay the bills of this generation*. Where would such a course lead us?

A wise corporation, or "limited" company, tries to build up *a sinking fund or surplus* so that it will not need to borrow. It can supply its own working capital. It not only saves on interest but it also puts itself in a safer position and gains a reputation for soundness.

A wise man *draws up a family budget* and regulates carefully his expenditures in accordance with his income. He has to plan for shelter, food, clothing, and education. After arranging for all these things, he *sets aside* each month a certain amount for a savings fund. At the end of a series of years he has a good deposit *which will take care of him and his family in case of need*. What is your family budget?

則利息亦自減低。借貸營業的資本而能確定一定的週益，這是有益於人，於公司，於國家的一種事業。最有益的是國家，因為國家常是那樣大，容易擔負意外的損失。其次有益的是公司，因為公司是有限的或合夥的，（這就是說如有意外損失，決不落在個人身上）或是許多股東的，倘有損失，他們也能分擔。個人和家庭的借貸是不佳，因為所有的損失全落在他們身上。結果有許多殷實的家庭，因為籌不出錢還債，以致降到最低級的地位。

政府決不猶豫於借大宗款項來作建設事業之用。有一個理由是：只要政府有種有益的事業——如建設鐵路等——它本身就能償還債務了。還有一個理由是：凡是有利於人民的投資事業如公路，如堤壩，如公共橋樑，如公園，都永遠有利於人民，所以他們願意納息，必到時就是永納，亦所不惜。但政府不該借常年的經費，這是不良的借款，因為要使下一代的人民償付現代人民的債務。這種辦法將使我們到何種慘境呢？

一個經營有方的公司或有限公司，打算把利益的一部分為盈餘，為的是想免除借貸。如此便能供給自己的營業資本了。這不但可免借貸的利息，且能鞏固商業的地位，得着良好的信譽。

精明的人宜擬一個家庭預算表，謹慎地辦理量入為出的事項。他對於家居，食物，衣服，教育，都須有計劃，他把這些事情應付之後，每月撥出一部分錢作為儲蓄。過了幾年，他就有可觀的存款，此項存款，遇必要時便可維持他和他的家庭了。你的家庭預算表是怎樣的呢？

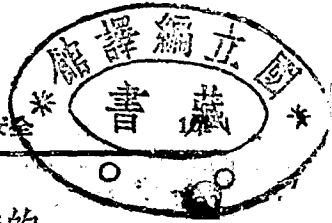
13. Borrowing is often Wrong

A man who needs to borrow is often only one who has failed to save. If he has not saved in the past, he will probably not save in the future. When he borrows, therefore, he is *putting himself on a dangerous road*. He is slipping downward. As long as a man is honest and owes nobody, he can fearlessly *look the world in the face*; but as soon as he finds himself struggling against a debt, he begins to lose courage as well as to lose the confidence of others. If a nation has any large proportion of citizens discouraged and hindered by debt, it is *in need of a lesson in thrift and progress*.

Unbusinesslike borrowing ought to be stopped, and fortunately can be stopped if people wish to reform and *stand upon a more solid financial base*. This sort of borrowing is both foolish and useless. It is said that many a poor farmer in the West has mortgaged his home and lands in order to buy an automobile. The car will soon be worn out; but the mortgage remains and must be paid or the farmer will lose his farm.

Do you know of such cases? Do you know of anybody who has borrowed money in order to spend it on a wedding, and thus started his home life with a debt hanging over him? Was he not wrong to spend what he had not saved and handicap his family *from the very start*? How much wiser it would be to have a simple and inexpensive wedding! Do you know of any case where money was put into so big a funeral that the family was *in financial difficulties* for a long time afterward? It was not only foolish; it was wrong. What right has one to spend and to make others save or suffer?

A personal or family loan is almost never a wise one. Make it your rule never to borrow except for working capital in an enterprise whose productivity is assured. Don't spend money until you have saved it. If someone lends you money with which to get an education, it is



十三 借貸常是錯的

一個需要借錢的人，總是不能儲蓄的人。如果他過去不能儲蓄，將來也是不能儲蓄的。所以他必須借債，而借債就是將自己放在危險的路上，日趨於墜落。人若認真不欠債務，對世界便無愧色；不然若為債務所累，便要喪失勇氣和別人的信仰。一國的人民倘多數為債務所累因而精神頹唐，就需要節儉和上進的教訓。

非營業性的借貸必須制止，要是人民願意改良而站在穩固的經濟地位，或倘能得免除。這種借貸是愚蠢的無用的。據說有的西洋窮苦的農民，押了自己的田地去買一輛汽車。汽車不久就要破壞的，但那押款仍須歸還，不然只好喪失他的田地。

你知道這類事情嗎？你知道一個人爲了舉辦婚禮而使家庭生活陷於債務的重圍中嗎？他耗費了他所沒有積蓄的錢，致使家庭開始時就困難度日，這樣不算錯嗎？那種舉行簡單經濟的婚事的人多聰明啊！你知道因辦理大喪事而耗費大宗金錢，致使家庭受長期經濟拮据的苦處嗎？這不但是愚蠢，簡直還是錯誤哩！誰有權限濫用人家的錢使人家受苦呢？

個人借款或家庭借款，也決不是好的辦法。你必須下個定則：除了作營業的資本能可靠的生產事業外，絕對不可借債。如果有人借錢給你作爲教育費，

such a great risk that you should call it *half a gift of love*. If you live, pay it back with both interest and gratitude.

Try not to lend, either. Discourage your friends from borrowing anything. It is said that once a fountain pen is borrowed and used by another it is never the same again. That may not be true, but it is true that a really good friend tries not to borrow. If you borrow your friend's bicycle, you should *stand ready to buy him a new one* if when you return it he thinks it not as good as before. Remember the old saying that he who lends money to a friend is in danger of losing both the money and the friend.

14. The Nation's Borrowing

Like an individual, a nation may borrow money, and it too may borrow wisely or foolishly. If it borrows money (at proper rates) for productive investment and then makes sure that the money is properly invested, its borrowing is right and good. The citizens will gladly buy the government's bonds if they are sure that the loan they make to it will be rightly invested. Such governmental borrowing and investing is but putting the people's idle money to work on a national scale and for the national good. Cities do the same thing on a smaller scale.

China's national debt in 1924 was said to be about \$1,783,000,000 (silver). That seems to be a large debt, but in reality it is not large in comparison with her resources.

As a matter of fact, if she invested the money properly, China could borrow many times as much as she has borrowed and not be in any difficulty. China has wealth. Her citizens have money enough saved up to pay her debts *several times over*. A newspaper editor wrote recently about China's "*headlong rush to bankruptcy*." That is a startling expression, but it is not true that the

還是他冒著很大的險了，你對於這項款子，應稱爲一半的愛情禮物。如果你活著的話，就將本利連同你對他的謝忱，一起給還他。

借進固然不好。借出也是一樣危險的。親動你的朋友不要借任何東西。據說一枚自來水筆借給人家用後，便永遠不會像從前一樣了。這句話也許不對，但要好的朋友，不可借錢。確是對的。假使你借了你的朋友一輛腳踏車，等到還他的時候，如果他認爲不像從前一樣好，你須買一輛新的給他。記住一句古訓：凡是借錢給朋友的，便有喪失金錢和友誼的危險。

十四 國家的借貸

國家像一個人一樣，有時也要借錢，而且也有智愚的分別。若所借的錢（按相宜的利息）作爲生產的投資，並能確定投資的穩固性，這種借法是對的，是有益的。如果國民知道政府的借款僅作正當的用途，那麼他們也樂於購買政府的債券。像這類的政府借款與投資，不過是利用人民多餘的錢，去作國家的事業爲國家謀利益而已。城市方面，也舉行同樣的事，但規模較小而已。

中國的國債，在一九二四年，據說約有一、七八三、〇〇〇、〇〇〇銀元，看來好似一筆大債，但是，若與它的富源相比較，該目便不算大。

若照事實而言，中國能投資的得當，就是再借幾倍的外債，也並不困難。中國有它的財富。國民的儲蓄亦頗足償還幾倍的債務。某報的主筆最近批評中國說：『中國趨於破產地步了。』這是令人可驚的論調。但是，若說人民無錢或是國家無法還債，那倒不是事實。

people are without money or that the country has no way to pay its debts. It is only a question of investing national borrowings in national enterprises and of making proper payments promptly. Banks, both Chinese and foreign, will gladly lend to the government money to be used in building railroads or in developing mines, but they are unwilling to lend money to be put into salaries or other current expenses of the government.

15. Ought China to borrow Foreign Money

This question has been discussed by students all over China. China ought not to borrow any kind of money except for rightful purposes and *under conditions that do not violate China's national sovereignty*. The question is whether money borrowed for such good purposes as the development of China's great transportation system, the diking of her rivers, the opening up of her mines and oil fields, the planting of forests, and similar constructive and profitable ventures should be foreign money or not. *Now it goes without saying* that money should be borrowed at home if it can be secured there *on as good terms as abroad*. If it cannot, may it then be borrowed abroad? What are the proper conditions of a foreign loan? This makes us ask, "What is foreign money?" If a foreigner lends me Chinese money, is it a foreign loan or a Chinese loan? It is a foreigner's loan, but he has to get the money in China. Then is it foreign or Chinese? Money looks like a very national thing. It carries the marks of the nation on it. It may even be provincial. But when a Mexican dollar passes into the hands of a Chinese man, it is no longer Mexican. When a Kwangtung twenty-cent piece belongs to a man in Shanghai, it is no longer Kwangtung money. A Sun Yat-Sen dollar does not belong to Sun Yat-Sen, nor a Bank of England note to the Bank of England. Money is really not national. It flows freely all over the world, like the air. It goes wherever it is needed. If there is more money in the banks in China than business needs,

所成問題的，是國家能否把借來的錢去辦國家事業，能否按期償還國債。不論中外的銀行，都樂意把錢借給政府建設鐵路，或是開發礦業，但它們不願把錢借給政府作為發薪水或充經常費之用。

十五 中國應借外資嗎？

這個問題全中國的學生都討論過了。除作正當的用途並且條件上不侵犯中國的國權外，中國便不該借外債。問題就在借來的錢是否作有益的事業，如發展中國運輸方法，建築堤壩，開發礦產和池，種植森林，及其他相似的建設的有利的企業，是否應借外債。若說向國內借債的條件和向國外借的一樣；不用說，那自然要在國內借的了。要不然，便可借外債嗎？這件事我們要問：『什麼是外幣？』若一外人借給中國的錢幣，這算是中國債呢，還是外國債？這是外國債，但伊他的錢是在中國賺來的。那麼這是中國的還是外國的呢？金錢看來好似是國家的東西。它的上面有國家的標記。或者是屬於一省的。可是一元墨西哥銀幣到了中國人的手中，便不再成為墨西哥銀幣。兩角廣東銀幣到了上海人的手中，也便不再成為廣東銀幣了。孫中山的銀幣並不屬於孫中山，英國銀行的鈔票也不屬於英國銀行，可見金錢並不屬於一國的。它像空氣一樣，自由地佈滿全世界。什麼地方需要它，它就流到什麼地方去。中國銀行的金錢若多於營業所需，

and less in the banks in Japan, into Japan it flows. So all over the world. Exchange makes the flow slower, but does not stop it. Only fear and uncertainty will stop the flow. If the government of France wants to borrow more money than the banks in France have ready to lend, the money flows in from other countries to those banks. France may borrow from the French banks, but has she borrowed French money? It makes no difference whether you call it French money or not. The only question there is whether France wants to let the French bankers get money from the foreign bankers or to get it herself directly. *It is French money when France has it in her hands, but she may owe it to anybody.*

The great railways of America were in large part built with money from Europe. America did not have enough money saved up, *whereas Europe had it ready.* No one ever thought of asking whether America ought to use European money. American development would have been long delayed if it had not been for that foreign capital.

The problems in China are whether the government should borrow any money at all, whether money borrowed should be used for anything but good investments, *what sort of guaranties* should be given, and what sort of *supervision* there should be over the *handling of principal and interest.* These are difficult questions that will need all the careful thought and patriotic interest that your generation and the next can give.

16. Business Security

In this chapter we have referred many times to matters of risk or uncertainty. We said, for example, that investors are willing to accept lower and lower returns in proportion as the investment is safer from loss and surer of income. In proportion as *the element of chance is removed, there is security.* When a man wishes to borrow money, he is asked, "What security have you?" One

而日本銀行的金錢則極不足，那麼金錢就流到日本去了。所以金錢是流通全球的。兌換能使金錢流通較慢，但並不停止。只有恐慌和不穩定，可使其停止流通。如果法國政府要借錢，而法國的銀行的錢不足應付，別國的錢便流到法國的銀行裏去了。法國政府可向法國銀行借錢，但所借的是法國錢幣嗎？不論你稱它爲法國錢幣與否，完全是沒關係的。唯一的問題，就是法國政府要本國銀行去向外國銀行籌款，還是由政府直接借用外債。金錢到了法國人的手裏，便成法國錢幣了，但是它的錢還是借來的。

美國的大鐵道是借用歐洲的大宗款項造成的。美國並無那麼多的錢，但歐洲則有餘。誰也不想來問，美國應否使用歐洲的金錢，如果不借外來的資本，美國的發達早已停滯了。

中國的問題，是政府應否借債，所借的債是否僅作良好事業使用，應當用什麼作抵押，應當用什麼方法處理資本和利息。這些都是很困難的問題，要你們這一代和下一代的國民再三思考而熱心注意的。

十六 營業的穩妥性

在這一章裏，我們已把危險或不穩的事情說過幾次了。比如我們說過，投資愈穩妥而無損失，那麼收入亦愈確定，於是投資的人也願意接受低微的酬報了。事業的偶然性質減少，就叫作穩妥。一個人要向人借錢的時候，人家就要問他：『有什麼抵押品？』

reason that land rents in China are so low, while interest on money lent and profits on commercial investments are so high, is that land is a safe investment. It is not easy to injure, destroy, burn up, or carry away. All sensible people attempt to make their property as safe and their future welfare as secure as possible.

17. Insuring against Loss

One way of doing this is to insure against loss by fire. The wise owner of a house, especially if it *might be subject to great danger*, insures it. If it is built of brick and has concrete floors, if it is far removed from other houses, and if it does not contain any kerosene, gasoline, alcohol, etc., or if the owner has many houses scattered far and wide, he may *take the chances* and feel pretty safe. But most houses should be insured. The owner goes to the agent of a fire-insurance company and *buys a "policy"*—a paper promising to pay him a certain amount if the house is burned through no fault of his, or a proportionate sum if it is not entirely destroyed. A house burned is a house lost to the country whether it is insured or not. Insurance merely distributes the loss among a large number of people.

At regular times the owner of an insured house must *pay his "premium"*—half of 1 per cent, 1 per cent, or some such rate for his protection against loss. All the premiums received by a good company are enough to pay the few losses which occur and *to leave some profit over* for the stockholders of the insurance company.

Every ship and its cargo ought to be insured against loss by fire and against loss by water. If a ship is so old that no good company will insure it, passengers and merchants are foolish to use it, and its owners do wrong to send it out. You can also insure valuables against being stolen. You can insure against loss from almost any source.

中國的地租減低是理由之一，但是借款的利息和商業的投資却很低厚，所以地產是穩妥的投資。它不能被損傷，被破壞，被毀毀，被搬走。一切有知識的人，都打算使他們的財產穩妥，使後來的利益盡量的可靠。

十七 以保險償還損失

安全營業的一個法子就是保火險。一所房子的主人，尤其是具有危險性的房子的主人，是應該保險的。如果這房子是用磚造的，有水泥地盤的，如果它離開別的房子很遠的如果不放有煤油，汽油，酒精等物的，如果房主有好多房子散滿各處的，然後他才可不保險而覺得平安。但是大多數的房子是應該保險的。房主到火險公司裏去買一張保險單：假使這所房子被燒並非自己的過失，公司就賠他相當的損失，或者房子並未完全燒毀了，公司則給他一部份的錢，一所房子的被燒毀，不論保險與否，總是國家的損失。保險乃是使這損失由多的人民負擔吧了。

房主保險，必須按時繳納保險費——半厘一厘不等——藉作保證金。一個營業發達的公司所收的一切保險費，足以償付少數偶然發生的火險損失，且有餘資作保險公司股東的利潤。

各種的船和貨物都須保水火險。一隻船如果太舊，沒有好的公司肯保險，而搭客和商人還去利用它，那就未免太愚，同時，那個公司的主人也犯了罪愆。此外寶貴的東西你亦可保盜竊的險。總之，無論什麼東西你都可以保險的。

18. Life Insurance

One of the commonest forms of insurance is that against loss by death. If the insured person dies (except by suicide), a certain sum of money is given to his children or to whoever he has previously decided should receive it. This method of saving money by taking out a life-insurance policy is economically sound, and should be encouraged in China. If a man is dependent upon his wife but how do you know the insurance company is sure? *thing to live upon in the event of his death.* In general, the older he is, the greater are the chances that no insurance company will sell him a policy, and the higher the premium will be.

As a rule the best kind of insurance to buy is the simplest kind, called straight life insurance. You pay a fixed or even decreasing premium once a year until you are about fifty or sixty years old. Some policies require you to pay more, but allow you to stop paying after twenty years. Unfortunately life-insurance rates in China are still so high that it pays far better to invest savings than to buy insurance, if you can invest without too much risk to those dependent upon you. In America a \$1000 straight life policy for a man thirty years old costs about \$25 per year; in China it costs about twice that much.

19. Who will watch the Watchman?

A house is only as safe as the guard who guards it; the guard is only as safe as the man who watches him; and so on. You protect your property by fire insurance; but how do you know the insurance company is sure? You put your money in a bank, but how do you know the bank is sound? You insure your life, but how can you feel certain that when you die the company will be able to pay?

A life-insurance company must be very honest, very carefully managed, and very firmly founded. It must

十八 人壽保險

最普通的一種保險，就是人壽保險。如果保險的人死了，（除自殺以外）保險公司便將賠款給他的兒女或他生前所指定的人。這種帶人壽保險儲蓄的方法，確是經濟上的保障，是中國所宜提倡的。一個人若靠薪水過活，他死了之後，那張保險單便可作為維持家庭生產之用。普通，總是年紀愈老保險的機會亦愈少，同時保險費亦愈大。

以常例而言，買保險最好的方法，就是那最簡單的直接人壽保險法。這方法只要你付了指定的或者每年逐漸減少的保險費，直到年紀五六十歲為止。還有一種多付的辦法，但到二十年後亦可准你止付。不幸得很，在中國人壽險費太大了，所以人們都願作穩妥的投資儲蓄，不希望買保險單。在美國，一個三十歲的男子欲買千元的直接人壽保險，每年只須納二十五元保險費。可是在中國便須納費兩倍以上了。

十九 誰監察那監察人

一間房子的安全須看管房子的看管人；而看管人的安全，又須視監察他的那個人；由此可以類推。你藉火險公司保護你的財產，但你怎樣知道這公司可靠呢？你把錢存在銀行裏，但你怎樣知道銀行殷實呢？你保了壽險，但你又怎知道你死的時候，公司會給你賠款呢？

人壽公司必須辦理得很誠實，很謹慎，並且還須有極穩固的基礎。

have every applicant carefully examined by a skillful doctor to make sure that he is not likely to die soon. It must handle all its business in a very exact manner over a long period, because its business must run on from generation to generation. It should be a business that continues forever. The premiums furnish the working capital; therefore most of the profits should go to the policyholders, not to the stockholders or managers. The capital must be large enough to meet all needs, even if there should be some sudden epidemic that killed a large part of the policyholders. Finally, the capital of the company must be safely invested; for in such a company a failure would injure not only the stockholders, as in an ordinary company, but also the many men, women, and children dependent upon that company for protection.

All this means that such companies, including banks and stock exchanges, ought to be strictly inspected by the best-trained and most dependable public officials, and that they ought to be regulated by strict laws that would prevent them from deceiving the public. Here is need for good government and a strong sentiment to guide it. Make inquiries to find out if insurance companies in your region are surely sound and do not cheat the policyholders. Make a study of the existing regulations for such business and suggest any improvement you can.

QUESTIONS AND EXERCISES

1. In what other way besides spending it foolishly can you waste money?
2. Explain how savings banks help the individual and the nation.
3. Suppose you had a thousand dollars. How could you make it work for you?
4. What is there which you want very much now that you might have had if you had not spent your money foolishly in small amounts as you received it.

它必須聘有學識的醫師，很細心地檢驗那個投保的人一時確實死不了。它必須嚴密的在長時間中經營一切事務，因為這種業是預備一代一代永遠傳下去的。保險費可以供給營業的資本，所以大部分的利益應歸被保險的人，不應歸諸股東或經理。資本必須充足應付一切需要，就是偶然發生瘟疫，被保的人因此死亡時，保公司仍須賠款。末了，公司的資本必須作穩妥的投資；因為這類公司如果失敗，不比普通的公司祇是股東的損失，就是依賴公司保險的男女和兒童也要蒙受損失了。

像這類的公司——連銀行和證券交易所也包括在內——應受可靠的地方官吏最好的訓練和嚴密的監察，並且應受嚴格的法律所裁判，藉此防止有欺騙民衆的勾當。需要良好的政府和有力的輿論作輔導。調查你本地的保險公司，是否殷實可靠而不欺騙民衆。研究此類事業的現有章程，並竭力提議改良的方針。

問答練習題

- (1) 除了愚蠢的用法外，倘有其他浪費金錢的方法否？
- (2) 說明儲蓄銀行怎樣資助個人與國家。
- (3) 假使你有一千塊錢，你打算怎樣用法？
- (4) 若你不濫用你賺得的少數金錢，你將打算怎樣去利用它。

5. Is saving always thrift? No; for certain expenditures are necessary for both social and personal progress. What are some of these?
6. Write a short story under the title "The Man who Saved Money only to Waste it."
7. Why is gambling an enemy to the nation?
8. Explain how high rates of interest handicap China.
9. Draw up a family budget.
10. Debate the question Ought China to borrow foreign money?
11. Discuss the advantages of life insurance.

(5) 儲蓄常算是節省嗎？不是；因為社會和個人的進步，某種的費用是必要的。所謂某種費用是指那幾種？

(6) 用「有錢不用即浪費」的題目寫一短篇故事。

(7) 賭博爲什麼可算是國家的敵人？

(8) 說明高利貸妨害中國的情形。

(9) 畫一張家庭預算表。

(10) 討論「中國應否借外債」的問題。

(11) 詳述人壽保險的利益。

CHAPTER XI-

BUSINESS AND SERVICE

1. An Ancient Classification of People

In India people are divided by birth into "castes," or completely separated classes, each of which is considered far more honorable than the one below it. Fortunately China has no such caste system. On the contrary it has always been possible in China for an able man from a poor and uneducated family to rise to almost any position in the nation.

There was, however, in ancient China an attempt to name several grades of society. The scholar-official was ranked first, next was the farmer, then the workman, then the merchant, and lastly the soldier. Soldiers, servants, and the like were put near the bottom, because they produced nothing—they only did things for other people, *served them in one way or another*. Below them were, of course, the really harmful and destructive groups. Above them came the merchants and tradesmen and carriers, because, although they did not produce, they brought the goods forth to the public—they handled the goods for the producers. Above them were the craftsmen, artisans, and other workmen, because they turned raw materials into goods ready for use. Above them, in a very honorable position, were placed the farmers, because they really produced the wealth of the country. Finally, the *scholar-officials* were placed at the top, chiefly because the people had great respect for learning.

2. Service is the Thing to Measure

This classification of people is no longer accepted as right. We do not mark people off in high and low classes

第十一章 營業與服務

一 古代人民的階級

印度人生下來就分爲兩種階級，也可以說是完全不同的階層，每一階級的人都視自己比低一階級的人榮耀。幸而中國沒有那種分級的制度。反過來說，中國的才人往往出身低微，並未受過高深教育，但都能升至國家中的任何地位。

可是，古代的中國會把社會分爲數級。士爲上級，農次之，工又次之，商更次之，最下等的就是軍人。軍人，僕役及其他相似一類的人，都是下層階級，因爲他們不能生產什麼，只是受雇於人，役用於人。比他們更下層的，便是一般確乎有害社會的破壞者了。比他們高一層的，就是商人，小販，脚夫，因爲他們雖不能生產，可是把貨物運給民衆——爲生產者經營貨物。比這級人高一層的，就是手藝人，匠人，及其他工人，因爲他們把原料造成貨物，供人使用，比此類高一層的，處於尊嚴地位的就是農夫，因爲他們真能生產國中的財富。地位最高的，就是學者了，主要的原因，就是人民最尊敬學問。

二 服務是估量品格的東西

人民的劃分階級，不再認爲正當的了。現在的人民並無高下的區別。

today. This is a democratic age. That means that we recognize the *interdependence of occupations* and that each man should *stand high or low in our estimation* according to his own value, not according to who he is or who his father was or what kind of work he does.

In the Grecian city of *Thebes*, about as long ago as the time of Confucius, there lived a wise and good and patriotic citizen whose name was Epaminondas. Certain of his enemies, who found it very difficult to attack so good a man, decided to *nominate him for some very low-grade position*. If he should be defeated, they would say that he could not win even the lowest office; if he should be elected, he would be dishonored either by his refusal to serve or by the character of the office. He was nominated for the position of garbage collector for the city, and elected. He surprised his enemies by saying: "I will accept the position and serve the people. If the office *does not give honor to me, I will give honor to it.*" And so he did by rendering in it great service to the people who had elected him.

It is service rendered that must be measured to determine how high a position a man holds. The garbage collector may be one of the most important of a city's workers. The head of a government is sometimes the most useless official in it. A certain merchant may be doing more than any farmer or official to develop his district. A certain policeman may be the most important and helpful man on a street. A certain doctor may do more for his city than any learned scholar or high officer. A certain school-teacher may render more service to his province than *all the military leaders put together*; or, on the contrary, a certain general may do more for his province than a leader in education. High-grade men and women are found in all occupations. It is not a question of whether the work is clean or dirty, hot or cool, easy or hard, mental or physical; it is a question of service.

因爲這是民主的時代。那意思是說，我們要明白職業是互相依靠的，而且我們認爲一個人的高下，是照他本身的價值來評定，並非看他在那種人，或者他的父親是誰，或者他所作的是何項工作。

大約在孔子時代，希臘希比斯城裏有個聰明良善而愛國的公民，他的名字叫伊沛米納代司。他的敵人因爲他是好人，找不出方法去攻擊他，就決意選他作下等的事情。要是他失敗了，他們就說他這最低微的工作也不能勝任；要是他被選舉了，若不是使他因拒絕工作而遭受侮辱，就是爲職務卑下而減低身分。後來他果然被選爲城裏掃垃圾的人了。他驚駭他的敵人道：『我願接受這個位置並爲人民服務。如果這個位置不給我榮耀，我就使它榮耀。』於是他盡力效勞，爲選舉他的人服務

因此，一個人的地位高下，是以他的服務去衡量的。那個掃垃圾者說不定是城中最重要的工作人員之一。政府的領袖有時也是最無用的官吏。商人去發展本地的事業，或者比農夫官吏更多。警察在街上也許是最重要的服務。醫師在他的城裏所做的事情，也許比博學之士與高等官吏爲多。學校教員在本省所盡的義務，也許比許多軍界領袖更多；反之，軍官保護本省，也許比教育領袖更多。在各種職業中，現在都可以找到高尚的男女。工作的清潔或污穢，冷或熱，難或易，用腦或用力，這都不成問題；問題只在看你如何服務而已。

3. Money is not Dirty

The old English expression "*filthy lucre*" has *lost its force*. It suggested that money was a low-grade thing; that a gentleman did not handle it or care about it. There has been a somewhat similar idea in China. Gentlemen have avoided discussing personal money matters. Even when a man was paid for his services the money was called "*shoe-money*" or "*firewood-money*" rather than his "pay." This is a good idea in so far as it applies to people who wish to consider service itself and personal relations as more *worthy of consideration* than the getting of something for themselves. No gentleman is selfish and grasping. The best things in life are not to be bought.

However, the idea that money is a debasing thing is all wrong. A gentleman should not have *the least hesitation* in dealing with another *in a businesslike way*. If a principal wishes to employ a teacher, he should state the work to be done and the payment that he considers right for that work. If the teacher really considers the amount less than just, he does honor to himself and to the principal by saying so and by explaining the reasons. Their opinions may not agree, but there should be frankness *in adjusting any differences*.

They may not be able *to come to terms*, or they may be able to do so in spite of a difference of mere opinions. In any case, frank discussion between honest gentlemen leaves them both in equally honorable positions, and better friends than ever. If the arrangement is not a just one, the future is sure to reveal that fact, and gentlemen have no hesitation or embarrassment in discussing such matters.

The Old-fashioned Middleman

The modern idea is to *do away with the middleman*. He has been a great waster. Modern business is fighting against him vigorously. He gets too much of what

三 金錢並不污穢

英國的一句古諺：「污穢的金錢」，這已經失去它的力量了。它說金錢是卑鄙的東西，是君子所不取，所不看重的。中國對於金錢，也有相似的重義。君子絕不是談個人經濟狀況。就是一個人因服務而得着的報酬，也稱為「銀錢」「薪水」，並不叫「酬金」。如果一個人把服務和人的關係比財富看重，這自然是好的意思。君子是不自私而且不貪利的。生活中較寶貴的東西，並非金錢所能買得到的。

可是，若說金錢是卑鄙的，那就錯了。君子與人來往要認真，固無倖餘地。如果校長要聘一位教員，他得說明應做的工作所定的酬勞。假使教員認為薪金太少，對校長說明理由，這並不算有損體面。也許他們的意見不相同，但應坦白地調整不同的意見。

他們或者不能合作，或者意見不同，仍有合作的可能。無論如何，誠實君子中的坦白討論，並不妨礙彼此之間的尊嚴和友誼。如果雙方所議的條件有不公正之處，過後自會明白，君子討論此類事情時，不必顯露偏狹不安的態度。

四 舊式的中人

新時代的思想是主張取消中人的。中人是最大的消費者。近代的商業莫不盡力反抗中人。因為他從生產者和消耗者中奪去了很多的利潤。

belongs to the producer and the consumer. Less and less is he being used to arrange engagements and marriages. The middleman has been employed largely because of the feeling that it is not honorable to discuss personal matters frankly. We ought to be glad that this idea is changing rapidly. How much more honorable, sensible, and satisfactory it is to deal with a friend, or even an enemy, *face to face*, than to discuss personal matters with a middleman! Let us do our part to help bring in the day of direct dealing. Away with the old middleman!

5. What is Money?

Wrong ideas about money, bargaining, and business in general are partly due to a misunderstanding of the character of money. Is money the same as gold and silver? Can it be brass? Can it be paper? It used to be shells, rice, cloth,—lots of things. Coins and paper representing coins have come to be considered the most convenient forms of money. But what is money really? It is something that makes it easy for one person to exchange his goods or services for another person's goods or services. An innkeeper gives a barber twenty cents for cutting his hair; the barber gives a ricksha man twenty cents for carrying him across the city; the ricksha man gives the innkeeper twenty cents for letting him sleep at his inn. They have merely exchanged services. If there had been only two *in the cycle*, the coin would not have been needed—the use of the money was only a convenient way of making the exchange.

6. Goods and Services

It is the same way in the exchange of goods for goods, or goods for services, or services for goods. The money only makes the exchanges easy and helps in the discussion of relative values. Money has also the character of durability. My cabbage may be good to exchange for shoes, but not so good as money if I wish to wait a while.

訂婚和結婚時的媒人，現已逐漸減少，中人所以大批被廢用，大抵是因為私人的事務不好意思直接討論。這種思想改變的很快，我們確認為可慰的。不論對於朋友，甚至對於敵人，關於私人的事情，若不用中人說項，而能當面磋商，這是何等榮耀，何等有見識，何等令人滿意啊！我們應盡量提倡直接交涉，打倒舊式的中人。

五 金錢是什麼

關於金錢，貿易，商業的錯誤的見解，大抵是由不明瞭金錢的性質而起的。金錢是否就是金銀？它可用銅質鑄造的嗎？它可用紙質製造的嗎。過去的貝殼，米，布，好多東西都可以當錢用。現在的錢幣和代表錢幣的紙幣是被認為金錢形式中最便利的了。可是，金錢到底是什麼？這就是和人交換貨物的交換勞力的東西。一個客店主人因為要剪髮，便給理髮匠兩毛錢；理髮匠因為要坐洋車，經過一條街，就給洋車夫兩毛錢；洋車夫因為要住客店，又給客店主人兩毛錢；這不過是交換勞力吧了。如果交換的範圍只限定兩個人，那麼錢幣也就失其效用——使用金錢只是交換中的一個便利的方法。

六 貨物與勞力

以貨物交換貨物，以貨物交換勞力，以勞力交換貨物，也是一樣的。金錢只使交換便利，幫助討論相對價值吧了。金錢也有耐久性的。我的捲心菜或者可以換鞋，但我如欲稍待時日，那它便不如金錢好。

If I have money I can buy goods or services almost any time I like.

Is there any great difference between goods and services? Is the farmer who produces the rice more honorable than the merchant who does you and him the service of bringing the rice to you? Are goods more honorable than services? Is a servant in your home a person of low honor? Is a man who carries your baggage a low fellow because he serves you? Then so is the clerk who works in a shop, and the merchant who handles goods for you, and the doctor who cures you, and the banker who handles your money for you, and the teacher who helps you to learn, and the official who protects you, and the judge who decides a case for you, and your father, who gives you a home. In the first place, service is like goods: you buy and sell it in the market, just as you do goods, and you ought to be just as honest and honorable and self-respecting in buying or selling service as in buying and selling goods. In the second place, goods represent services. Rice has a price because people have rendered service in producing and delivering it. This is not true of air, which is valuable but not salable. All goods represent just so much service rendered; thus goods and services are *on a level*, and money is only a means of getting service rendered to you.

7. What is Business?

Business, therefore, is the exchanging of services, past, present, and future. Any kind of business—production, transportation, professional work, amusement enterprises, or anything which is really good service given—is honorable. Money received honestly in such ways is honorable, for it means that service is due because service has been rendered. Money stolen or won in gambling is not honorable, for it means *services to be demanded when no service has been rendered*.

了。假使我有金錢，不論何時，我都可以購買貨物或勞力。

貨物與勞力有大的分別嗎？農夫出產糧食，商人把米賣給你，是農夫比商人尊貴嗎？是貨物比勞力尊貴嗎？你家裏的僕人是卑賤的嗎？代你運行李的人。他因為給你服務，就算低微的人嗎？那麼，在商店服務的司帳，為你辦貨的商人，給你治病的醫師，替你料理銀錢事項的銀行職員，幫助教你讀書的教師，保護你的官吏，給你審理案子的法官，為你組織家庭的父親，也都是一樣的。第一，勞力就等於貨物：你在市場上賣買勞力，是與賣買貨物一樣的，但無論你是賣買勞力或賣買貨物，你必要同樣的誠實、高尚和自重。第二，貨物代表勞力：糧食是有價格的，因為人們曾經用力去生產它去運輸它。空氣便不然了，它雖有價值，但並不賣錢。所有的貨物都是代表勞力的；因此貨物與勞力均在同等地位，金錢不過獲得勞方的一個手段而已。

七 營業是什麼

這樣說來，營業就是交換過去現在和將來的勞力的。不論那種營業——出產，運輸，專門職業，娛樂，或其他有益的勞力——都是高尚的。用這種方法賺得的金錢是高尚的，因為自己已為人服役，也就應得別人的服役。偷來的錢和由賭博贏來的錢並不高尚，因為別人要求你的勞力，而你的勞力卻未給出來。

Let us, then, look upon the honest business man who renders us service as just as honorable as the farmer, the manufacturer, or the scholar, if he renders us just as much service. Let us look upon the honest ricksha man as an honorable business man, selling us his services in return for money, which is a demand upon us for service likewise. Let us deal with money as a clean thing and with business as honorable and good for the country. Let us fight against the idea that business is a kind of gamble or robbery. Let us despise the man who wants to get rich quick—that is not usually honest business—and support the idea that business is the rendering of service in exchange for service, *the relative values of which are expressed in money.*

3. The Dignity of Labor

No labor, then, is dishonorable when it is the giving of service to the community. It is only dishonorable when it is poorly done or when it is harmful or useless. We have just seen that the household servant, the ricksha man, the coolie, the boatman, the barber, the day laborer, are producers of services like the farmer or doctor or teacher, a merchant dealing in services like the merchant who sells gramophones or gold watches or rice. If we look down upon the workman or servant, we are only acknowledging that we still have some of the cruel injustice of those who despised manual work, because they did not have to do it.

Modern nations are trying hard to get away from the idea that brain-work is more honorable than hand-work. People who did brain-work used to dominate over those who did manual work. The idea that a servant or employee may be ill treated—scolded or beaten or neglected or *underpaid*—comes down from this injustice, and it dishonors not the one employed but the employer. The keeping of slave girls to do the manual work in the household is another example of this *vicious idea*. Here is a battle for justice and for a right stand before the

如果誠實的高人，給我們同樣價值的服務，我們就尊重他們，像尊重農夫，製造者，學者一樣。我們也要把誠實的洋車夫當作高商人看待，因為他們出賣勞力去換金錢，這金錢又可再換我們的勞力。我們要視金錢為潔淨的東西，視商業，為國家高尚有益的事業。我們要反對視營業為賭博或盜竊的謬論。我們要輕視那種急於想發財的人——這不是一種誠實的營業——並且要扶助這種思想，說營業是勞力和勞力的交換，金錢無非是和勞力相對的東西。

八 勞工神聖

勞工為社會服務，所以勞工都是神聖的。只有不良的，有害的，無用的工作，才算是卑下的。我們已經明白家庭的傭人，洋車夫，苦力，船夫，理髮匠，日工，都是為社會服務的人，正如農夫，醫師，教員，經營事業的商人，例如賣留聲機器的，賣金錶的，或販米的商人一樣。假使我們看輕工人和僕役，那我們就承認自己還和從前的不人道的人們一樣，輕視手工業者以為他們並無特殊功績。

現代的國家正竭力避免「勞心者治人勞力者治於人」的見解。從前用腦力的人總是統治用氣力的人。他們有種思想，以為僕役或傭計是可受虐待的——或罵，或打，或不睬，或不給工資——這是由不人道主義傳下來的，非但侮辱了雇員並且侮辱了雇主。收養婢女在家操作，也是另一種不良思想的例子。現世界都為正義公理而奮鬥，

world, a battle which the young men and women of this modern age must fight. Begin at once. Do our coats and long finger nails mean "no work"? Then let us get rid of them and show that we do not *subscribe to that doctrine*. China has enough hard tasks to do to *keep us all working*. Let us join the workers. Let us do all we can to dignify labor. Old and young, let us *take our coats off, roll up our sleeves, show no fear of the good soil of China*, and do some hard manual labor to prove that we honor the workman. Let us *raise more rice and wheat*, plant more shade trees and fruit orchards, build better roads, cultivate more beautiful flowers, and raise better hens and chickens. It is not uncommon in these days to see a wealthy man in old clothes hard at work on a farm or driving a wagon or painting his house or oiling an engine. An employer goes among his men and *"leads a hand."* A contractor for a big bridge is right on the bridge with the laborers; he respects them and they respect him, and they drive every rivet honestly because they are respected. Only mutual respect will lead to mutual coöperation among various economic classes and to the promotion of the general welfare of the country.

9. "Service" the Watchword Today

We can easily see, therefore, why *the watchword of modern civilization* is "service." We have seen how every bit of *honest business* is increasing wealth or enjoyment, and every stroke of *honest work* is rendering service. All good work and business are for society as well as for the individual. The nation prospers by the increase of *sound business and honest labor*. It is all a part of the patriotic duty of every citizen.

How much better, however, is the service that is rendered without thought of pay! A mother *pours her life out in service for her children*, only because she loves them. A good physician works for his patient far beyond what might be demanded. A good teacher does not

當今的青年男女是應該參加這種專門的，而且現在就應該立刻進行。我們的長袍和長指甲是不工作的意思嗎？那麼讓我們拋棄了他們，表示我們反對那種主張。中國需要我們做的工作很多。我們要加入勞工。我們要盡力使勞工神聖。不論年紀老幼，都得脫下長袍，捲起袖子，表示愛護中國的疆地，勤勞地工作，表明我們尊重勞工。我們要多種稻麥，多植蔭涼的樹木與菜園，建築平坦的道路，栽培美麗的花草，蓄養佳種的母雞和雛雞。現在有好多富人穿着舊衣服在田裏工作，或是趕着大車，或是油漆房屋，或是修理機器。雇主也去同他們一道工作。大橋樑的承辦者，也一起在橋上和工人工作；他尊重他們，他們也一樣尊重他，就是頂一隻釘子，他們也決不隨便，因為他們是受人敬仰的。在各種經濟階級裏，只有互相的尊敬，始能贏得互相的合作，始能謀得國家普遍的福利。

九 『服務』是現代的口號

「服務」為什麼是現代文化的口號，這是我們很容易看清楚。我們已經知道，正當的事業足以增加財富和快樂，誠實的工作是為社會效勞。所有好的工作和事業，不僅為個人，抑且為社會。國家的強盛，全賴增加穩固的事業和誠實的勞工。這是每個公民的愛國義務。

可是，服務而不想得着酬報，多麼可贊許啊！母親盡力養育兒女，只因為她愛他們。慈善的醫師為病人服務，超過他所需求的一切。熱心的教員並不求工作與月薪相稱。

think only of how much work his pay demands. A good student does more than his teacher expects, not less. A true patriot never asks what his country pays him or even how much it expects of him. The world will never forget how Sun Yat-Sen generously gave up his position as president because he at that time thought it was the way to render further service to his beloved country of China.

10. The Golden Rule

Confucius, China's famous teacher, said, "Do not do to others as you would not wish done to yourself." There is a very similar saying in Christianity, called the Golden Rule: "Act toward others as you would like to have them act toward you." It is indeed the golden rule. In fact, the secret of human progress and happiness is found in love, sympathy, generosity, sacrifice, and service for mankind.

11. The Red Cross

Many organizations have grown up from this spirit of sympathy and service. One of them is the Red Cross, which carries help to the sick or wounded or starving, without regard to who they are, where they are, or why they are suffering. Countries all over the world have Red Cross organizations. Patriotic and generous boys and girls, men and women everywhere, support the Red Cross and other such organizations for service.

12. How Students helped the Nation

The story of what American boys and girls did during the World War illustrates how students in Western countries helped their own nations. In one year the Boy Scouts raised over \$100,000,000 for the government by selling Liberty Bonds. In New York State, when the Department of Agriculture began to plan how the state could furnish its share of food for the army and the Allies,

用功的學生所做的事情超過教員所希望的更多。一個真正的愛國者，永不問國家給他多少酬報，或者對國家有多少要求。全世界的人永不忘孫中山先生，憤然地放棄總統的地位，因為他當時就認為只有這個辦法，能使他繼續為可愛的祖國服務。

十 金科玉律

中國的聖哲孔子說過：『己所不欲，勿施於人。』這和基督教有一句金言：『以己所欲，施之於人，』意思正是十分相仿的，這確是金科玉律。實在說一句，人類進步的快樂的祕訣，全在愛情，同情，好義，犧牲，和為人類服務的裏面。

十一 紅十字會

許多機關的成立，全賴同情和服務的精神。紅十字會便是其中之一。它幫助病人，或受傷者，或飢餓者，不問他們是誰，不問他們是何處人，也不問他們是為何而受苦。全世界的國家都設有紅十字會。全世界愛國的好義的男女和兒童，都擁護紅十字會及其他類似的服務機關。

十二 學生怎樣幫助國家

歐洲大戰的時候，美國男女兒童的故事，可以引證西洋各國學生怎樣去救他們的國家。一年之中，童子軍為政府出賣「自由債券」，籌得一〇〇,〇〇〇,〇〇〇元。在紐約州裏，當農業部起初打算怎樣使該州可將食物供給軍隊和聯軍時，

It had to know, first of all, how much grain, fruit, and vegetables were on hand, how much more land could be cultivated, how many workers would be needed. . . To get all this information meant *taking an agricultural census*. But a census costs time and money. Time was short, and there was no money available. Where could the state find workers who would ask no pay? In the schools, of course. Within five days every farmer in fifty-six counties of the state had been "investigated" by school children. And within ten days the state had the information that it needed. -

When summer came and the states did not have men or workers enough to plow and sow and cultivate, who came to the rescue? The schools, of course. On hillsides and in valleys all over the country *tents were pitched*, huts were built, and the boys of America went into summer quarters *to fight with hoes and rakes*. In some states there were "*flying squadrons*," which were called on in emergencies. If a farmer found that his tomatoes would spoil if not picked at once, he telephoned to the flying squadron. If another farmer found that *the potato-bug army* was too much for him, he summoned the flying squadron. And the squadron never failed.

Girls as well as boys were busy in the fields and in the schoolhouses. The schools of one town *vied with* the schools of a neighboring town. One class *vied with* another.

In 1925 the municipal government of Canton wanted to take a census of the population of the city. There had never been an accurate census taken in China, and a knowledge of the size and character of the population was most essential to the many new tasks that the government was going to undertake. The taking of a census of such a large city as Canton would require many workers and *an elaborate procedure*. The policemen were too few and not prepared for the task. Where could the government find an army of intelligent workers? In the schools, of course. The students of all the middle

第一他們就得知道自己有多少現成的穀米，水菜和蔬菜，有多少地可耕種，以及需要多少工人。要知道這個報告，必須調查農民的戶口。但調查戶口需要人工和金錢的，時間既短促，經濟又不甚充裕，州裏怎能找到自盡義務的工人呢？自然，只有往學校裏去設法了。在五天功夫裏面，五十六州的每個農民，就被學校的學生調查過了。十天以內該州就得着所需要的消息了。

到了夏天，州裏便缺少男工去耕地，播種，栽植了，那麼誰去擔任此項工作呢？自然也是學校了。國內各處的山坡上，溪谷中，都築有帳幕，造着小屋，美備的男軍便遷到炎熱的地帶，拿起鋤頭耙去子奮鬥。有些州裏，還有所謂「飛行隊」，是應付緊急事務的。如果一個農夫看見他的番茄不立刻採下就要爛掉的時候，他就打電話給飛行隊。如果另外一個農夫看見番薯的害蟲太多，他可召集飛行隊，設法撲滅。飛行隊，是決不失約的。

女孩像男孩一樣，不論在田莊上或在學校裏都是很忙的。時而本鎮的學校和鄰近的學校比賽，時而本班又和別班比賽。

一九二五年廣州市政府舉行全市的人口調查。中國向無準確的人口調查。人口的數目和人口的變遷，是政府舉辦各種新事業所必須具有的知識。要調查像廣州市那樣大的地方的人口，須有大批的人員和精確的方法。警費一來太少，二來並無擔任此項工作的準備。政府到什麼地方去找這般伶俐的工作人員呢，自然也是學校了。所有城裏的中學，

schools, colleges, and professional schools in the city volunteered their service. They divided the city into a number of wards and the student body into teams. Each team, accompanied by a policeman, went to the ward assigned to it and talked to the people about the importance and advantages of census-taking. They went from house to house, from shop to shop, to distribute blanks, explained to the people how to fill them out at a specified time, and collected the blanks after they had been filled out. Within eight days, the census of Canton was taken.

Many students in various provinces of China open free schools to teach workmen. They travel from one place to another during vacations, talking to people on patriotic subjects and *arranging entertaining and informing programs*. These are all good ways to serve the nation.

13. A Chinese should serve his Country Every Day

To "serve" means to help or to work for. Most people are kept busy working for themselves. But no person should let a day go by without doing something that is for the good of his country. This is not so hard as it seems. China has more than four hundred million people, who live in small groups. You will never even see most of these millions, but you will always be a part of some group. You must serve your group, however large or small it is. The smallest groups of people are families; the next larger are neighborhoods, groups of families; and then come villages, towns, and cities. You spend part of your time at home with the rest of your family, part of it at school, and some of it on the playground. You are seldom alone.

Even when *school days are over*, young people will live and work and play in groups. Whether you work in an office, in a factory, in a hospital, in the army, you will be one worker among many. You will have to serve your country by serving the different groups of people with whom you study and work and play.

大學、專門學校的學生，莫不自動去服務。他們把城市分作若干區，把學校分作若干隊。每隊中伴着一警察，同到所指定的區裏，把調查戶口的重要和利益講給人民聽。他們從一家到一家，從一店到一店，分發調查表，告訴人民在一定時間填寫，填寫後再將調查表收回。八天當中，廣州的戶口就調查畢了。

中國各省的好多學生，創辦義務學校教育工人。在假期中，他們從甲地到乙地，向民衆宣傳愛國的事情，並擬定款待和報告的格式。這些全是爲國服務的好方法。

十三 中國人應天天爲國家服務

「服務」的意義，就是幫助人家，或替人家工作。多數人爲自己的工作忙碌。但是個人都應天天爲國家做些有益的事情。這件事看來好像很難，其實並不難。中國有四萬萬以上的人民，他們一小羣一小羣聚居着。你永遠看不見這四萬萬人民的大部分，但你却常常是某一羣中之一。不管這一羣是多是少，你總得給它服務。人們最小的一羣便是家庭；比較大的是隣居，也是家族的組合；然後就是鄉村，鎮市和都會了。你耗費一部分時間在家裏和你的家族同住，一部分時間在學校裏，還有一部分時間在運動場裏，而獨處的時候卻總是很少的。

即使離開了學校，青年人也須在一羣之中生活，工作，遊戲。無論你服務的地方是個機關，工廠，醫院，軍隊，你祇是其中的分子之一。你的服務國家，就是服務跟你在一起讀書工作遊戲的不同的一羣。

It is natural for people to live in groups. So natural is it that when a person chooses to live entirely alone, it seems very queer. Such a person is called a hermit. Hermits make poor citizens, for *living means getting and giving, helping and being helped.*

14. Some Special Ways of Serving

We have already seen that serving is helping. This means that now, while you are in school, you must in some way help.

- | | |
|-----------------|---------------------------|
| 1. Your family. | 4. Your club. |
| 2. Your class. | 5. Your neighborhood. |
| 3. Your school. | 6. Your town, or village. |

If you suddenly left your home and went to a distant part of the country, in what way would your family, school, club, and town miss you? This is *the best possible test for finding out* how much or how little you are doing that is helpful to others.

Anything that a person does or says to make others safer, healthier, or happier is serving his country. If you live on a farm which sends fruit to the village or city, you can help—no one knows how many people—by seeing that no dirt or impurity of any kind touches this fruit. Fruit carries disease. If you can do something to get cleaner fruit into the market, you will be serving the community. You can help to destroy pests that kill vines and fruit trees so that these pests will not spread to other farms and villages.

You can help take care of the road which runs past your village. If a heavy rain has washed out a part of it, even one boy could repair the damage. If there is a bad place which might result in accidents to carts or barrows or animals or cars, or a washout which you cannot repair, you can get help in repairing it or at least put up a sign, warning passers-by of the danger. Every well-regulated town has officials who are supposed to

羣居是人類的天性。如果一人獨處，人家就覺得奇怪了。像這樣的人是叫作隱士。隱士是可憐的國民，因為生存的意思無非是接受與供給，助人與被助。

十四 幾種特別的服務法

服務就是幫助，這是我們早已明白了。這意思是說，當你在學校的時候，你必須設法幫助：(1)你的家庭；(2)你的同班；(3)你的學校；(4)你的俱樂部；(5)你的隣舍；(6)你的市鎮或鄉村。

如果你忽然離開了家鄉到別的地方去，那麼你的家族、學校、團體、市鎮，失了你之後會覺得怎樣呢？這是最好的一個試驗，由此可以看出你幫助人家的多少。

一個人無論所做的，所說的，若能使別人得到更平安、更健康、更快樂，就是服務他的國家。如果你住在一個田莊裏，那田莊要運水菓到村鎮或城市裏去，你儘可幫助——誰也不知道你可幫助多少人——去看看，水菓上面有否污穢不潔的東西黏附着。水菓能傳染疾病。你若能做些事情使比較潔淨的水菓運到市場去，那你就是為社會服務。你可幫助去除滅生在葡萄樹上和水菓樹上的害蟲，使它們不再傳播到別的田莊和鄉村。

你能幫助照料那經過你的村鎮的道路。如果大雨把路沖去了一部分，那麼就是一個孩子也能修理它。假使有個損壞的地方，會使重車、手車、動物，及其他各種車輛發生危險的，或是一塊無法修補的地方，你可幫助去修補，至少得在那路上作個標記，警告行人注意危險。每個治理有方的鎮市，總有官吏去注意。

attend to roads, markets, clean food, and the like, but this does not change your own duty. So far as possible each person must be a volunteer town official. What you can do, you should do regardless of anyone else. Often by not doing a certain thing a person is really serving his community. If every man in the city threw his newspaper into the street when he had finished reading it the streets would become full of newspapers. By not doing this careless thing a man helps to *keep the streets attractive* and to save the expense of gathering up the litter.

There is another special way in which everybody can help the country—by becoming an accurate information spreader. So many people repeat what they hear *without knowing or caring whether it is true* that much harm is often done. A bank was once *ruined by a "run"* caused by a false report that the cashier had stolen some of the bank's money. A good business rule would be a good citizenship rule:

When in doubt, say nothing. If you don't know a thing, don't tell it. Don't think that you know a thing; be sure that you know it.

One of the ancient sayings of Confucius is still good today:

*What one knows, to know that one knows it;
What one does not know, to know that one does not
know it;
This is true knowledge.*

15. Master Some Task

If you want to serve, become efficient. *Be a master of some sort of work.* Know how to do it perfectly. Become skillful and quick at it. To master one thing will make it easier to be of service and easier to master the next thing.

Hands and brain need to be trained to "play" as well as to work. Whether it is learning to ride horseback or to swim or to play basket ball or tennis, be sure that you have really mastered some form of wholesome play. A sixteen year-old boy who applied for an office position

道路，市場，清潔的食物，及其他類似的東西，但這並不改變你自己的責任。人人必須搶先作個本鄉效力的人員。你只要能做什麼，就做什麼，不必去管他人。有時就是不做某種事情，也算真正服務社會。如果城裏的人個個看完報紙，拋在街道上，那麼街道上就堆滿報紙了。

- 一個人不作這樣粗心的事，就是幫助使街道整齊，並且省了一筆收集廢物的費用。

還是一種特別的方法：是人人能幫助國家的，這個方法是去作個傳播確實消息的人。因為有許多人祇聽得人怎樣說，他就把它傳開來，他不知也不管這件事是真是假，所以往往發生很大的誤會。從前有另銀行，因誤傳帳房盜竊銀錢，於是發生擠兌，以致倒閉。一種好的營業法規，就是一個好的國民法規：

懷疑時，勿開口。一件事，若不知道底細，亦勿說。勿妄稱你知道什麼事情，你該確知才好。

孔子有句古語，到現在還是不錯的：

『知之爲知之；不知爲不知；是知也。』

十五 一技之長

你如想服務，必須有效率。要擅長某種工作。要曉得怎樣做才完善。要做得伶俐敏捷。有一技之長的，就比較容易服務，並且容易專長別技。

遊戲和工作，應同樣用手用腦訓練的。不論學騎馬，學游泳，學打籃球或網球，都須確實專長於某種有益的遊戲。一個十六歲的男孩，要謀某洋行的位置，

was asked this question, "What one thing can you do as well as, or better than, any of your friends?" The boy thought for a long time, then shook his head doubtfully. "I guess this isn't what you mean, but I'm the best bicycle rider in my crowd." The business man, by asking a few questions, learned that the boy knew how to take the best care of his bicycle, and how to do *many kinds of difficult stunts*. Finally he said: "If you have mastered one thing, you ought to be able to master another. We will see what you can do with this position." No person who has learned the art of mastering need make a failure of his life.

16. What will you do when School Days are Over?

All the time that a pupil is at school he should be *looking ahead and planning what he is to do when his school days are over*. The mastering of home work, of gardening, and the like is *merely practice work for the big things later on*. All of it is helping to make him a *full-fledged citizen*. In a few years each boy must be prepared to do a man's work in the world, each girl to do a woman's work. Every pupil should study himself to see in what occupation he can be happiest and most useful. Begin planning today whether you will learn a trade, or study a profession, or go into business. Make a list of the different occupations that attract you. Find out from books, magazines, and people all that you can about each one. The more you learn about the busy world of workers, the easier it will be for you to *make a wise choice*.

The true citizen will never be an idler, however rich he becomes. If you should make a list of the persons in your town who do no useful work, would it be a long list or a short one? So necessary is work for the success of a nation that several governments have passed laws requiring all *able-bodied men* to have an occupation. Farther on we shall read about some of the scientific and other professions. For most men and women of even the

他被這人問道：『你能做一件同你朋友一樣好，或者比你朋友更好的事情嗎？』這孩子想了很久，然後懷疑地搖搖他的頭。『我是孩子羣中善騎腳踏車的人，但我猜想這不是你所要我回答的吧。那個商人問了幾個問題之後，曉得他善於管理腳踏車，且能任別種困難的工作。最後他說『你如專長一件事情，也應專長另一件事情。我們就看你能否擔任這個職務吧。』凡專長技藝的人，他的一生事業決不致失敗。

十六 你畢業後打算怎樣

一個學生在學校裏，時常應該為將來着想，並且打算畢業後作什麼事情，管理家政，園藝，及類似的事情，不過是將來做大事業的一種實習。這都是幫助使他成為健全的公民的。幾年之後，男孩則預備做世界上成人的事情，女孩則做婦人的事情。個個學生應該知道自己該從事何種職業才是最快樂最有用的。今天就開始打算，你還是學習做買賣，還是研究一種專門事業，還是加入商界。凡是使你注意的各種職業，你得把它們列一張表。從當本，雜誌，人類中，努力研究那些職業。

你對於忙碌的勞作者世界研究愈多，你將來的聰選擇也愈容易。

真正的公民，不論他如何富有，決不是遊手好閒者。如果你將你城裏不做有利事業的人列出一張表來，那麼這表是長的呢還是短的？工作是國家成功的要素，所以好多政府通過一種法律，凡是身體健全的男子，必須有職業。次章我們就要讀到科學的和別的專門職業。多數受過最高級訓練的男女，

highest training, serving one's country does not mean being a government official or employee, but just doing some real work in an honest occupation or profession. Shall we not follow the advice of Dr. Sun Yat-Sen, who said, "Students should set their minds, not on becoming prominent officials, but on accomplishing great tasks"?

17. A Chinese must master the Chinese Language

In order to serve your country and earn your living, you will need to master your language. To master it means to be able to speak, read, write, and understand it correctly. The boy who knows his lesson but cannot tell it, the girl who can tell what she saw but cannot write it, the person who cannot understand what he reads—all are *a long way from being useful citizens*. There are *many doors between you and success*. *The key to the first one is your language*. Whether you are to serve your country as a doctor, a lawyer, a bookkeeper, a farmer, this door must be opened first.

18. Using your "Chance in Life"

A "chance in life" means a chance to become a statesman, an artist, a physician, an inventor, or to do some other useful work. Many boys and girls are unable to use their opportunities, and to a great extent their lives are a failure. Others take advantage of every opportunity, work during *all their waking hours*, and, if a very difficult position is presented to them, they rejoice in trying to conquer it. One of the most expert mining engineers was asked one day to explain his success. *A far-away look came into his eyes* as he answered the question simply. "My father was a brilliant engineer. A great career was ahead of him, but when I was five years old he was struck down by fever. The day before he died he put his hand in mine and said, 'I'll have to leave my chance to you, son; don't waste it.' As I grew up I firmly believed that I must do my own work and his too.

他們去爲國家服務，並非要當政府的官吏和職員，乃是要做些誠實穩妥和專門職業的真實的工作。孫中山先生說：「學生不要一心想做大官吏，但要做些大事業。」我們不應當聽從他的忠告嗎？

十七 中國人應擅長中國文字

要服務你的國家，要解決你的生活，你必須擅長本國文字。擅長的意思，就是能說，能讀，能寫，並且正確地理解。一個男孩若單知他功課而不能敘述，或一個女孩單能敘述她的所見而不能寫出，或一個人只能讀書而不瞭解書中的意義——這都不是有用的公民。在你和成功之間有好幾扇門。第一扇門的鎖匙就是本國文字。無論你服務國家的方式，是做醫生，律師，簿記員，或農夫，這扇門必須先把它打開。

十八 利用你『一生的機會』

「一生的機會」的意義，就是去做政治家，藝術家，醫師，發明家，或做別的有用的事業。好多男女孩子，因爲不能利用他們的機會，結果一生的大部分事業都歸失敗。另一種人呢，就很善用他們的機會，整日辛勤工作，稍遇難題，他們也很快樂的盡力克服它。一天，有人問一位很能幹的礦師，請他自述成功的祕訣。們睜着他的眼睛，很簡單的回答道：「我的父親是個非常著名的工程師，他有遠大的志向，可惜我在五歲的那一年，他就害寒熱病去世了。臨死的一天，他握着我的手說，「我兒，我要把這個機會留給你；不要荒廢了它。」等到我長大的時候，我堅信我必須做我自己的事業和他的事業。」

I never wasted a moment; I never lost an opportunity to *get ahead*. I felt all the time that I was being pushed forward by some invisible power. The greatest pleasure that I had as a young man was when my employer said to me that I was worth two ordinary assistants."

To use another person's chance as well as your own means to do your work *a little better than you would otherwise do it*. You cannot *stop halfway to success*. Even if you have no special ability and become, as most of us do, a maker or seller of food or of clothing or of some other article of use, you must try a little harder to have your work as perfect as possible. A "*chance in life*" means a chance to do your best to serve your people in some way or other

QUESTIONS AND EXERCISES

1. Tell the story of a man who in a humble position served his country well.
2. Why is the old-fashioned "middleman" a waste?
3. Money is a medium of exchange. What are the essentials of a good medium?
4. Tell a few of the ways in which you can serve
 - a. Your family.
 - b. Your school.
 - c. The nation.
5. Why should we promote the welfare of workmen and farmers?
6. How can boys and girls serve their country?
7. Suppose you were asked the question "What one thing can you do as well as or better than any of your friends?" What would you reply?

我從未浪費過時間；我從未失了前進的機會；我覺得我是被看不見的力量向前推進。當我年青的時候，我最快樂的一件事，就是聽歷史說我足足抵得兩個普通的功夫。』

利用別人的機會和可用己的機會，都是使你的工作做得比平日更完善的意思。你不能在成功以前半途而廢。即使你像我們大多數的人一樣，沒有特別的才能，作個食物的，衣服的；及其他日用品製造者或販賣者，你總得更加努力，以達到工作最完美的地步。「人生的機會」就是盡你的力用三種或別種方法服務人羣的機會。

問答練習題

- (1) 說一個地位低微而很能服務國家的人故事。
- (2) 舊式的「中人」為何算是耗費？
- (3) 金錢是交換的媒介物，好的媒介物的要素是什麼？
- (4) 說幾種方法使你能服務(a)你的家庭；(b)你的學校；(c)你的國家。
- (5) 我們為什麼要謀工人和農夫的福利？
- (6) 男女孩子當怎樣為國家服務？
- (7) 假使有人問你：『你能做什麼一件同你朋友一樣好，或者比你朋友更好的事情？』你將怎樣回答？

CHAPTER XII

SCIENCE AND NATIONAL PROGRESS

1. What is Science?

There are many old men and women who are said to be good weather prophets. They have learned to guess with some correctness what the weather will be and they have some knowledge of how certain weather has usually followed certain conditions; but their knowledge is inaccurate, incomplete, and poorly connected, so that one can scarcely call it science.

There are also weather bureaus now which daily give a very reliable forecast of the weather. This is the way they do it: The bureaus receive from *all over a large area of land and sea* (including foreign countries) daily reports upon *the condition of the air*. They *put together upon maps on a large scale* this exact information about *what the wind is doing and preparing to do*. They discover, for example, that the air pressure is low in the north and high in the south and thus know that there is going to be more wind blowing from north to south. If this is from a dry, cold region, it means that certain regions are going to have dry and cooler weather. They may see also that the low-pressure southern area has wind blowing around it in great circles—circles so large perhaps that each station thinks its wind is blowing in a fixed straight line. Perhaps they can see that the center of these great circles of wind is a little farther east than it was the day before. Thus they know that this is really a big storm moving east, and they know what to telegraph to all eastern parts about the dangers to ships, or whether the wind will bring the farmers rain or not, cold weather or warm, etc. All this prophecy is based upon

第十二章 科學和國家的進步

一 科學是什麼

有好些老年男女被稱為有經驗的天氣預言家。他們知道預測天氣，有時也能準確。而且他們對於某種天氣跟着某種情形也有少許的知識；可是他們的知識是不正確的，不完全的，缺少系統的，所以還不稱為科學。

現在也有氣象台，每日報告可靠的天氣預測表。他們預測的方法是這樣的：氣象台天天接到海陸各大地方（包括外國）關於氣候情狀的報告。他們把所收集的準確的報告放在大幅的地圖上，這些報告都是說明風正在做什麼與預備做什麼。例如，他們發現北方的氣壓低而南方的氣壓高，這就知道由北吹向南的風必稍較多。倘使這風是從乾燥寒冷的地方刮起的，那就表示某地將有乾燥寒冷的天氣。他們也能看出低壓的南區有旋風環吹——這旋風的巨大，或者會使氣象台相信風是向一定的直線吹去的。他們也許能看出這些大旋風的中心點比日前稍偏西。由此他們便明白這是一個向東吹去的大風，於是就拍電報到東區，警告船隻有危險；或者這風是能給農夫下雨或天晴，天氣的溫暖或寒冷等。這種預測是根據幾近完善，

a knowledge so nearly complete, so accurate, and so connected that it may be called science.

2. Arts and Sciences

An old definition of science is "organized knowledge." One who can take good pictures has learned the art of photography; one who can play well on the piano has learned the art of piano-playing; one who can tie sailors' knots has learned the art of knot-tying; one who can walk a tight rope has learned *the art of balancing*; one who can prepare a good meal has learned the art of cooking; and so on. In each case the skilled person may or may not know much about how or why each act is performed. He may have the art, but not the science that lies under it. An art is the skill and ability to do something; a science is a mass of organized knowledge. In colleges we speak of arts and sciences, because some subjects *have chiefly to do with how to accomplish something*, such as writing essays, speaking foreign languages, painting pictures, and debating difficult questions, while other subjects have chiefly to do with acquiring exact and systematic knowledge. As a matter of fact, however, all skillful accomplishment must have real knowledge to support and improve it, and all science requires a large amount of skill *to make it possible or worth while*. We cannot really separate our studies into "*accomplishments*" and "*pure knowledge*." (The word "art" is often used in a narrower sense, to mean painting and related arts.)

3. The Scientific Age

Here is a clipping from a recent newspaper:

A Disaster Investigation Bureau has been established in Kyoto under the management of the Kyōto Imperial University. The new institution has in view the prevention of disasters by scientific knowledge and experience. According to returns published by the University, Japan suffers a loss from disasters of various kinds of 200,000,000 yen per year.

非常準確 而具有系統的知識的，所以可稱為科學。

二 藝術與科學

科學的舊定義就是「有組織的知識」的思想。一個能攝好的照相的人，是學過攝影藝術的人；一個善踏鋼琴的人，是學過鋼琴奏法的人；一個能打水手領結的人，是學過打領結藝術的人；一個能走繩索的人，是學過平衡術的人；一個能做茶飯的人，是學過烹調術的人；其餘由此類推。在這種情形之下，這般有技能的人對於他們技術的所以成功，有的固然知道，但有的卻連自己也不知道。因為他們也許有技術，可是這技術並無科學的根據。技術是做事的巧練和能力；科學是整個有組織的知識。在大學中，我們學到藝術與科學，因為有些課目大都是與某種事物的成就有關聯的，如寫論文，設外國語，畫圖畫，辯論難題；還有些科目大都是要取得正確的和有系統的知識。但是，照事實說來，一切技術上的成功必須有實際的知識去扶助它，去改進它，同樣，一切科學也需要大宗的技術使它成為可能或成為有價值。我們的讀書，是要達到「有所成就」，同時是要探求「純粹知識」，這兩點是分不開來的。（「藝術」兩字常用作狹義的，它是指繪畫及其他相識的美術而言。）

三 科學時代

下面的一段新聞，是由最近的報章上剪下來的：

西京近設災難調查局一所 為西京帝國大學所經營，此新機關之設立，意欲藉科學知識與經驗，作各種災患之防範。據該大學所刊佈告，日本由各種災患所受之損失，每年值二萬萬元日金

Whether this is true or not, it shows how important science is considered to be in this modern age. Such a *piece of news* a generation ago would have made people laugh. The world has only recently found out how important science is. We may now say that one of the chief differences between our time and earlier times is the place that science has taken in everything. Science is changing the world very rapidly. It is both constructive and destructive. It enables the people of today to do big things, both good and bad. Modern nations, therefore, have both to *acquire science* and to control its uses.

4. Development of Science in the West

The world has been *fighting its way up* century by century from shameful darkness and poverty toward the age of brightness and plenty. Science is one of its great weapons, or, we may say, one of the winches by which it has lifted itself.

Mr. H. G. Wells, in his "*Outline of History*," has told in an interesting way of the slow and painful progress of Europe toward the scientific age. As we in Asia today are getting *the full benefit of that long struggle*, we should be interested in that story. Very briefly it is as follows:

The Greeks of over two thousand years ago so developed logic and mathematics that the foundations of science were laid. The great leaders of Greece and *Macedonia* actually decided to proceed to a systematic development of scientific knowledge. They had the basis, the organization, and the beginning of scientific method. Then came internal wars, *expansion under Alexander the Great, the break-up of his empire*, and the scattering of all *these scientific forces*. These precious beginnings of science were preserved in records and in scattered colleges in many countries, but in this condition their real value was not seen. One city founded by Alexander *away off in Egypt*, and named Alexandria after him, developed a wonderful library. Here again was a good foundation for scientific development, but some of the

不論這件事是否屬實，但科學在現今的重要是無可諱言的了。假使這個消息在前一時代公佈，定必令人大笑。科學的如何重要，是世界最近才注意的。我們可以說，現代和從前的不同，主要點就在於科學在各種事物方面所佔的地位。科學改變世界甚快。它是建設的，也是破壞的。它能使現代的人作好惡不同的大事所以近世的國家必須得到科學，同時要限制它的用途。

四 西洋科學的發展

世界是一世紀一世紀的奮鬥着，從可恥的黑暗和貧窮的時代到光明和富裕的時代。科學是世界的偉大利器之一，或者我們可以說，它是用來旋高世界的一架絞盤。

韋爾斯先生在他的「世界史綱」裏用很有趣的方法，敘述歐洲向科學時代進步中的遲緩和困苦。因為我們在亞洲享受那長期奮鬥的完全利益，我們也得注意那歷史。下面是很簡單的例子：

二千年前希臘人因善於發展論理學與數學，才奠定了科學基礎。希臘和馬其頓的大首領決意進行有系統地發展科學的知識。他們有了基礎，組織，和科學方法的啓發。後來發生了內戰。亞歷山大開拓他的土地，瓜分他的帝國，散佈這些科學的力量。這些寶貴的科學的開端，有的記載在史書中，有的散放在各國的學院裏，但在這種情形之下，它們的真價值便少發見了。亞歷山大在埃及找到一個城子，他把這個城子取了自己的名字，在那兒他造了一所偉大的圖書館。這裏也是科學發展的好基礎，可是

most important ideas of the Greeks were not present. Little that was new was discovered, and finally the great library was destroyed. Then, again after many centuries, the Arabians developed a good beginning of science upon those early elements. When the Mohammedans carried their religion into Europe by way of Spain, they carried this science with them. They had not developed it very far, and they really needed the help of European people to carry it farther. But they were turned back at *the battle of Tours*, in France; and thus both Mohammedanism and the Arabian science were driven back from Europe. Unfortunately Europe had not received the Greek scientific spirit through the Romans, who had conquered Greece and taken over her arts. Rome was interested more in law, organization, business, and literature; she did not catch the scientific spirit.

The *wild Northern people* came down upon Rome and began to destroy her civilization. *The Christian Church* preserved most of the good things of that civilization and began to civilize the Northern barbarians. Europe was soon full of vigorous people, with Latin as a common written language, with ideas of truth and honor, of law and order, of education and civilization. The field was thus prepared for that science which was unfortunately driven back with the Mohammedans. And so the darkness continued until *the Crusaders* fought with the Turks and brought ideas back into Europe with them. *The Turks captured Constantinople* and scattered westward *the stores of old Greek ideas*, and the opening of the new ocean routes awakened people's minds. Thus the field was planted, and these long-neglected *seeds of science* began to grow rapidly. That was the beginning of Western scientific ideas, methods, and knowledge.

5. China's Need for Science

China, as one of the modern family of nations, must adopt a science program. Look back through the chapters we have been studying and see how much of all

希臘人的許多重要思想卻不復存在了。因為新的發明不多，最後那斯大圖書館也毀滅了。於是又過了若干世紀，亞刺伯人根據了那些初期的原素，發展良好的科學開端。當回教人民從西班牙傳教到歐洲的時候，他們也帶着這種科學。他們並未把科學發展到很遠，所以他們確實需要歐洲人民的幫助，使它傳播得更遠些。可是，爲了法國都爾斯地方的戰爭，它們又折回了，因此回教教義和亞刺伯的科學都從歐洲打退。不幸得很，歐洲人並未在羅馬人那裏取得希臘科學的精神，因為羅馬已戰勝了希臘而把它的藝術奪回了。羅馬最着重的是法律、體制，商業，和文學；它並不吸收科學的精神。

後來北部的蠻族到了羅馬，開始破壞它的文化。基督教爲保存那些優美的文化起見，也就開始教化北部的蠻族。歐洲不久就充滿了強健的人民，拉丁文成爲普遍的文字，並且還有真實和光榮，法律和秩序，教育和文化的意義。這地方本可作發揚學術的處所，但不幸又與回教人同被逐回。於是黑暗相繼，直到十字軍和土耳其戰交時，始將理想挽回歐洲。土耳其奪得君士但丁堡，把保存着的古希臘思想往西散佈，並且開闢新的海洋路綫喚起人心。於是這境地才播起種子來，而這些久經遺忘的科學種子又開始迅速地生長，這便是西洋科學的思想，方法，知識的起源。

五 中國需要科學

中國既然是現代國家中的一分子，就必須採用科學計劃。我們讀過了前面的幾章，

that we want to do for China depends upon scientific knowledge. What can enterprise and energy accomplish without science to make the road clear? What use is there in saving and investing if we do not understand materials and processes? How can we hope to conserve our resources or even to protect ourselves without a mastery of the great principles of modern science?

When *Dr. Paul Monroe* recently investigated the educational system for the Chinese government, he declared that the greatest weakness of Chinese schools was the teaching of science. He asked, "How can you lead your nation forward into the modern world without science?"

Science is necessary for the progress of China. Let us see, therefore, what kinds of science are needed—some of the most important of them, at least—and how these sciences can be mastered by our future citizens.

6. Pure Science and Applied Science

A college professor was seen picking up shells on a seabeach, just as many children also were doing. Someone asked him, "Why do you gather shells as a child does?" He replied: "I am collecting and studying them. That is the branch of science in which I am most interested. I know more about shells than any other person in this country." Then he was asked, "How are you going to use your knowledge of shells?" The professor answered: "I do not use it. I only acquire and record it. This is pure, not applied, science." He was getting scientific knowledge without a definite practical purpose in view. That knowledge had practical values, but he was only studying the science itself, and not the uses to which it might be put.

When Edison was developing electric lights, he saw that he needed a certain kind of fine fiber. He believed that he might find this in some undiscovered kind of bamboo. He knew that the development of electric

就得研究我們替中國服務該需要科學知識。如果沒有科學開路，企業和精力怎能有什麼成就呢？

如果我們不懂得物質和方法，儲蓄與投資又有何用呢？如果不能支配近世科學的主要原理，我們怎能希望保守我們的富源甚至於我們本身呢？

孟謙博士最近為中國政府考察教育制度時，他發表中國學校最大的缺點是在科學教育。他問道：『假使缺少科學，怎能領導你的國家走入現代世界呢？』

科學是爲了中國的進步所必要的東西。那麼，讓我們研究一下，那幾種科學是必要的——至少幾種最重要的——而這幾種科學又怎能爲我們未來的公民所獲得。

六 純粹科學與應用科學

一位大學教授在海濱拾取貝殼，好像孩子們所做的一樣。有人問他：『你爲什麼像孩子一樣拾取貝殼呢？』他回答說：「我拾取貝殼爲的是研究。那是一種我覺得最有趣的科學。關於貝殼這東西，在本國我比誰都知道得多，」於是他又被人問道：『你的貝殼的知識有什麼用處呢？』教授回答說：「我並不使用這種知識。我祇要得着它，把它記錄下來。這是純粹科學，並非是應用科學。」他祇求得着科學的知識，卻不存着一定的應用的目的。那種知識本有應用的價值，但他僅研究科學本身，並不研究它應有的效用。

當愛迪生研究電燈的發明工作時，他知道他需要一種耐燒的線絲。他相信他可以在某種未經發見的竹類中找到。他曉得電燈的發明

lights was of the greatest importance both to his country and to all the world; he therefore chose enterprising scientific men and sent them to Africa and other parts of the world to study bamboos. This is said to have cost him \$100,000 in gold. It was a big piece of scientific work undertaken for a definite practical purpose. Edison was studying a science for its uses.

Not all science is useful, but no one knows what scientific fact is going to be needed next. The more we know, the better chance we have of solving any problem. We gather all the information we can, because any part of it may be called for at any time. We cannot separate pure science from applied science. Science is in systems. You must study a system as a unit. You cannot select beforehand exactly what is going to be useful to you. Although it is the usefulness of science that makes it so important, you must study a great deal that does not appear to have any value. We guide our searches and our studies as much as possible in directions which are the most promising, but we are constantly dealing with facts which, like the collection of shells, seem to have no value. Much of our science is pure science first and comes to be applied only later.

The important thing is that China's young men and women shall have the scientific spirit. They must master the scientific knowledge which is already available, they must keep up with the rapid advance of science in other countries, and they must push forward the scientific study of China herself. They must give more attention to both pure science and applied science.

7. What is the Scientific Spirit?

The real scientist seeks knowledge without fear or prejudice. He does not allow anything to prevent him from getting the exact truth; he is observant; he searches for facts and continues his search persistently and systematically; he checks up and corrects himself

於國家於世界都是極關重要的：所以他選了幾位有進取心的科學家，到非洲和世界各處去研究竹類。據說單是這一項就化了十萬金元。這確是存着應用的目的而從事的一樁巨大的科學事業。可知愛迪生的研究科學，是謀其實際應用的。

科學並非全有用的，但誰也不知道那種科學的事實是將來有用的。我們所知道的愈多，我們解決問題的機會亦愈好。我們盡量搜集各種的知識，因為說不定將來任何一部分都是有用的。我們不能把純粹科學和應用科學分開。科學是有系統的。你得將系統作爲一個單位去研究。你不能在預先就正確地選擇那一種是合你用的。雖然這是科學的用處使它那麼重要，但你必須多多研究須盡力向最有希望的地方去，可是我們搜求事實的時候，總是像拾取貝殼一樣，似乎無甚價值。我們的科學，起初大都是純粹科學，到後來才成爲應用的東西。

第一重要的事情 就是中國青年男女應有科學的精神。他們必須精研已經有用的科學知識，保持與別國科學並駕齊驅的速度，並推進中國自己的科學研究。他們也必須多多注意於純粹科學和應用科學。

七 科學的精神是什麼

真正科學家的探求知識是沒有畏懼和偏見的。他不讓任何事情去阻止他得到真理：他是善於觀察的；他搜求事實，並且堅決地有系統地繼續搜求；他檢閱自己，糾正自己，

without shame or selfishness; he boldly publishes the facts that he finds in his laboratory or in his study, no matter what it may cost him.

Here is a story of a judge who showed the scientific spirit:

A policeman brought forward a stranger who was accused of murder. He was seen quarreling with the murdered man. They started across a bridge alone. The stranger came running back. The other man was taken from the river dead. The stranger was asked what happened to the man, but he only replied, "I do not know." The judge asked for witnesses, but there were none.

Then a man said to the judge: "The murdered man was my friend. If you will hang this murderer, I will give you ten thousand dollars."

The judge replied: "You are an enemy of truth and justice. He may be guilty, but I want facts and not money to prove it."

Then the stranger spoke for himself. He told about his poor mother, whose heart would be broken, and about his family, who would be fatherless if he were convicted. To this the judge replied, "You may be innocent, but I want facts and not feelings to prove it."

Then a man whispered to the judge that all the city was angry against the stranger, and that if he were not convicted *their opinion of the judge would be very harsh, and his life would ever after be most unpleasant.* To this the judge replied: "It is not I who am on trial here. I am not thinking about myself. I want facts about this man. Let us keep all our attention upon the case."

A man rushed into the courtroom and cried, "If you do not convict that man, I will kill you!"

The judge's reply was: "I am seeking facts. Fear ~~does~~ not produce facts, and I will therefore give no attention to your threats."

並不以為恥辱，並不自私自利；他大膽地把他在實驗室中或研究室中所得的事實刊佈出來，不關有多少的代價。

這裏有個法官的故事，他很能表現科學的精神：

一個警察帶上一個異鄉人，他是被人控告了殺人罪。有人看見他和被害者爭吵。他倆經過一座橋，異鄉人跑了回來，那個人從河裏撈起來，可是已經死了。人家問異鄉人那個人是怎樣死的，但他只回答說：『我不知道。』法官想找個證人，但是卻找不到。

於是有一人對法官說：『被害的人是我的朋友。如果你把這個殺人犯施行絞刑，我願給你一萬塊錢。』

法官回答說：『你是真理和公正的仇敵。也許他是犯了罪，但我要找事實來證明，不是用錢來證明。』

後來，異鄉人自述起來。他說：如果他定了死刑，他的可憐的母親就要心碎，他的兒女就要變成孤子了。法官聽了回答說：『或者你是清白的，但我要找事實來證明不是用感情來證明。』

後來有一個人對法官說，全城的人都仇恨那個異鄉人，如果他不被處死刑，那麼法官的言論必受他們所攻擊，他的一生也必不快樂了。法官回答說：『在此地裁判的並非是我呀！我倒並不顧到自己的。我要對這個人找尋事實。讓我們盡力注意這件案子吧。』

一人闖進法庭，呼喊道：『你若不把那個人定罪，我要殺了你！』

法官的回答是：『我是找尋事實。恫嚇是不能生產事實的，所以你的威脅我並不顧忌。』

Then he proceeded to gather facts,—the facts that all the others had neglected or *refused to take the time to consider*. He listened to even the humblest person who could tell him anything. He got a description of all the region about the bridge. He got the names of all the people who might have been looking at the bridge from windows in houses near or from afar. He had the bridge described in detail. He called everybody who might know anything about the matter or might have seen any part of it. Out of all this long investigation he got *many facts bearing on the subject*. One of them was so important as to decide the case.

“Facts have been obtained,” said the judge. “The bridge had just been painted. The paint at the other end was still wet. The paint on the dead man’s shoes shows that he went into the water from near the other end, while the clean soles of this stranger’s shoes show that he had not yet been so far along the bridge. He is cleared, and this city is taught a lesson in patient, systematic, and honest investigation.”

3. China needs Scientists

China needs a large number of men and women working in this spirit of persistent and thorough search to add to the present sum of scientific knowledge. They must master this and then *push its limits farther out*.

There are many important problems in China that cannot be solved until this information is secured. For example, China’s tea trade has been declining. The world used to drink only Chinese tea, and now it is drinking less and less of it, while fortunes are made in tea from other countries. Here is work for Chinese scientists. They must study the tea trade, the tea industry, and the tea plants. There may still be in China some undiscovered plants of great value. There may be unknown diseases injuring the tea. There may be something

於是法官進行收集事實——這種事實，是他人所不注意，或費時間去考慮的。只要誰能告訴他些事實，就是最卑下的人所說的話，他也願意聽。他把橋的周圍各處的情形都先弄清楚。他把遠近的人的名字都調查過，這些人就是可以從他的屋內窗戶看到這座橋的。他詳細的把橋描寫出來，凡是曉得這件事情的人或者看見這件事情一部分的人，他都把他們請了過來。經過了長久的調查，他從這件案子裏找出了好多事實。其中有一種很重要的事實，法官就依了它解決這件案子。

『事實找到了。』法官說。『這座橋是剛才油漆的。橋的那一端的油漆尚未乾燥。死人鞋上的油漆，可以證明他從橋的那一端掉下水中的，同時異鄉人的乾淨的鞋底，也可證明他未曾走過橋的那一端。他的罪是洗清了，於是這個城得着一個教訓，要解決事情總要忍耐，有系統，並且要真實地考察。』

八 中國需要科學家

中國需要大批的男女用堅忍的精神去工作，並且要徹底地研究增加近世科學知識的數量。他們必須精研這種科學知識，然後再發展它的範圍。

中國有很多重要的問題，若不得到科學知識便無從解決。比如，中醫的茶葉已經衰落了。從前世界上的人總是喝中國的茶，現在喝的人逐漸少了，可是別國却由茶葉而致富。這是中國科學家的職務。他們必須研究茶葉的貿易，茶葉的製造，和茶葉的種植。說不定中國還有好多未發見的有價值的樹木。說不定還有不知道的損害茶葉的疾病。說不定泥土中缺少某種肥料。

lacking in the soil or in the process or in the packing. Only thoroughly scientific study and experiment will solve the problem and restore this trade to China. The solution may come from wide-awake tea merchants and growers, or it may come from some student of botany who is collecting and studying plants.

The work that is now being done in the scientific study of silk production is a good example of how China can profit from scientific work. One of the diseases of silkworms is passed on from one generation to another through the eggs. It has been common for a man to raise his worms most carefully and upon the best mulberry leaves, *only to have 80 per cent or even 90 per cent of them die before they have spun their silk*, thus wasting all those worms, the food fed to them, and the time and labor and equipment of the owner. Scientists have found that this is a germ disease and the germs can be found under the microscope; therefore scientists in silk laboratories are saving China great loss in the following manner:

A large number of moths are put to laying eggs under little cups. After they have finished, these moths are examined under the microscope. All the eggs laid by diseased moths are destroyed, and a new generation is raised from only those which showed no disease. From this second generation the diseased ones, now very few are again taken out. The longer this examination is continued, the nearer they get to a 100 per cent pure breed of worms, with no deaths or even weak worms, and consequently no loss of silk from this disease. That is only one of the features of scientific silk improvement.

9. A Future for Chinese Scientists

The age and extent of China make it a wonderful field for scientific work. Already scientists have come from all over the world to *carry on investigations* in China. Many of them have become famous for their scientific work in China, and yet they have *only scratched the surface of the knowledge* that awaits discovery.

或者裝置的方法未克盡善。惟有澈底的科學的研究與實驗，才能解決這個問題，才能恢復中國的貿易。這種解決或由覺悟的茶商與種茶者去辦理，或由搜集茶樹研究植物的學生去擔任。

關於蠶絲的出產之科學研究，是使中國明白從科學工作可得到利益的好例子。蠶有一種病是隨着蠶卵一代代傳下去的。人的養蠶平常都是很謹慎的，並且採用最好桑葉的，可是有八九成的蠶在未結繭以前就死了，所以白費許多蠶種，許多飼養的食物，和養蠶者的時間人工和設備，科學家知道這是微菌的毛病，微菌可用顯微鏡照出來的；所以蠶絲實驗室的科學家用下列方法偵補中國極大的損失：

把許多蠶蛾放在小杯中讓它們產卵。等到產卵完畢，就把這些蠶蛾用顯微鏡來照照看。如果有病該把它們的卵子取消，下次所養的蠶便無疾病了。再從第二次拿去有病的，那自然很少了。檢驗的次數愈多，養出的蠶愈能十分道地，愈不會死亡，也不再具有弱種的，結果蠶絲便不致受蠶病的損失。這不過是科學的蠶絲改良法一種而已。

九 中國科學家的將來

中國的年代和區域使它成為研究科學工作的福地。全世界的科學家都來考察中國了。其中好多因為在中國有了科學的貢獻，已獲得了大名，但他只是抓着待發見的知識的表面吧了。

Some men have made surveys of the geology of China, but it has been hastily done. A real geological survey, such as has been made in Western countries, is yet to be made in China. A company was formed some time ago to develop *a strip of country in Yunnan*. This company, with twenty-five engineers, spent two years at work on the exploration survey alone. That shows what some people mean by thorough study.

A great deal of work has been done in discovering and recording the variations of the magnetic needle all over China. *The Carnegie Institution, Washington, D.C.*, is doing this work all over the world. It is an example of how scientific work sometimes has to be carried on over long periods and over great areas before its full results are shown. The needle varies from time to time and from place to place. Not only do surveyors and ships' masters want to know about its variations, but also the whole world waits for further explanations concerning the earth's magnetism and related facts.

When a botanist discovers a new plant, he is proud. He is on the road to fame. You may not realize it, but it is almost certain that you cannot find among the plants that grow near your school a single one of any kind that is not already known to the botanists of the world. And yet recently a botanist in Hainan discovered twenty-five plants that were new to science. There are probably hundreds of new plants in China waiting for scientists to discover and study them. Some of these may be of great value to mankind. The LI-CHIH, one of the best of all fruits, is one of China's many contributions to the world.

Thus we see that China needs scientists not only for herself but for the world. Fame awaits many a young man and woman in these lines. Let the girls not forget that here is *a field that is open equally to men and women*. Radium offers an example of a wonderful discovery made by a woman (Madame Curie of Paris). There are a few women in China now who are making great progress in scientific investigation.

有些人會着手測量中國的地質，但還未免太慢一點。真正的地質測驗，像西洋各國所舉行的，中國尚未實行。在雲南，從前曾設立一個開發土地的公司。公司裏面有工程師二十五人，單作開發測驗工作就化了兩年工夫。這是證明人們所說的澈底研究的意義了。

發明與記載中國磁針的變化，已經費了很大的功夫；華盛頓區的卡尼治學院，是研究全世界這項工作的。科學的工作在未表示圓滿的結果以前，須要長的時間與大的區域，這是一個例子。磁針是隨時隨地在變化的。不但測量員和船主要曉得它的變化，就是全世界也等待着關於地磁與相連帶的事實作進一步的解釋。

當植物學家發見一種新的植物時，他是很有得意的。他由這類新的發見可以聞名。也許你不明白，但你不能在你學校附近找到一種植物是世界植物學家所不知道的，這差不多可算是一定的了。可是最近有一位植物學家在海南發見二十五種植物，是科學界所不知道的。中國也許有幾百種新的植物，正待科學家去發見和研究。其中好多或者對於人類有重大的價值。荔枝，是水果中最好的，它是中國暢銷於全球的果品之一。

由此可知中國需要科學家，非特為本國自專，抑且為全世界。在科學界中，是等待着青年男女去出名呢。女子也不要忘記，科學的國地是男女平等公開的。鑄錠就是一個例子，它是一個婦人的偉大發明。（那婦人是巴黎的居禮夫人）中國也有幾位婦人，對於科學的研究有極大的進境。

10. Science in Medicine

Medicine is a branch of science which is of *great importance to the welfare of the nation*, one in which Chinese have shown themselves strong, one in which there are great discoveries yet to be made, one which offers a great deal of material for study, and one which requires an enormous number of workers as well as of special investigators. The old-style doctors have a large number of medicines,—more, it is said, than the medicines of all the Western countries,—and yet no complete scientific study of them has been made. That is a piece of scientific work of great size and probably of world-wide importance. It will require thorough preparation, persistent and honest work, and the coöperation of many physicians.

Nursing has become a science of itself. Some diseases yield more surely to good nursing than to anything else. Dietetics, or proper feeding, is an old art which is now being made a science. Such lines call especially for women scientists.

Surgery is now one of the greatest sciences. Step by step it has been built up. One man after another has become famous by the discovery of some great fact about the make-up or working of some part of the body. Harvey discovered the main facts of the circulation of the blood; Sir Charles Bell, of the nervous system; Ambroise Paré of the healing of wounds; and John Hunter, of much of the science of anatomy. Lister taught the use of antiseptics. Pasteur's discoveries of the nature of disease lifted the science of medicine so far as to make his name one that will never be forgotten. The result of all this systematic knowledge of the body is that people today are healed of most of the injuries and diseases from which they used to die in great pain. The discovery of *anæsthetics* has made all necessary cutting of the body painless. A man may now read his newspaper while his leg is being cut open and feel no pain whatever, and operations on vital parts of the body are performed with safety.

十 醫藥的科學

醫藥的科學的分支，它對於國民的福利有重大關係，在這裏面中國可以表示奮盛，可以有大的發明，可以研究很多的原料，並且需要多數的工作人員和特別調查員。舊式的醫生有大宗的藥材——據說比西洋各國的藥材更多——可惜尚未經過完全的科學研究。這是一種規模鉅大的工作，也許有全世界的重要性，將來需要周密的準備，堅忍而切實的工作，和許多內科醫生的合作。

看護已成爲一種專門科學了。有些疾病歸功於好的看護比任何事件爲多。養護學，或稱爲正當的飲食法，本是一種舊的法子，現在也成爲科學的了。這些門類都需要專門的牙科學家。

外科是現在最重要的科學之一。它是一步一步發展的。一般發明人體各部構造和功用的人，都一個個的成名了。哈佛發明血液循環的重要事實；查德士佩兒發明神經系統；巴理發明治療的方法；漢德發明許多解剖的科學。李士德傳授防疫劑的用途。派斯都發明了疾病的性質，提高了醫藥的科學地位，所以他的名字是一輩子不會被人遺忘的。這種關於人體的有系統的知識，可使人們免了傷害和疾病的危險。從前總是痛苦地死去，現在却能醫治好了。新藥劑的發明減少身體割治時的許多痛苦。一個人的腿部正在開刀的時候，他還可以看報不覺復有任何痛苦，即使是割治身體的主要部分，也能安全地施行手術。

China needs one hundred thousand physicians and surgeons to take care of her people. Each one should be a master of his science. *His life will be crowded with the most important kind of work for his community, and in the midst of it he may add new knowledge to his science. His experience may become so valuable that he will be needed in the training of others.*

Some idea of the importance and high quality of the medical and surgical work that China needs may be had by a visit to the great *Peking Union Medical College and Hospital*. One is surprised at its size and beauty, but the important feature is its scientific character—its scientific ideals, methods, and equipment. Its aim is to train physicians and surgeons who will be able to handle China's great health problems, *heal her sick and injured*, discover some of the still hidden secrets of the human body, and prepare *men and women to teach medical science to others.*

China must fight disease scientifically. A hundred years ago smallpox was one of the most dreaded and dangerous diseases in Western countries. *Dr. Jenner discovered and urged the use of vaccination to prevent it. As a result this fearful disease has almost entirely gone from America and many parts of Europe.*

11. The Scientific Professions

The development of the marvelous modern *profession of healing* has a long and interesting history. It has been important not only because of its giving mankind more comfort, health, and strength, and greater length of life, but because it has greatly aided other sciences. Medicine developed as the first really scientific profession. Others developed later. This was fortunate, because the medical profession had high ideals, and *thus set high ideals for the other sciences.* No reputable doctor keeps a discovery a secret for his own use. He publishes it for the free use of all in need of it. *No reputable doctor will let his*

中國需要十萬以上的內外科醫師，治療人民的疾病。每個醫師應該愛他的科學。爲了給社會做最重要的服務，他的生活一定很忙的，在這當中他或者還能增加科學的新知識。他的經驗也許會成爲很有價值的，並且將來尚須去訓練別人。

要明白中國需要那種重要的和精良的醫藥與外科工作，可參觀北平協和大學和協和醫院。人若看了它的廣闊和華麗，定會發生驚異，但重要的特點却在科學的性質上面，——科學的思想，科學的方法，和科學的設備。它的目的是訓練內外科醫生，使他們將來能去處理重大的中國健康問題，醫治它的病人和受傷者，發明人體中依然存在的秘密，培植男女去向別人宣傳醫藥的科學。

中國必須科學地去戰勝疾病。百年以前，天花在西洋各國是種可怕的危險的疾病。詹尼醫師發明並鼓勵種牛痘預防天花的方法。結果，差不多使這種可怕的疾病在美國及歐洲各部完全消滅了。

十一 科學的職業

近世奇特的醫藥的發展，是個悠長而可注意的歷史。它的重要非僅給人類更多的舒適，康健，力氣，和較長的壽命，並且還補充別種科學的不足。醫藥確是最先發達的一種職業。別的職業就較慢了。這是很可幸運的醫藥一經提高了標準，別的科学也就跟着提高標準。沒有著名的醫師把他的發明供給自己使用的。他所以公佈它，是使大眾自由使用。沒有著名的醫師

scientific knowledge be put to any wrong use, no matter what pay is offered him for it. No reputable doctor refuses to give aid because the patient is poor or an enemy or even a criminal. No reputable doctor advertises himself as better than others. No reputable doctor takes advantage of his power over the sick or dying to enrich himself. No reputable doctor spares himself in the service of those who need his help. Thus the high standards of the medical profession have not only raised it to a most honorable place in the esteem of all people but have helped to gain a good name and high standard for all sciences.

All the scientific professions have had to struggle upward against misunderstanding and prejudice. The old-style doctor in China is not usually held in high honor. So it was in early days with the Western doctor. He was thought to be partly a magician of doubtful character and partly just a man with a sharp knife, about as learned as a barber. In fact the barber was often the surgeon. The medical profession has risen out of this to its present high position. Now kings obey the doctor; *everybody does his bidding*; people make way for him on the street; robbers do not attack him.

The other professions have had and often still have the same struggle. People do not at first appreciate them. A company thinks it can build a bridge without an engineer, just as many people think they can cure their disease without medical science. A man thinks he can plan a good house without an architect. A manufacturer thinks he can make the best soap without a chemist. A dairyman thinks he can escape disease among his buffaloes without calling a veterinarian. A farmer does not believe that the agricultural scientist knows what is wrong with his trees or his soil. It takes a long time for the people to learn that the scientist is their servant and benefactor. They really cannot get on without him. *Their bridges cost too much; their diseases continue; their houses are ugly; their products are second-grade; their cattle die; their crops fail—and*

肯誤用他的科學知識的，不論他的報酬是多少。沒有著名的醫師拒絕醫治的，不論病人是窮人，是仇敵，甚至是罪犯。沒有著名的醫師肯登廣告說自己比別人有本領的。沒有著名的醫師趁着人家疾病或垂死時，用他的醫術使他自己發財的。沒有著名的醫師遇着人家要求救急時不盡力幫助的。所以這種醫業的最高標準，不但提高到最榮譽的地位，受一般人的尊敬，並且也為別的科學得着好譽和最高標準。

一切科學的職業必須向前奮鬥，排斥誤會和偏見。中國舊式的大夫時常不受人家尊重。早日的西洋醫師也是如此。人家以為他一半是應術家，人格有點可疑；一半是因為他帶着利刃，好似理髮匠。不續，從前的理髮匠多半是當外科醫師的。就是這樣的，醫業提高到現存的地位。當代的國王也佩服醫師；人人都遵從他的囑咐；人們在街上讓路給他；強盜也不去傷害他。

別的職業亦常有同樣的奮鬥。人們起初並不重視。一見公司以為不用工程師就能建築一座橋梁，正如人們不用醫藥的科學便能醫治疾病一樣。人以為不請營造家便可造好的房子。製造家以為不請化學師便可製造肥皂。賣牛乳的人以為不請獸醫便可免了牛病。農夫不相信農學家便能懂得樹上和泥土的病源。人們要明白科學家是他們的公僕和恩人，非得經過極長的時間。沒有科學家，他們就不能往前進了。他們的橋梁化費很多；他們的疾病繼續存在；他們的房子很醜陋；他們的出產列入次等；他們的家畜病死；他們的收穫喪失——

yet they are slow to believe that the professional men and women are able to help them. Therefore it is our duty to our people to help develop appreciation of the professions.

12. The Biological Sciences

In all the biological sciences China is a *great field* both for investigation and for the practical appreciation of what is already known.

There must be men and women trained to study all the plants of China; to collect, preserve, identify, classify, and describe them. There ought to be no ignorance about what grows in China. This is the field of the professional botanist, supported both by the government and by the universities.

The zoölogist is needed to do similar work for the animals of China—the quadrupeds, the birds, the reptiles, the amphibians, the fish, the shellfish, the insects, and so on. In recent years it has been discovered that some of the worst diseases are carried by small creatures—typhus by lice, *bubonic plague* by rats and fleas, yellow fever and malaria by mosquitoes, and several diseases by flies.

Cotton has been attacked by an insect called the *boll weevil*, which develops in the plant and destroys the fiber. Unless it is checked it will *reduce greatly the world's supply of cotton*, and this will cause a great increase of price. As Manchuria is likely to become a great cotton-growing area, China must join hands with America, Egypt, India, and Africa to fight this pest.

13. The Sciences of Food production

The biological sciences may be said to include medicine and surgery and nursing, to which we have referred, and also all the sciences of production of vegetable and animal food as well as the production of silk, wood oil.

可是他們相信一般有職業的男女能幫助他們，須要經過長久的時日。所以助長他們重視職業，這是我們對於人民的責任。

十二 生物的科學

在生物的科學方面，中國有很大的區域可以考察，也有已經知道的事實可以切實地參照。

這樣必須訓練男女去研究中國的植物：去採集，保存，確證，分類，和詳述它們。對於中國所生長的植物，該知道。這是植物家的園地，政府和各大學須去扶助他們。

對於中國的動物——如四足類，鳥類，爬蟲類，兩棲類，魚類，甲殼類，昆蟲類等等——動物學家也要做同樣的工作。近年以來，發現好多惡疾是從小的動物身上傳染過來的：跳蚤傳染寒熱病，鼠虱傳染橫痃，蚊蟲傳染黃熱病與瘧疾，蒼蠅傳則染疾病更多。

棉花被一種名叫蚜蟲的蟲所侵害，蚜蟲生長在植物中，損傷着纖維質。如不設法阻止，便要減少世界棉花的出產，增加棉花的價格，滿洲一帶很有大量產棉的可能，中國必須聯絡美國，埃及，印度，非洲，去撲滅這種害蟲。

十三 食物生產的科學

生物的科學可說包括醫學，外科和看護，這幾種我們已在前說過，此外，還包括動植物食品，蠶絲，桐油。

and many other things. Let us here mention only *a few of the lines* to which young men and women in China must *for the good of their nation* devote themselves.

The raising of grain is the greatest industry in China. Farmers are so expert at it that no scientist can teach them anything about certain parts of the processes. And yet there has been no scientific selection of seed or crossing of varieties. When we remember that Indian corn was developed originally from a plant as small as rice, we realize *what possibilities lie in other grains*; and when we remember that *boys' corn clubs* in America increased the yields from 20 bushels an acre to 220 bushels, we realize what possibilities lie in the methods of growing those grains.

The raising of vegetables and fruits is *a science in the making*. People now consume thousands of cans of tomatoes every year, and yet there are people who remember when tomatoes were not considered good to eat. It has been recently discovered that tomato juice and orange juice are almost necessary to the full health and growth of children. A wonderful new discovery about tomatoes is that they may be grafted on potatoes. The discoverer is said to have raised plants which bore at the same time tomatoes aboveground and potatoes underground. More important, perhaps, was the process of developing the tomato from a vegetable only as large as a chestnut to one as large as your fist or larger. The tomato is only one example. Vegetables and fruits are now sought in every part of the world. *They are crossed* until wonderful new ones are produced. They are improved until thorns are eliminated, or taste is sweetened, or some such *great change is brought about*.

It is the same with the raising of live stock. The *food varieties* of such animals have been developed till they all approach the "*block type*," with straight back and short neck and head. Scientists are now *straightening the back of the Chinese pig*. They are increasing the milk of the water buffalo. They are making Cantonese

及其他物品出口的科學。讓我們在此地舉幾種，使中國青年男女可以為國家的利益而專心效勞。

播種五穀是中國最大的實業。中國的農夫很有經驗，用不到科學家去教他們各種播種方法。可是他們不懂得科學的選種法和播種法。我們記得玉蜀黍起初是像稻米一樣小的，現在居然發達到很快，那麼我們知道別的五穀也是一樣可能的了。他們也記得美國兒童種棉園，能從每英畝出產兩擔增至二十二擔，由此可知種穀的方法確有進步的可能。

關於種植蔬菜和水菓的科學，正在研究中。現在有人計算拳頭番茄每年可銷售數千額，可是人們都記得在過去番茄並不當作良好食品。最近會發現番茄汁和橙子汁全是增加兒童健康使兒童發育的必要食品。這有一種新奇的發明，據說番茄可以接上馬鈴薯的。那個發明家說他同時種一種植物，地上結的是番茄，而地下長的是馬鈴薯。也許生長番茄的方法，只用一深像栗子大的植物，長到拳頭一樣大的，這是更可注意了。番茄不過是例子之一。蔬菜和水果是世界各處所急需的。它們若被接枝，就能生產新奇的種類。改良的方法，可使有刺的變成無刺，味道不甚甜的可變為更甜，或者更有大部的改變。

飼養家畜也是如此。家畜的食料現已改良，使牠們吃了能成為「典型家畜」，直的背，短的頸和頸。科學家現正研究使中國的番也變成直背。他們研究使水牛增加乳量。他們也研究使廣東

hens lay more eggs. Most of the big Western breeds of chickens, now completely developed and standardized, came originally from China and southern Asia. No people, perhaps, do so much fish-raising as the Chinese in the southern provinces. Here is a great field for scientific study and the development of an industry of importance. In all such raising of food animals there is need for the study of species and varieties both wild and tame, the study of their diseases and their feeding, and the study of the uses of food products.

14. The Physical Sciences

One may say that the fundamental physical sciences—chemistry and physics—underlie all the other sciences. *Yet each of these itself is a whole great field for a lifetime of work* for many people. At this moment there is great need for expert teachers of these fundamental sciences in the colleges, normal schools, and middle schools all over China. Chemistry underlies the sciences of biology, medicine, pharmacy, chemical and mechanical engineering, etc. Physics underlies the science of engineering in all its branches—electrical engineering, chemical engineering, mechanics, hydraulics, marine engineering, bridge-building, surveying, mining, conservancy work, railway engineering; also astronomy, geology, meteorology, and many other branches of scientific work, including all kinds of construction work. Are not these sciences, then, exceedingly important? How can students neglect them? Without experts in all *these many sciences* how can China develop? How can experts be trained unless great number of students study thoroughly these two fundamental sciences? Science is a big thing. Do not imagine that a few hours a week for two or three years *will carry you anywhere*. Do not imagine that a course for the degree of Bachelor of Arts, with half of it given to science, makes one a scientist. *If you have ability along a scientific line, make up your mind to a lifetime devoted to it.*

的鷄多生蛋。西洋的許多大雞種，現在已完全發達而合標準的了，其實這些雞原來是從中國和亞洲南部運去的。中國人在南部養魚很多，別國的人則不如他們。這也是一個可供科學研究和發展重要實業的地方。關於飼養肉食動物，必須研究牠們的種類——不論是野生的或是馴養的——研究牠們的疾病和飼養，並且研究食物出產的用途。

十四 自然科學

基本的科學，可說是自然科學——物理化學——自然科學是一切科學的原則。可是物理化學的本身是個很大的範圍，足供人們終身的研究。現在全中國的大學，師範學校，中學校，都需要經驗豐富的自然科學教師。化學是生物學，醫藥學，製藥學，化學工程及機械工程等科的基礎。物理是工程各科的單位，所包括的有電氣工程，化學工程，機械學，水力學，海洋工程，橋樑建築，測量，開礦，水利工程，鐵路工程；此外尚包括天文學，地質學，氣象學，和別種的科學工作，以及一切建設工程。那麼，這些科學豈不是極端重要的嗎？學生怎能忽略它們呢？要是缺乏這些有經驗的科學家，中國怎能發達呢？倘使多數的學生不去徹底研究這兩種基本的科學，怎能訓練有經驗的科學家？科學是偉大的東西。不要以為一星期學幾點鐘在二三年後就能深造的。也不要以為讀了理學士的課程，只須把一半功夫用在科學上，便能成為科學家的。如果你有能力從事一種科學，就得決意用學生的功夫專心研究。

The sciences named above are chiefly applied sciences absolutely necessary to the development of the nation. The health of the country demands them, business waits for them, industry and transportation depend upon them.

Modern war—destruction as well as construction—is a scientific thing. The World War, of 1914-1918, was a series of great scientific ventures: great forts scientifically built but scientifically destroyed; armies scientifically hidden but found and killed by new science; *ships under the sea discovered by ships in the sky*; new trenches armed with new guns and *protected by new forces* and watched over by new balloons, but soon broken by *new ironclad monsters* that crawled right up through everything. It was a contest of scientists and brave men on each side. Armies were organized and moved on scientific principles. They communicated with each other by science, were fed by science, *were cut to pieces by science*, and were healed and sent back again by science. One reason the war lasted so long was because the scientific knowledge was so nearly equal on the two sides. This gives some idea of the large place science holds in the modern world and the great need for directing the uses of science for *humanitarian purposes*.

15. The Social Sciences

Someone has said that China is as great a field for the development of the social sciences as America has been for the physical sciences. *China cannot neglect one for the other*. The physical sciences are necessary to life, health, and comfort; the social sciences are necessary to public welfare, coöperation, and the general progress and happiness of society. China has a long history, which must be studied by modern scientific methods. Anthropologists are already beginning to search China for new facts about the early life of man. Perhaps Chinese dialects and the aboriginal tribes of China *are ready to supply answers to some questions these scientists have long been asking*. China's great population is the basis

前面所說的科學大抵是應用的科學，是對於中國的發展上絕對需要的。國家的健康需要它們，各種的商業等待它們，工業和運輸也依靠它們。

近世的戰爭——不論是建設的或是破壞的——是一種科學的事情。一九一四年至一九一八年的歐洲，也是一大串科學的冒險：用科學方法造成的大砲命，依然被科學方法所破壞；用科學方法掩護的軍隊，終究被新式的科學所找到所殺戮；海底的潛艇被空中的飛機殺死了；新式的戰艦襲滅着新式的槍砲，受新式的軍隊保護着，受新式的汽球看守着，然而，不久又被新式的鐳鐵甲車衝過一切的障礙而毀壞了。這種戰爭，就是雙方科學家和勇士的競賽。軍隊的組織和動作，無不根據科學的原理，彼此來往用科學，吃飯用科學，割切東西用科學，治療和遣回也用科學。戰爭所以延長的一個原因，就是因為雙方具有同等的科學知識。從這點看，可以大略明白科學佔據現世界的極大地位，可是最要緊的是把它的用途引到人道主義的路上去。

十五 社會科學

有人說中國是個發展社會科學的大地方，好似美國是個發展自然科學的大地方一樣，中國不能因了社會本學便忽略自然科學。自然科學是對於生活健康，舒適所必要的；社會科學是對於公益，合作，普遍的發展，社會的幸福所必要的。中國既有長久的歷史，這就必須用現代科學方法去研究它。人體學家已經開始考查中國初期居民生活的新事實了。或者中國的方言與原始的種族，可拿來解答好多科學家所要解答的問題。中國的稠密的人口

for study in all branches of sociology, politics, economics, education, and religion. And, too, it is for the benefit of this great population that we want all kinds of science developed.

16. School Science

We often wonder how we can be of service to our country while we are still in school. The study of those things which will make us useful is *one way*. The development of the right spirit among our schoolmates and among *our people at home* is another way. In this matter of the mastery of modern science we can do a great service by encouraging the scientific spirit. We must have it ourselves and try to encourage it in others.

In your school you are studying some physical, biological, and social sciences. You are studying some subjects, like geography, which combine many sciences in the one great study of the earth in its relation to man. In these studies try to show the scientific spirit. Try to master each subject. Go at it systematically. Be observant in class and out. Understand each item. Do not hesitate to say you do not yet understand it. Have no shame about your ignorance as long as you are doing your best to remove it. Ask questions boldly. Be more active than your teacher. Check up your knowledge by questioning yourself and others. Be glad when someone corrects you. Be humble and teachable. *Pride goes before a fall*. But *be firm about the truth* if you know a thing to be true.

17. Science and Mathematics

Finally, we must say a word about mathematics. As science underlies progress, chemistry, physics, and geography are fundamentals. Science and mathematics are often classed together. College authorities say that a student who cannot learn mathematics cannot successfully learn the sciences.

，可作研究心理學，政治學，經濟學，教育學，宗教學的基礎。並且，也就是爲了大眾的福利，我們要去發展各種的科學。

十六 學校科學

我們常常懷疑：我們正在學校來讀書，怎能獻身於國家呢？研究各種功課，使我們成爲有用的人才，這是第一種方法。在我們同學和人民中發揚高尚的精神，這是第二種方法。在精研現代科學的這件事上，鼓勵科學的精神，是我們所能做到的一種大工作。我們自己必須有這種精神，並且還要把這種精神去鼓勵人家。

你在學校裏所讀的是物理，生物，社會科學。你所讀的科目，像地理，它是和別的科学混合的，也是與世界及人類有關係的。在這些科目中，你得去表現科學的精神。盡力研究各種科目。有系統地去閱讀它們。不論在課堂內外都得留心考察。一條條都要明瞭。如有不了解的地方，應該從速說出來。只要能竭力去免除它，不懂並非是可恥的事。大膽地發問。比你的教師更要多活動。反省自己，詢問他人，來糾正你的知識。有人指點你，你得感激。要謙遜，要領教。自大是失敗的先聲。可是，你若知道一件真實的事，你便得堅守着真理。

十七 科學與數學

最後我們對於數學要說幾句話。科學是進步的基礎，化學，物理，地理是知識的單位。科學和數學是往往並着的。大學當局說，學生不學習數學，那麼學習科學便也失敗。

Someone has said, "Science is measurement." A certain physics professor in China used to start his class with the measuring of the classroom table. He said, "If you cannot measure accurately, you cannot be a scientist." *There is so much truth in this idea that we may say that mathematics is the doorstep to science.* You must learn to calculate, to measure, and to reason logically if you are to make any progress in science. Now, some students will say, "Then it is impossible for me to study science, because I cannot learn mathematics." But it is very doubtful whether it is true that you cannot learn mathematics. Perhaps it is only that you do not know how to study mathematics. Perhaps you have only failed to learn that although your teacher *can do a great deal* for you in history and geography, in mathematics you must *do the work almost entirely yourself*. Do not depend too much upon the teacher. Do not let others do your work for you. Master it all yourself. If you are now *part way through your mathematics book* and cannot remember it well or do not feel sure you have mastered it thoroughly, stop right where you are and begin at the beginning again. Don't miss a step, an item, a chapter, a section, a problem, an exercise. Mathematics is all by steps. Understand everything and be able to *do everything in order* from the very first without any help. Don't deceive yourself. Don't judge by the teacher's approval only. Know for yourself that you are *master of each step*. Take paper and pencil, state your problem, proceed a step at a time, go as far as you can, recall, think, try, experiment, practice, question, prove, till each step is clear. You will probably find that in reality you can learn mathematics, and you will lay *the foundations of your mastery of science*.

QUESTIONS AND EXERCISES

1. Tell of a few ways in which science is remaking the world.
2. Suppose a man had fallen asleep one hundred years ago and waked up today. He is told that on board a ship at sea he can receive a message from a friend on shore. What would he

有人說：『科學就是測量。』中國有位物理教授，在開課的時候讓學生去測量課桌。他說：『你若不能精確地測量，你就不能成為科學家。』這種意思很確實，我們可以說數學是科學的門階。你若要使科學進步，務須學習計算，測量，驗理地推論。有些學生現在要說：『因為我不能學習數學，那我自然也不能研究科學了。』可是你到底真懂得數學與否，這倒是很可懷疑的。也許你不知道怎樣去研究數學呀。也許你不明白：在史地方面你的教師幫助你很多，但在數學上，差不多全要靠你自己，不完全依靠教師。不要讓人家替你工作。要自己去研究。假使你把算術書的算草演了一半記不清楚了，或者對於你所領略的覺得沒有十分把握，你就停筆去重新想過。不要錯了一步，一節，一段，一章，一個問題，或是一種練習。在廣初的時候，不要尋求人家的幫助，應該明白一切，並按照次序去做。不要欺騙自己。不要憑教師的贊許來評判。要知道你自己並精通每一階段。執起紙和鉛筆，寫下你的問題，一次進一步地趕緊去回憶，思想，嘗試，實驗，練習，發問，證明，直到每一階段都清楚為止。或者你可看出你實在能學數學的，這時你就打定了研究科學的基礎。

問 答 練 習 題

- (1) 說幾種科學可以改造世界的方法。
- (2) 假定有一個人，他睡了一百年，到現在才醒來。人家告訴他，在海洋中的船上他能接到岸上朋友的信息。他會怎樣說呢？

say? What other marvels could you tell him about? Try to imagine some wonderful things that science may accomplish in the future. Write briefly about them.

3. What do you mean by "the scientific spirit"?
4. Tell a few things that we want to do for China which depend upon scientific knowledge.
5. Make a list of a few scientific professions.
6. Distinguish between the physical sciences and the social sciences.
7. Explain the statement "Mathematics is the doorstep of

你還能告訴他別的奇特的事情嗎？盡量想幾種將來用科學可以完成的專業。把它們簡單地寫下幾句。

- (3) 『科學的精神』是什麼意思？
- (4) 舉幾種要依賴科學知識去救中國的事業。
- (5) 列一張表，舉幾種科學的職業。
- (6) 說明自然科學與社會科學的異點。
- (7) 申說『數學是科學的門階』的理由。

CHAPTER XIII

THE LIFE OF THE PEOPLE

1. What do our People Want?

When one watches busy people, one often asks: "What are they aiming at? What is it they are working so hard for? For what do they search day after day, year in and year out? What is the prize they seek? What do the people want?" If we understand clearly what our people desire, we can know better our duty in their service. For what chief object do they plan, labor, invest, wait, beg, or fight?

One answer is that they are all seeking money. But we have already seen that *money itself is of no use*. If you were lost in a desert, what good would a hundred-dollar bank note do you? They want money only because it will buy something. What is it *beyond the money that makes people work*? They want, as we said in an earlier chapter, to buy goods and services. But what sort of goods and services? For what purposes are these goods and services?

There is another common answer, which also answers this last question. They seek food, clothing, shelter, and *means of communication*—something to eat and drink something to wear, somewhere to live protected from the weather, and some way to communicate with other people. It is true that a very large number of people—*far too large a proportion*—are kept busy getting only these three necessary things. All people, however, want more than these necessities of life. There is a *larger goal*. What is it?

One may sum up the wants of people *under five heads*:

第十三章 人民的生活

一 我們的人民需要什麼

一個人見了忙人，他往往問道：「他們在忙些什麼？他們這樣辛苦工作是爲什麼？他們一天一天一年一年的是在找些什麼？他們所求的賞賜是什麼？人民的需要是什麼去假使我們清楚地瞭解我們人民的慾望，那我們就能更明白對於他們的責任了。他們設計，勞作，投資，等待，請求，爭鬥，主要的目的究竟是爲什麼？

一個答案就是：他們都爲了謀財。可是我們已經看出來金錢本身是無用的。若你在沙漠中迷途了，那你身邊所帶的一百元鈔票還有什麼用呢？人們要用錢，只是因爲錢可以買東西。除了錢以外，有什麼東西能使人去工作呢？在前面的某章中，我們已經說過，人們是要錢買貨物買勞力。但那是什麼樣的貨物和勞工呢？就算得到這些貨物和勞力，目的又爲什麼呢？

還有一個普通的答案，可以解答最後的問題；他們是找求食物，衣物，房屋，和交通的方法——就是要吃喝的東西，穿的東西，可以居住，可以躲避冷熱的地方，以及同人家來往的各種方法。確實有多數的人民——一個很大的比例——忙着求衣食住三種必需品。可是，所有的人民卻要求比這生活必需品更多的東西。這是一個較大的目的。這目的是什麼呢？

我們可把人們所需要的總括爲下列五類：

1. Life—to continue to live.
2. Liberty—to have freedom.
3. Health—to have full strength and vigor.
4. Comfort—to be free from pain or trouble.
5. Happiness—to enjoy life.

2. The General Welfare.

If a man loves his country, it means that he desires to see his people have life, liberty, health, comfort, and happiness. He wishes to have his country enjoy the highest general welfare. Therefore every patriotic citizen should understand what is best for the welfare of the people

This does not mean the welfare of some while others lack it. It does not mean that some may starve while others have enough; that some may be healthy while all the others suffer; that some may be satisfied while all the others are in want or discomfort; that some may be happy while there is *a large measure of unhappiness over the whole land*. General welfare means life, liberty, health, comfort, and happiness for all. No patriotic citizen should be *contented with the satisfaction of his own wants*, or even of those of his family and friends. He should find his own complete happiness only *in that of the whole people*. His greatest joy should be in efforts to increase the happiness of others, *to contribute to the general welfare*. That is being public-spirited. Nothing will help a nation faster than the growth of this spirit. Fortunately each of us can contribute daily both to the actual welfare and happiness of our people and to the spirit that works for this public welfare and happiness.

3. The Preservation of Life

In the next chapter we shall discuss the problem of public health, but there are many ways to preserve life, that do not come under the head of health. One of these is the prevention of accidents. The number of people

- (1) 生活——繼續生存下去，
- (2) 自由——要求解放。
- (3) 健康——得着充分的體力和精力，
- (4) 舒適——解除痛苦和煩惱。
- (5) 幸福——享受生活

二 公共福利

人若愛他的國家，思想是說他願看見人民享受生活，自由，健康，舒適，和幸福。他希望他的國家享受最高的公共福利。所以每個愛國的公民，應明白什麼是人民最好的福利。

所謂公共福利，並不是說有的富裕，有的貧乏。不是說有的挨餓，有的飽暖；有的健康，有的受苦；有的滿足，有的窮苦和不安；有的快樂而全國多數的民衆卻不快樂。公共福利是人人享受生活自由，健康，舒適，幸福的意思。愛國的公民並不祇圖滿足自己的慾望，甚至是他的家庭和朋友的慾望。他應在大衆的幸福中，找求他自己的幸福。他的最大的快樂，是竭力增加別人的快樂，均分公共的福利。這就是天下爲公的精神。幫助國家最快的東西，沒有勝過這種精神的增長了。幸而我們天天能把實益和幸福均分給我們的國民，爲了這種精神去謀得公共的福利和快樂。

三 保全生命

下面一章我們要討論公共衛生的問題，可是有好多保全生命的方法，並不祇屬於衛生一項。預防意外的危險是其中之一。

killed every year by motor cars, tramcars, and railway trains is very great and is probably increasing very rapidly. It is said that a large part of the patients in Shanghai hospitals are people injured on the streets. Much of this loss of life is due to the fact that people have not been *accustomed to such fast motion*. Is it right that some people should travel so fast that other people are killed? Should one man's enjoyment of life be another man's loss of life? Life should be protected. People should be patiently taught the danger of walking on the motor roads, of *jumping from moving cars, of crossing in front of cars*. Both the drivers and the owners should be punished most severely whenever they are in any way responsible. Roads should be so marked that drivers can see where the danger is—where curves are short, where children *may be in the way*, where there is a difficult crossing, etc. Only safe drivers should be allowed to drive. Only safe cars and engines should be used. Such rules are for the preservation of life and limb. Public opinion and public-spirited men and women will secure such rules.

There is great loss of life also upon the water. Thousands of people are drowned every year in China. *The greatest disasters are in the sinking of boats full of passengers* on the rivers and canals. This loss of life can be prevented. If some day you hear that someone has gone to his death in the cold waters of a river, just recall that we said it could have been prevented! Boat companies want to make as much money as possible, and there are no well-enforced laws to protect the people. Consequently a boat is overloaded, or it is too old and weak, or it *has a badly mended hole in it*, or it has an engine just ready to explode. The passengers cannot know the danger. *They pay their money and go to their death*. In Western countries every passenger boat is carefully inspected, the officers are examined, the number of people is limited and they are counted as they go aboard, and provision for life-saving for the total number is made.

每年有許多人被汽車，電車，火車碾死，也許這個數量增加的很快。據說上海各醫院的病人，大部分是在街上受傷的。事實上，這種生命的損失，是因為人民不慣於迅速的行動。因為有人駛車過速，有人便因此死傷，這是對的嗎？一個人應該享受生命的快樂而使人喪失生命嗎？生命是宜保護的。人民應耐性地受教導；凡是在汽車路上行走，或在行駛的車上跳下，或橫過車子的前面，都是有危險。駕駛者和車主若不負任何責任，就該嚴重處罰。路上須立標誌，使開車人能看見危險的所在：如小轉彎的地方，有孩子的地方，不易行駛地方等等。只有穩妥的駕駛者才准開車。只有完好的車子和機器才准使用。這種定章足以保全生命和四肢，凡是愛護輿論而具有公德心的男女，都得遵守這種定章。

水上的生命損失也不少。中國每年都有數千人溺死。最慘的是江河中滿載搭客沉沒的輪船。這種生命喪失是能預防的。如果將來你聽見有人掉在河裏的冷水中，你就回憶我們說過可以預防的話吧！這是因為輪船公司想拚命賺錢，同時國家沒有嚴厲的法律去保護人民的緣故。結果或者是船載貨太重，或者是年久未修，或者是漏洞不補，或者是機器將近破損。搭客並不知道這種危險。他們出了錢反而喪失了生命。在西洋各國，每隻載客的船須受嚴密的檢查，船員也要受考驗，所載的人數亦有限制，上船的時候就記下確實的數目，並且為全部的人數準備着充足的救生船。

Many people are killed in construction work, in machine shops, in factories, in engine rooms, in handling poisons and explosives, and in mines. Many are killed by overwork, by overstrain, by exposure, by sitting in the cold in their rickshas all night, by hunger, by bad treatment, by sorrow, by discouragement. Have we been public-spirited and merciful enough to think about these? Have we anything to do with any of these forms of danger to the life of our people? Should we not be very angry if we saw a foreigner kill one of our people? How then shall we feel about *our own carelessness and indifference*? A certain high official once said: "Don't bother. *There are too many people anyway.*" He ought to have been the first to die, for he was *the enemy of the people*. Let us seek every way we can to preserve the lives of our people, to decrease dangers, and to work to make their lives in every way safer.

Let us keep in mind China's great losses of life, for they will make us work more earnestly for ways to prevent them. We do not want China to be famous as the nation of the greatest disasters. Let us remember the *famine of 1877-1878*, when eight million people died from starvation. Let us remember *Szechwan's great historical destruction of population*. Let us not forget *the Taiping Revolution*, in which the loss of life was somewhere between ten and twenty million. Let us keep in mind that there is a famine from a flood or other cause somewhere in China every year.--Let us continue to look for ways to prevent such disaster, to preserve life, to provide for those who are starving. If we keep our minds earnestly upon such matters, we shall soon be able to find remedies for these evils, and will do everything in our power to secure means to apply these remedies.

4. Life and Freedom

Of what use is life without liberty? Many a time a prisoner has had his life spared only to *spend the rest of his existence* in a prison cell. That is more like death

好多人是爲建設工作而犧牲生命的：如在機器廠，工廠，發動機房，礦地，製造毒藥炸藥等等地方。好多人是爲了工作過多，勞力過度，露天住宿，坐在人力車中過夜，受虐待，憂愁，灰心等而喪失生命的。對於這般人，我們能不同情地憐恤地去想一想嗎？我們對於有關生命的危險，應該怎麼辦呢？我們如果看見外國人殺了中國人，我們能不憤怒嗎？那麼，我們對於自己的疏忽和淡漠，將有何種感想呢？某大官有一次說：不要煩惱，我們的人民多得很呢。說話的人應該先死，因爲他是國民的公敵。我們要竭力設法使我們能保全人民的生命，減少危險，做些使他們的生命能得到比較安全的事業。

我們要把中國大批生命的損失放在心上，因爲這種損失更能使我們熱誠地設法去預防它們。我們不願中國成爲一個著名的有大災害的國家。我們要記着一八七七年至一八七八年的荒年。那時餓死的人有八百萬。我們要記着四川歷史上的大浩劫。我們要記着太平天國的革命，那一次生命的喪失總在一兩千萬之間。我們要記着中國歷年的饑饉水災及其他類的災禍。我們要繼續設法防止這些災禍，保全生命，救濟那些飢餓的人。假使我們熱心地把這些事情放在心上，我們不久就能找到方法去補救這病源，並且竭力去實現補救的方法了。

四 生命和自由

沒有自由，生命還有什麼用呢？有時一個犯人雖被赦了生命，但他卻一輩子關在牢獄裏。這是像死，

than life. To take away a man's freedom is *next to taking away his life*. Murder is sometimes punished with death, sometimes with imprisonment for life or for many years. Children cannot have full freedom as long as others are responsible for them; but as soon as *they are of age* and self-supporting, if they are good citizens they may come and go, and no one may take away their freedom without their consent. Civilized governments are *pledged to preserve* the greatest possible liberty for the largest possible number of people under their rule.

5. Home and Liberty

A government cannot take away the home or liberty of any man, woman, or child unless person commits a crime or has some disease which makes him a danger to everybody else. A person who deliberately kills another person is punished with death. A person who drinks or takes drugs until he finally becomes insane and dangerous is *shut up in an institution* and loses his liberty. There are some diseases so contagious that *the mere touch of the hand will spread them*. People who have such diseases must be prevented from giving them to others. In China there are twenty-six villages, hospitals, and homes for lepers. On the island of Cullion in the Philippines there are over six thousand lepers. The United States government gives them comfortable homes, plenty of books to read, and everything they want except one great thing—their liberty. No matter how long they live they can never revisit their homes or their friends. This seems cruel; but if leprosy should spread among the people, the whole nation might soon be afflicted with this terrible and incurable disease. In ancient times, as in *Jerusalem*, lepers were cruelly driven outside the walls of the city, where they often perished from hunger and exposure.

Except for criminals and persons afflicted with terrible diseases, the government does not deprive even the humblest person of his home or his liberty. In the large

並不像生。奪去人的自由，與奪去人的生命相差無幾。殺人犯有時處死刑，有時處無期徒刑，也有時處幾年的徒刑。孩子們如無大人負責，亦無完全自由；可是等到他們年長自立的時候，如果他們是守法的公民，他們當然可能不受拘束，要不是得他們的同意，誰都不能奪去他們的自由。文明的政府，在法律範圍之內，應為最多數的人民担保絕對可能的自由。

五 家庭和自由

政府不能奪取任何男女兒童的家庭或自由，除非這人犯了罪或者傳染了於人有危險的疾病。一個謀殺人的應判死刑。一個因喝酒或服藥而成爲癡狂的，危險的人應拘禁在瘋人院中奪去他的自由。有許多疾病善於傳染，只要手一觸着便散佈開了。人們有這種傳染病的，必須預防使他們不再傳給別人。中國有二十六個村鎮，醫院，房屋給麻瘋病人住去。菲律賓的苦連島有六千以上的麻瘋病人。美國政府給他們住舒服的房子，給他們設很多的醫，給他們預備所需要的一切，只有一件最大的東西——這就是他們的自由——是除外的。不管他們活到多久，他們永不能見他們的家庭和親友。這好像太殘忍了；可是，若任麻瘋傳佈到民間，那全國人民就得傳染這可怕而不治的病。古時的耶魯撒冷，麻瘋病人是被狠毒地趕出城外的，在那兒他們因受飢餓和露宿而往往死去。

除了犯罪的和染有惡疾者外，就是最下賤的人，政府也不能剝奪他的家庭或自由。

cities there are often more people than positions. At the same time, in the wheat fields, on the cotton farms, or in the coal mines, there may not be enough workers to harvest the crops or to mine the coal. It would almost seem that for the good of the nation the government should force the unemployed men and boys in the cities to go to the wheat fields and coal mines. But no; all that the government can do is to urge those who are out of employment to go where there is work.

6. Certain Forms of Slavery

A slave is one whose liberty has been taken away and who is compelled to work for others. Although slavery has never existed to the same extent in China as in some Western countries, there are certain forms of slavery in our country that every patriotic citizen must condemn and fight against. Families in villages which are too poor to support all their children often sell the girls to the richer families in the cities as "slave girls." Boys are almost never sold, because people have the idea that the boys will earn money and will maintain the continuity of the family, while the girls will have to be given away to other families in marriage anyway. Frequently these unfortunate girls are sold at a very tender age, and have to do a great deal of the manual work in the household of their mistresses. If a slave girl happens to have a kind mistress, she is fairly well treated, but *has to toil every day in the year* without any wage or opportunity of education. She is not freed until she is *of age to marry*, when she will be again sold, this time to be the wife of some man. Sometimes the mistress is a harsh woman, and the slave girl cannot go away, no matter how cruelly treated she may be. She often cannot go to bed until late at night and has to get up early in the morning. She is scolded, even beaten, at *the slightest sign of disobedience*. What a difference there is between the life of a slave girl and the life of comfort and ease of the children of her mistress! Is this justice? Should we not

在大都會中人數比地位爲多。同時在麥田裏，在棉花地上，或在煤礦中，收割五穀與掘煤的工人也許不夠。爲了國家的利益，政府似乎應該強迫都會中失業的男子與兒童到麥田裏和煤礦中去的。可是不能這樣說；政府所能想辦法的，祇是鼓勵失業者到有工作的地方去吧了。

六 幾種奴隸的制度

奴隸是被奪去自由而強迫給別人工作的人。雖然中國的奴隸不及西洋的多，但在我們國家中卻有幾種奴隸制度，是每個愛國的國民所應取締和反對的。鄉村家庭窮到不能養活兒女，往往把自己的女兒賣給城裏的富戶當「丫頭」。男孩是決不出賣的，因爲人們有種觀念，以爲男孩將來能賺錢，繼續維持家庭，而女兒遲早總是要嫁人的。這些不幸的女孩常在年齡幼稚時被賣，在女東家的家裏操極勞苦的工作。如果丫頭禮着和霽的女東家，她可得到優待，但仍須天天工作，沒有酬報也沒有受教育的機會。直到結婚的年齡才得着自由，不過那時她又被賣給男人做妻子了。有時女東家是個很凶悍的婦人，無論丫頭受怎樣虐待，也不能逃走。她非到半夜不能睡覺，而一早就得起身。稍有違逆之處，總要挨罵受打。丫頭的奴隸生活和女東家自己女兒的安適生活，互相對照起來，誠有天壤之別了！這算公道的嗎？

advocate the abolition of these slave girls? Already a number of cities and districts have made laws against this evil practice. We should *do our best to create public opinion that will secure the passage and enforcement of such laws all over China.*

There is another form of slavery, which is even more hideous but has received little attention from the public. For many years heartless agents acting for certain companies have been *recruiting ignorant laborers* to work in mines or on plantations abroad, chiefly in *Cuba, Peru, and the Malay States.* They give these laborers *all sorts of false hopes* and pay their passage on condition they will each sign a contract selling their personal liberty for a period of ten or twenty years. When they arrive in the foreign country, they are treated like beasts, and their bodies are ruined by overwork and poor living conditions. They are often whipped, beaten, and even killed, at the will of their masters. Many of them never live long enough to return to their homes, *to say nothing of getting rich.* The government should investigate the matter, *prohibit this kind of contract labor, and make proper provisions for the protection of the lives of Chinese living abroad.*

7. Eternal Vigilance is the Price of Liberty

Since there is danger that through ignorance or thoughtlessness some people may be treated unfairly, every one of us *should pledge himself always to stand for justice and fair play.* The words "injustice" and "oppression" ought not to *appear on any page of our history that is yet to be written.* The future of our nation is largely *in the keeping of the boys and girls of today.* *Eternal vigilance is the price of liberty,* and we must never cease to look for wrongs that need correcting. Let us look into our own homes and villages for those who may not be enjoying full liberty. Let us look into our own classroom and playgrounds and see if everyone is

我們不應主張廢除女婢制度嗎？有好些城邑已定有取消此種惡習的法律了。我們該竭力提倡輿論，強制這種法律通行全國。

還有一種更可怕的奴隸制度，但很少受社會的注意。許多年來，一般很毒的經紀人，爲公司招募無知的工人，到海外去開墾或植林，主要的地方是古巴，祕魯，和馬來殖民地。他們用各種空頭的希望欺騙工人，給他們川資，訂了一二十年出賣身體自由的契約。他們一到了外國，就被當作畜類看待，因爲工作過度，生活艱苦，身體也隨着損壞了。他們常遭鞭笞，甚至被害，都聽雇主的便。有許多不待回國就死去，更談不到發財。政府應當調查這件事，禁止訂立此類勞工契約，並且施行相當的法律，以保護海外僑民。

七 永久覺悟是自由的代價

雖然人們是因無知和愚蠢而陷入不平等待遇的危險，但我們卻當發誓站在公正平等的地位。「不義」和「壓迫」，這種字眼不應在我們歷史的任何一頁裏面。我們國家的前途，大半是寄託在今日的青年男女身上。永久的覺悟是自由的代價，我們不可忽略，必須矯正運籌。我們要注意我們家庭和鄉村的不能享受完全自由的人。我們要注意我們課堂和操場上的同學，

enjoying the rights of a free citizen. Let us insist that everybody be given a "square deal." That is liberty and democracy. It must reach from the president to the humblest worker in the kitchen.

8. Health and Comfort

The third item in our list of wants is health, which is so important that we shall give a whole chapter to it.

The fourth item is comfort, which depends first upon health. To be comfortable means, first of all, to be free from pain or any bodily unpleasantness—not to be too hungry or thirsty, too tired or sleepy, too cold or hot.

By real comfort, however, we mean a great deal more than that. We mean *the absence of all troubles both of mind and of body*. There must be good food to eat, good water to drink, good clothes to wear, good shelter from rain and sun and from heat and cold. There must be good furniture, conveniences, light, air, etc. There must also be *a feeling of safety, an atmosphere of friendliness, a satisfaction in labor*, the presence of family and friends. When we stop to think what is necessary to our comfort, we find that we *can make quite a list without going into the question of what is necessary to our happiness*. Let us think *for a little while* about what is needed only for our comfort, and then ask ourselves if that is more than we want to see all the people of our country have. Do we not wish to see every family living in comfort? Do we not eagerly desire for every man, woman, and child in China life, liberty, health, food, clothing, a home, proper occupation, easy means of transportation and communication, and, in fact, all the comforts of modern life?

9. A Modern Home

What are the comforts of a modern home? Homes differ very much from country to country, from city to city, from village to village, even from house to house.

看看他們是否個個能享受自由公民的權利。我們應主張人人必須受平等待遇。這恐自由，還是民主思想。上自總統，下至殘役都該一樣。

八 健康和安樂

在上表中的第三項，是健康；健康是很要緊的，所以我們應給它另關專章。

第四項是安樂，還是先要依賴健康的。安樂的意思，第一是免除痛苦與肉體上的任何不舒快——不太餓不太渴，不太累或太倦，不太冷或太熱。

但在真正安的樂上，那就比這意涵高深得多了。我們所說的是免除一切心身的煩惱。要有好的食物吃，要有好的衣服穿，要有好的飲料喝，要有好的房屋住，可以避免雨和日，熱和冷。要有好的器具，便利，燈光，空氣等等。此外也須有平安的感覺，友愛的氣氛，稱心的工作，親朋的團聚。假使我們停着去想一想什麼是我們的安樂所必須的，那我們就可列一張表，毫無猶豫地是指我們幸福所必需的一切。讓我們思量，我們所需要的安樂是些什麼，於是再問問我自己，全國人民所有的安樂是否超過我們所思量的以上。我們難道不願看各個家庭過着安樂的生活嗎？我們難道不熱望着中國的男女兒童都有生活，自由，健康，食物，衣服，家庭，正當職業，運輸和交通的方法嗎？老實說一句，這些方法不就是現代生活中的安樂嗎？

九 現代家庭

現代家庭的安樂是什麼？不論各國，各城，各鄉，甚至各家的家庭，都是完全不同的。

Do not get your idea of a modern home from the motion pictures. They usually show either the very poorest, or those so grand that they can hardly be real homes.

The things that really make a good home can be pictured or described only in part. Many of the most important factors are hidden in the hearts of those who live in that home. Someone has said that wherever there is a mother's love there is a home. Affection and mutual service make a home more comfortable and happy than anything else. Fortunately these are contributions that every one of us can make in his own home. If the members of a home circle are always watching for opportunities to assist, to understand, to sympathize with and to encourage one another, the home is certain to be a happy one. More than that, such a home is a strong center of patriotism. From such homes come our heroes and our public-spirited citizens. The home is the unit and center of democratic civilization. Now and in the future do all you can to make your home a good one. A man or a woman should not live alone, and yet a home ought not to be so large as to lose its simple character as the center of a single family.

What is your idea of an ideal Chinese home? Can you picture an ideal home in a city? in a small town? in a village? Remember we should not want for ourselves more than we want to see every home in China have. Picture your ideal in terms of your experience and observation and Chinese conditions in general. As living conditions differ from country to country, home life will be different. Since we are studying English, it may be interesting to learn something about home life in the West.

10. A Western Home in a City

Let us begin with a modern home in a city of a Western country; we shall not give names or places. The family all eat breakfast together. In winter the house is already warm. There is a coal stove or furnace, the fire in

不要在電影中領略你的現代家庭的觀念。他們往往表現得非常痛苦，或者過於富麗，這全不是實際的情形。

電影中所攝取的和描寫的，祇有一部分確屬於模範家庭。許多最重要的原素是藏在家庭裏的人心中。有人說有母愛的地方就有家庭。愛情和互助使家庭更舒適快樂，勝於別的一切。幸而這是我們對於自己的家所能担负的。如果家庭中的分子能找到機會互相幫助，互相瞭解，互相同情，互相鼓勵，這家庭自然是快樂的了。進一步說，這家庭還是愛國的強固的中心點。從這樣的家庭裏，產出我們的英雄和我們好義的公民。家庭是民主文明的單位和中心。在最近與將來，都要使你的家庭成爲美滿的一個。男女不應獨處，但家庭不可太大，因而失去一家中心的個人性格。

你對於理想的中國家庭有什麼意見呢？你能描寫都會，不鎮鄉村的理想家庭嗎？要記着我們所需要的不能比中國每個家庭所需要的爲多。用你的經驗觀察，和中國的普遍情形，反映出你的理想。因爲各國的生活狀況不同，家庭狀況也就各別。自從我們讀了英文之後，要研究些西洋家庭的生活，也許是很有趣的。

十 西洋城市中的家庭

讓我們從一個西洋國家的城市的現代家庭說起：不必指出它的名字和地名。他們的早餐，是在一塊兒吃的。到了冬天房子裏便很溫暖。有一隻煤爐，火是整天不息的，

which does not go out from one day to the next, and yet does not require much coal. Breakfast may be as early as seven o'clock, and yet milk, fresh meat or fish, the newspaper, and the early morning mail have already been delivered. The family read and talk about their letters and the news while they eat breakfast, or just before and after breakfast.

After that each goes at once to his day's work. The father takes a tramcar or bicycle to his business. Perhaps he walks. Perhaps he has a motor car. Perhaps he has a chauffeur, or drives and takes care of the car himself. Perhaps he takes his sons and daughters to school or work and his wife to the market.

The mother *does her shopping*. She may go to the market herself and select food for the family. She knows what foods are best and most economical. When she returns to the house, she sees that the rooms are swept, the windows opened, the beds made-up, and preparations for lunch started. When the house is clean and well aired it is closed again and is soon warm enough for writing, sewing, and for lunch. Perhaps there is a *servant or even more than one* to assist in the work.

At noon there is a *reunited family*, unless some go so far to work or school that they cannot return. There is something interesting to tell about the morning's experiences, as well as something good to eat, chosen by mother and cooked in just the right way. Then one goes back to work; another returns to school; another goes to teach or study music. Mother *calls a friend on the telephone* and makes an appointment to meet her and discuss plans for *some social-service work*.

Later in the afternoon the father returns from his business and goes with one of the family for a walk or a ride. One of the boys comes in from school after a game of football and goes at once to have a bath. He plunges into clean water in a clean white tub in a clean white room. There are hot water and cold water, good smooth

但卻非常省潔。早上七點鐘就用早餐，那時牛乳，鮮肉或魚，報紙，和早班的信件都送來了。正常吃飯時或吃飯前後，他們再談着並閒談着關於信件和新聞的事情。

早餐後，各人立刻去做日常的工作。父親趁電車或騎腳踏車去辦事。或者步行。或者他備有汽車。或者他雇有一個汽車夫，或者他自己謹慎地開車。或者他帶了子女到學校裏去讀書，或者去辦事，有時還同夫人上街去。

母親做的是買辦工作。她能獨自到菜場上去，爲家裏選購食物。她知道那種食品最好而又經濟。當她回到家裏的時候，她看見房內乾淨，窗戶打開，牀鋪整潔，且已預備做午飯。待房內潔淨通氣之後，仍把窗戶關上，不久也就很溫暖地可以寫字，縫紉，做飯了。也許有一個或者一個以上的僕役幫助做這些雜務。

到了中午，家人又重新聚攏了，可是離學校或工作地方太遠的就不能回來。說到早上的經過，或者母親所選的美味食物，或者用適當方法烹調等等的事情，都是很有趣的。飯後有的去工作；有的去上學；有的去教授或研究音樂。母親在電話中和人談話，約定會晤的日期，討論社會事業的工作計劃。

傍晚時父親從辦公回來，帶着家中的一人去散步或騎馬出遊。有個男孩從學校歸來，因爲正賽踢足球，便立刻去洗澡。他走進潔白的浴室，跳入潔白的浴缸的潔淨的水中。那兒有冷熱水，有光滑的

soap, and a rough towel. He comes out *feeling like a new person*, and after dressing he studies his lessons before dinner.

At dinner time each one has finished his day's work, his afternoon's recreation, his toilet, and perhaps all preparations for tomorrow. Each has something interesting to tell. Dinner is enjoyed, and if there is no servant, all *take a hand* at washing the dishes and putting things away for the night.

Then comes the comfortable evening hour. *The light is turned on* in the sitting-room, where all have comfortable seats. Someone reads a good book to the others or starts a game of some kind. Or perhaps there is an open fire with a soft light, so that all wish to have the electric light turned off and a story told around the fire. Or perhaps some friend or friends come in for an evening's conversation or games or music. Someone is asked to play the piano or to sing. So the evening is spent in comfort and wholesome pleasure of one kind or another. Finally the father or mother *reminds all of the passage of time and of the eight hours that everybody should sleep*. Lights are turned out and bedroom lights are turned on. Soon these lights are out, windows are open, and all are fast asleep in clean and comfortable beds.

11. A Western Home in a Small Town

This is a home in a small town. Father and sons are up before breakfast to start a fire in the kitchen stove, to cut some wood or carry some coal or attend to the furnace, to care for the cow and to wash the motor car, to bring in the milk and to clean shoes and clothes. Mother and daughters cook breakfast and take care of the smaller children.

After breakfast all go to work or school or go shopping or do housework. They probably walk to work and school and to their shopping. The mother and daughters care for the house, make and mend clothes, and sometimes can

肥皂，有扭纏的毛巾。洗完了澡，他覺得清爽得就像個新人，於是穿上衣服，在飯前預備他的功課。

晚飯時，人人已做完他的日常工作，他的午後的運動，他的沐浴理髮等事，也許預備好了明天所做的一切。各人都有很有趣的材料可以說述。晚餐時是很快樂的，如果沒有僕人，他們就各自動手洗淨碗碟，收拾起來備作夜間使用。

於是舒適的晚間到了。客廳的電燈開着，各人都有適宜的座位。有的把有益的書籍念給別人聽，有的開始作某種遊戲。或者爲了壁爐的火光溫柔，所以願意滅了電燈，大家圍着火爐講故事。或者有一兩個朋友來作晚上的談話，遊戲，或奏音樂。有的就遵命彈琴唱歌。整個的晚上就在這種舒適的有益的享樂中消遣過去了。末了，父或母向各人提醒，時間不早了，大家須有八小時的睡眠。於是客廳的電燈關上，臥室的電燈開起來。不久燈又再關上，窗戶卻仍開着，大家就在這潔淨的舒適的牀上熟睡了。

十一 西洋小市鎮中的家庭

這是小市鎮中的一個家庭。父親和兒子們在早飯前起身到廚房去生火，劈伐木柴，搬運煤炭，當心爐子，照顧母牛，洗刷汽車，領取牛乳，整潔衣鞋。母親和女兒做早飯，看管較小的孩子。

早餐後，大家有的去工作；有的去上學，有的去買物，有的料理家政。不論工作，上學或買物，大都是步行的。母女照料家庭，縫製衣服，有時裝鑲頭水菓。

fruit. The care of a whole house seems a large task without a servant, but even in a small town there are usually gas and electricity. A gas stove needs only a light. An electric iron needs only to be moved. An *electric vacuum cleaner* takes all the dirt and dust out of the house. Electric lights leave no smoke or oil. Steam heat makes no dirt. *Laundry is sent out*, and occasionally a man or woman is employed to come in and work. There are no dogs to soil the floors, and chickens are kept in a yard at the back of the house.

If the father's work is at a distance, he may not come home for lunch, but all return before dinner in the evening.

Lunch and dinner are *times for news*. In a small town everybody knows everybody else. Mother wants to know what is going on in town, what the schools are doing, what strangers have come, and what the newspaper says. Everything is discussed.

The hour or two before dinner is spent in many ways that add to the comfort and pleasure of the home. There may be a back garden in which all the family like to work. There are chickens to take care of, furniture to be repaired or moved, a broken glass to be replaced, the grass in the front yard to cut, some flowers to plant, a *broken gate to fix* painting or whitewashing to do, a drain to mend. No workman is needed: it is part of the fun and exercise of the family. The beauty and comfort of the home are enjoyed more because these things are done without help or expense. Sometimes the late afternoon is spent in games or a trip of some kind. Perhaps dinner is packed in a basket and all go out for an evening picnic in the fields or woods. Often neighbors call, and the time is spent in conversation on the veranda or on the clean grass.

The evening is short after dinner is eaten and after the last of the day's work is done; for the family go early to bed, since they rise earlier than the people of the city. Lessons are quickly studied, things are talked over, the

照料全勞，不僱一個僕人，似乎是件困難的工作，但在這樣的小市鎮裏，也常有煤氣和電氣。煤爐只須一點火。電氣熨斗只須移動一下就可以。電氣真空清潔器能除盡屋中的污穢和灰塵。電燈並無烟和油。熱水汀清潔衛生。常洗的衣服可透出去，或者隨時僱個男人到家裏來洗。沒有狗弄髒了地板，小雞則關在屋後的天井裏。

如果父親在遠處工作的，他就不回家吃飯，但在晚餐之前，大家都回來了。

午飯和晚餐是談時事的時候，在小市鎮中人人都知道人家的事情。母親想知道些城中的景況，校裏的大師，陌生的來客，和報紙上所登的消息。一切都是談話的資料。

晚餐前的一兩個鐘頭，有許多方法用來增加家庭的舒服和快樂。屋後也許有花園，那是家人歡喜工作的地方。如照顧小雞，修理或移動家具，更換破碎的玻璃，割除前院的青草，種植花類，修裝破門，油漆或刷白，疏濬陰溝等等。不用僱工人的；這是家人遊戲和操練的事。因為不僱人不耗費，家庭的美麗和舒適，更得盡量享受着。有時下午，或作遊戲，或出外步行。或者把糧食放在筐中，大家出去旅行或在樹林中或曠野上舉行早餐。鄰舍常來邀請，在走廊或潔淨的草地上，以談話來消磨光陰。

吃過晚餐，做完一天的工作後，晚間的功夫便很短促了；因為全家得早睡，而起來又比城裏的人早。所以功課早預備，事情提先討論，

newspaper is read, small matters are attended to, and soon all are asleep.

12. 'A Western Country Home

This is a country home. It is several miles from any town, but there are other farm homes not far away and also a post office and a store or two. The house stands among beautiful big trees; the smooth grass under them runs down to the road. Behind the house are the chicken yards, the barn, and the small house in which the motor car is kept. Not far away is a stream of clean water. In it is a *hydraulic ram* which is kept working all the time by the stream. It pumps water into a tank above the house. This gives water in the kitchen and bathroom and in the back yard, and the overflow of the tank always keeps full a trough of drinking-water for the cows and horses at the barn.

Before breakfast one of the boys feeds and milks the cows and takes them to the field of grass where they spend the day. The horses are fed, and made ready for work. The girls gather fruit, make the beds, and help their mother prepare breakfast. A bell is rung. The father and boys come in from the stable and wash hands and faces; then breakfast is eaten. There are berries and cream, bacon and eggs, bread and butter and milk, and hot cakes with honey. Everybody talks about the day's plans.

After breakfast two boys take the horses to one of the fields to cultivate the corn. *With modern implements they put a fairly large field into good condition* before lunch time. Then they get on their horses and come back around by the cherry trees, where they have a feast. Meanwhile the girls have picked several bucketfuls of berries. Mother has made jam of some of the fruit and *stored it away for winter*. Father has sprayed the apple orchard to protect it from scale insects, caterpillars, and other pests.

報紙按時閱讀，雜務宜速辦妥，然後大家就一道去睡了。

十二 西洋鄉村的家庭

這是鄉村的家庭它離小市鎮有幾里路遠，但離此不遠有別的村莊，也有一個郵政局成一兩戶商店。房屋位於美麗的樹林當中；平滑的青草長滿路頭。屋後是養雞場，儲蓄室，和放汽車的小房子。離家不遠，有一條潔淨的河流。河裏有個水力的活塞，常受河流的轉動而工作着。它抽水引到屋上的水槽裏去。它供給廚房的，浴室的，後院的水，至水槽所溢出的水，則常充滿棚中的牛槽馬槽。

早晨，男孩去飼牛犛牛乳，並且把牛帶到草地上去消遣一天。馬餵飽了也等待着工作。女孩採水菓，整理牀鋪，幫母親預備早餐。鈴響了。父親和兒子們從馬房那裏走來，洗淨手臉，然後即用早餐。所吃的有菓菓和牛酪，鹹肉和雞蛋，麵包和奶油，以及密製的熱點心等。大家都談着當天的計劃。

早晨後，兩個男孩牽着馬到田莊上去種穀。用了新式的器具，不到半天功夫他們就把一大塊地耕好了。然後騎上馬背，繞過櫻桃樹那邊，大吃了一回水菓，才回家去。同時女孩子們採了整筐的漿菓。母親用菓子和菓汁，以備冬日吃用。父親在菓中噴着殺蟲水，以防甲蟲，幼蟲，及其他害蟲的滋生。

At lunch all are hungry and *make short work of the fried chicken* and the fresh vegetables which have come in from the garden. There are accounts of what has been done and seen during the morning. There is a discussion as to whether the rest of the berries shall be canned or sold. It is decided that mother and the girl shall take them to town. The boys at once rush away and pick a lot of cherries to sell, too. One of the girls drives the car. In town they sell the berries and cherries to a fruit dealer, do their shopping, and come home. One of the girls picks up a rubber hose, turns on the water, and washes the wheels of the car without even wetting her hands.

Father has been *telephoning about his peaches*. He has made arrangements for skilled men to pick and pack them. He has decided, moreover, to ship the peaches to New York, and *has made a contract for the boxes, the shipping, and the sale*. This news will be interesting and instructive to the boys when they return. They have picked and brought in more cherries and then have gone for a swim.

Evening comes. Father milks the cows. The boys feed the horses and *put them up for the night* or make some repairs on the car or tractor. Mother feeds the chickens and brings in the eggs. The girls light the lamps and set the table for supper. There is plenty to eat—a big cherry pie, cool rich milk, and lots of bread and butter and cheese. And yet no fire has been made for supper. The pie was baked at lunch time. Before and after supper the family sit on the veranda or under the trees. The postman brings the mail. There are magazines, newspapers, and letters. One of the girls *runs the gramophone*.

That is summer. In winter there is less work. There are repairs to make, wood to cut, cows to feed, fires to make, snow to shovel. Then there are rides to school, studying, reading, hunting, and entertaining.

到了午飯時，大家都餓了，於是敏捷地烤小雞和從園中採來的青菜。一件件地說出早上所做的和所見的事情。討論多餘的漿菓是裝罐頭還是出售。後來決定由母親和女兒拿到城裏去。男孩們立刻跑開，也要採若干櫻桃去賣。一個女兒開車。他們把漿菓和櫻桃賣給城裏的水菓商，再去購備別的東西，於是回家。有個女孩執起橡皮管，旋轉自來水龍頭，洗刷車輪，連手也沒有濕。

父親打電話接洽桃子的事情。他約敏捷的人來採桃子，裝桃子。並且他訂了辦箱子裝運，出售的合同，預備用船運到紐約去。等到兒子回來聽了這種消息，他們便覺得很有趣而且很有教益。他們採了更多的櫻桃進門之後，就去游泳了。

到了晚上。父親擠牛乳。兒子們餵飽了馬，牽牠們到馬房裏去過夜。或者修理車輛或拖攬，母親飼養小雞收取雞蛋。女孩們點起燈火，鋪着桌子，預備吃晚飯。吃的東西很多；櫻桃餅，冷而濃的牛乳，還有許多麥包，奶油，牛酪。可是晚餐沒有起火。櫻桃餅是中飯時煎的，晚飯的前後，全家人坐在廊下或樹底。郵差送信來。有雜誌，報章和信札。有個女孩跑去開留聲機。

上面是指夏天而言，到了冬天，便沒有那麼多的工作了。先要做的是修理，砍柴，餵牛，生火，掃雪等事。其次要做的是診車上學，研究，讀書，打獵，款待等事。

13. Rural China

It has been said that 80 per cent of China's population is rural. There is *no way of knowing definitely*, for there has never been a careful and accurate census of the whole population, such as there is in many Western countries; but certainly a very large majority of the people live on farms or in farming villages. The greatest problems in China, therefore, are the rural problems. How can so vast a number of country people be made comfortable, healthy, strong, and happy? They ought to have plenty of food, good clothing, bright and comfortable homes, pretty villages, agricultural equipment and science, roads and telephones, education, organization, and protection.

Some of these things come with good government and some with ordinary education, both of which we shall discuss later. All of them are aided by increased means of communication and transportation. We already have a wonderful telegraph and postal system, as we shall see, and telephones are being increased rapidly. Motor roads and railroads all over the country are necessary to the welfare of the rural people. Without good roads and railways they cannot obtain such *necessities of life* as medicines, books, and magazines. Every year people somewhere are starving, while others are selling food for almost nothing, or even *letting it rot*, because it costs too much to carry it to market. It is said that wheat sometimes sells for 25 or 30 coppers a picul in western China when it is selling for \$4 or \$5 in Shanghai. Roads and railroads will increase many times the wealth and comforts and happiness of the people who are far from the cities. It is very important for us *to keep this ever before the officials and investors and also before the rural people themselves.*

Many of these much-needed roads can be built by the country people themselves. They need organization and leadership for this purpose and also for other coöperative enterprises. If they would organize, they could do

十三 中國的農村

據說中國百分之八十的人民是務農的。因為中國的人口並不像西方一樣有精確詳細的調查，所以不能確知它的數目；但大多數的人民住在田莊上或鄉村裏倒是事實。那麼，中國的最大問題便是農村問題了。怎樣才能使這許多鄉人安適，健康，強壯，快樂呢？他們應該有豐富的食物，整潔的衣服，光亮而舒適的家庭，美麗的村莊，農事的設備和科學，道路與電話，教育，組織及保護。

這些東西，有的依賴良好的政府，有的依賴普通的教育，這兩件事，我們以後再來討論。所有的一切須靠交通和運輸方法的增加。我們已有了宏大的郵電制度，並且電話增加得很快，這都是可以看出來的。普遍全國的公路和鐵路，是農民所必要的利益。缺少公路和鐵路，他們便得不到生活的必需品，如藥材，書籍，雜誌等等。每年各處常有餓死的人，同時別的地方的貨物卻賣不掉，或者任其腐爛，因為要運到市場上去化錢太多了。據說中國西部的麥，有時每担只賣二十五至三十枚銅元，但在上海可值四五塊錢。公路和鐵路能增加許多倍距城較遠的人民的財富，安適，和幸福。最要緊的是把這件事委給官吏，投資者，和農人自己去辦。

許多必要的道路是鄉民自己能建築的。爲了這件事和其他的合作事業，他們需要組織和領袖。如果他們願有組織，他們便能建設堤壩，

rivers, beautify towns, open schools, secure protection, and both buy and sell at better prices. Many villages with wonderful possibilities of beauty are ugly and filthy because the men sit about in the winter and do nothing when they could just as well be working together to beautify and improve their towns. An old countryman was once asked what he did in the winter time. He replied, "Sometimes I sit and think, and sometimes I only sit." But, you say, what can the poor rural people do without money? They can do a large share of this work without money, and that *will bring in money*. The people who lived in a certain village named Tungshan had land worth \$100 a mow. That village began to be improved. It was improved so much that many people wanted to come there to live. In a few years the land was worth \$1000 a mow. True, in many reforms money is necessary; but it is more important to have an ideal, an earnest desire for improvement, and public-spirited cooperation. *Given these*, there is usually some way to get the needed money. Begin an improvement in some simple and inexpensive way. Let the people see how much better things can be made. The success of a person or village will be a great encouragement to others near by.

14. Thrift and the Pursuit of Happiness

Most men make more than they need to spend. It is possible for them to improve their lives and homes and to leave their children in better circumstances than those in which they themselves grew up. There is nothing impossible about it. They must, however, learn how to do it. Is it not our duty to learn and then to teach them? One thing necessary is thrift. Wise people spend for things of *permanent value*. They increase their capital. If you have capital to work for you, you have more time and money for the enjoyment of life. If families and towns save their money and then put it into things of permanent value, they are piling up the means of enjoyment to an ever-increasing degree.

裝飾城邑，開辦學校，獲得不安，兼收售價實買的利益了。許多很有裝修可能的鄉村，只任其醜陋和污穢；因為人們冬天坐着不做事情，實在他們很可以合作起來去裝修，去改良鎮市的。有一次，人家問一個鄉下老人在冬天裏做點什麼事。他回答說：『有時我坐着思想思想，有時我單是枯坐着。』可是你要說，窮苦的農民沒有錢能做些什麼呢？實則他們所做的大部分工作，根本就用不到錢，而且還能產出錢來。比如有人住在一個名叫東山的鄉下，他們的地價是百元一畝。後來那個村莊逐漸改良了。它是改良得那麼有成效，使好多人都想去住。不到幾年，這塊地就值千元一畝。自然，各種改革是需要錢的；但最要緊的是有思想，有改良的熱忱，有好義的合作。能備此數點，總可設法籌到所需的錢。先從簡單不化錢的改良做起。讓人家知道事情只要做，就有多少的效果。個人和鄉村的成功，可以給鄰居最大的鼓勵。

十四 節儉與尋樂

許多人賺錢多，化錢少。他們能改良生活和家庭，使他們的兒女有優越的環境，比自己能獨立更好。這樣做，並非是不可能的。可是，他們一定要知道怎樣去做。先則學習，再則教人。這不是我們的責任嗎？有些最重要的事情就是節儉。聰明的人所買的東西，是有永久價值的。他們增加資本。如果你有更多的資本替你做工作，那你也更多的時間和金錢去享受幸福的生活了。如果家庭和鎮市儲蓄他們的錢，去買有永久價值的東西，這是等於積聚快樂的方法而使它永遠增長着。

Why is it that men keep on working after they have saved enough for the "rainy day"? Why do young men and women strive ceaselessly for larger salaries?

There are two reasons. One is that hard work is like a tonic to the brain and body. Without work the brain would grow dull and the body flabby. The rich man as well as the poor man needs to keep at his work year after year. But there is still another reason—the most important one. Children and men and women are seeking happiness. Animals are satisfied if they can get food and can protect themselves against heat and cold. Men need more than this. It is not enough for us to sit down to food: we want it attractively served. When we have finished our day's work we are not content to sit doing nothing. It is not enough merely to have our family around us. We want them to enjoy themselves. We are eager to read a good story, to hear beautiful music, to see beautiful pictures, or to look at other things that please the eye. We need flowers, green grass, tall trees, clean roads. We need schools and lectures and entertainments.

Every person should have a home full of beauty; he needs to live in a town whose streets are shaded with beautiful trees and whose houses are *well kept and attractive*. The sooner a person begins to save, the sooner he can make his home and his town beautiful.

Not town or home is successful unless it has real beauty. If every family in each town or city would see that the yards and the outsides of the houses were neat and attractive, there would be more enjoyment in living in them. Men who own their homes usually take better care of them than those who live in rented houses. This is a mistake, for the families that pay rent are as much a part of the town as those that own their houses. There is something wrong with the man who is content to live in a house that is *in need of repairs*.

Let us be eager for better homes, better villages, more comforts and pleasures for all the people—for more nice

人們既然有了積蓄，以防不測，如何還要繼續工作呢？青年男女爲何努力不息地想謀較優的薪金呢？

這裏有兩個理由。一個是勤勞的工作好似腦筋的和身體的補藥。沒有工作，腦筋便要遲鈍，而身體也便要衰弱了。富人與窮人一樣必須年年工作。然而，還有一個理由——是最重要的理由。男，女，兒童所求的是幸福。動物只要能得食物，能避寒冷，就滿足了。人類的需要卻比這大。我們單坐着吃是不够的；我們還要陳設得很好看。當我們做完一天工作的時候，我們並不以坐着消閒便算滿足。即使家人環繞着我們，也不算滿足。我們願意他們自己去享樂。我們愛讀有益的故事，愛聽悅耳的音樂，愛看美麗的圖畫，或者別種可以取悅的東西。我們需要鮮花，青草，高樹，潔淨的道路。我們也需要學校，演講和歌特。

人人應有幽雅的家庭；他所住的鎮市必須有美麗的樹木遮蔽街道，又有收拾整齊而又動人。一個人的房屋儲蓄越早，他便他的家庭和鎮市成爲幽美也越快。

鎮市和家庭如非真正美麗，便不算有成績。假使一鎮一城中的家庭看見屋外的院子整潔可愛，那麼住在裏面一定更快樂了。人們住自己的房子，總比住租來的房子加意愛護。這是一種誤解，因爲出錢租的房子的人和自己有房子的人，都是鎮市中的一分子，一個人若住在必須修理的房子內便算滿足了，他，有點不對。

讓我們益心地組織較好的家庭較好的鄉村，爲民衆謀更多的安樂——要有多的整齊的街道，

streets, more parks, more reading, more enjoyment of life; but let us remember two things: first, that such improvements *take long years of thrift and labor and coöperative effort* and, second, that every little bit that we do to encourage these things *hastens the day when they shall be realized.*

15. "Too Many Mouths to Feed"

A poor man who was carrying his farm produce to market was asked: "Why don't you buy a wheelbarrow? It would save you much time and labor." He replied, "I have *too many mouths to feed.*" This man was unwise in two ways: he failed to invest in equipment that would have increased his income, and he allowed his family to grow so large that he could not take care of them. He ought not to have had too many mouths to feed. A man should not marry until he is fully able to support himself and his wife and to make a permanent home, and then they should not have more children than they are able to care for—to feed, to clothe, to keep well and strong, to educate, and *to surround with the comforts that make life so much the happier.*

The country can produce only so much, which must be divided among the people; and the larger the number of the people, the smaller the share for each. By modern science, transportation, etc. you can increase the amount produced and distributed; but if the number of people *at once increases likewise*, each one is *no better off than before*—in fact, in the change many will become *far worse off than before.* We must, then, produce more, and at the same time not proportionately increase the number of new mouths to feed but, rather, reduce the proportion. No one knows definitely the present rate of increase of China's population. But if health and living conditions improve rapidly under a good government, *the death rate will greatly decrease, and then the rate of increase in population will be much*

多的公園，多的讀書地方，多的快樂生活；可是我們要記牢兩件事；第一，這些改良必須長期的節省和勞動合作的力量；第二，我們所促進的這些事情，雖是極小極小的，但總可以使其從速實現的。

十五 『食口太多』

一個窮人担着他的農產物到市場上去。有人問他道：「你爲什麼不買一輛手車？它可以省了你許多時間和人工呢。」他回答說：「我家吃飯的人太多了。這個人有兩種不聰明的地方：第一，他不買可以增加他的進款的器具；第二，他只讓他的家庭擴張到不能照顧的地步。他不應該要養這許多的人。一個人若非能供養自己和妻子而有組織永久家庭的能力時，便不該結婚，既結婚了，也不可有過多的孩子要去負擔——如飲食，衣服，健康，教育，環境的安慰使生活愉快等等。

國家的生產只有這麼多，而且它要分配給所有的人民，所以人民愈多，每人所分得的愈少。利用現代的科學，工廠等，你能增加出產和分配的數量；可是若人口同時立刻加多起來，那麼每人也不能像前一樣寬裕了——其實在這變化中，好多人的情形比前更壞呢。所以我們必須增加生產，同時不要使人口超過生產的比例，最好是減少它的比例。無人知道中國現在人口增加的定率。但若在良好的政府統治之下急進地改良衛生及生活狀況，死亡率就自會減少，而人口生產率也比現在增加得迅速了。

faster than at present. If the increase of production does not run ahead of the increase of population, it will prevent China from rising. It would keep wages low. It would probably increase disease. It would make the improvement of conditions difficult. Poor people would remain poor and become more and more discouraged. The need for more land might lead China into terrible wars, where she would lose millions of her best young men.

There are three hopeful things to keep in mind: one is that this is a matter which the people can control and upon which they may be educated, upon which they may try to form right opinions and ideals, just as we are trying to do now. Another is that as conditions improve, as production increases, as products are better distributed and marketed, as knowledge grows, and as people think more about *modern standards of living* and of enjoying life, the marriage age will naturally be advanced. A third is that people may be encouraged to move from *congested areas* to *sparsely settled regions* in the country. In any case it demands the attention of every generation of young people.

QUESTIONS AND EXERCISES

1. Describe a few of the acts a public-spirited citizen can perform for his country.
2. What are some of the causes of China's great losses of life? How can these losses be prevented? Mention a few ways.
3. Describe a home in a Chinese city; in a rural district in China. Can you compare one of these with a city or a country home in the West?
4. Tell of some of the needs of rural communities in China.
5. What are some good qualities of a Chinese home? of a Western home?
6. Discuss the value of thrift.
7. Tell some of the values of work:
 - a. To the individual.
 - b. To the community.
8. What is the chief difference between work and play?
9. What is meant by "standard of living"?

假使生產的增加不能超過人口的增加那中國的收穫就得減少，工資就低微，疾病也許就得增加。改良的條件也愈形困難。窮的人依然是窮，而且特別失望。因為需要更多的土地，說不定會引起中國可怕的戰爭，喪失百萬有為的青年。

有三件可希望的事情要記在心中的：第一件，這是人民能治理的得時機，照這件事情，他們可得着教訓，可養成正確的見解和思想？正如我們現在所做的一樣。第二件，倘若景况較佳，生產增加，分配和信用良好，知識增高，人們想到現代生活程度和生活享樂，結婚的年齡自然會展延的。第三件，人民應受動盪，從繁盛的區域移居冷落的地方。無論如何，各時代的青年對於這件事都要留着才好。

閱 答 練 習 題

- (1) 說幾種一個熱心的公民能替國家所做的事情。
- (2) 中國喪失大量的生命的原因有幾種？如何防止這些喪失？舉幾個方法出來。
- (3) 描寫中國城市中的一個家庭，農村中的一個家庭。假能把城市的或鄉村的和西洋家庭作一比較嗎？
- (4) 說幾種中國農村社會所需要的需積。
- (5) 中國家庭有何優點？西洋家庭有何優點？
- (6) 論節儉的價值。
- (7) 說工作的幾種價值：(A)對於個人的；(B)對於社會的。
- (8) 工作和遊戲的主要分別在何處？
- (9) 「生活程度」的意義何在？

CHAPTER XIV

HEALTH, STRENGTH, AND ENERGY

1. Your Success may depend on your Health

When a successful lawyer was asked to explain to elementary-school boys what they must do to become successful men, this is one of the things he said: "Train your body. That is what you must make most of your effort with. If your body fails you at the wrong time, you will fail indeed. Some day the crisis will come in your career. You will have, for example, a lawsuit that will decide your future. To win it you must work one night, two nights, perhaps longer, without sleep or food. Will your body stand it? In every person's life there comes the time when success or failure hangs in the balance. Perhaps for days you must be at your best, without sleep or rest. Will your body stand it?"

2. Your Nation's Success may depend on it, too

If ten years from now an enemy should attack this nation, it is the boys who are of school age today who would have to fight, to raise crops for the army, to make munitions. It is the girls who would have to be nurses and do the work of the men who had gone to fight. Every boy should train his body as if he expected to be a soldier; every girl should train hers as if she would one day be a Red Cross nurse. In a republic the people govern their own towns, cities, and the whole nation. If the boys and girls of today are to do their share of this work, they will need the same kind of sturdy bodies that soldiers must have. Are our boys and girls growing up healthy and strong for the work that they will have to do? Are the men and women and children you know always well and strong and full of energy?

第十四章 健康·氣力和能力

一 你的成功全靠你的健康

有人請一位成功的律師對小學學生訓話，告訴他們成功的人應當做些什麼。下面是他說的一件事情：『鍊鍛你們的身體。這是你們必須盡力去做的。如果你們的身體在要緊關頭裏毀壞了，那你們也一定失敗。總有一天危機會在你們的事業中出現。比如你們去辦一件案子，這案子可以決定了你們的前途。要想勝訴，你們得忘卻寢食，一夜兩夜或者數夜以上的工作。你們的身體能擔當得了嗎？任何人的一生中總有成敗繫於一頃的時候。也許幾天不睡覺不休息仍然要竭力苦幹。你們的身體能擔當得了嗎？』

二 國家的成功也靠健康

假使十年之後有敵人來侵略中國，那麼去國戰的，去當軍隊那種米糧的，去製造軍火的，就是現在在校年歲的學生了。女生充當看護，替打仗的男子服務。男子要想充個軍人，就得鍛鍊他的身體；女子要想有一天充個紅十字會的看護，她也得鍛鍊身體。在共和的國家裏，人民治理他們自己的城鎮和全國。如果今日的男女學生要分擔這種工作，他們應有像軍人一樣強健的身體。我們的男女也長得健康強壯，是替擔任將來的工作嗎？你所知道的男、女、兒童，也是帶有力量的嗎？

3. Chinese are Hardy People-

Doctors say that Chinese men and women as a rule can stand pain, shock, and loss of blood better than either black or white people. It is said that the Chinese soldier with less food and sleep can march farther, carry more, and dig his trenches more quickly than a Western soldier. It is said that Chinese are less likely to catch most diseases than other people, and less likely to die of them. It is said that few people in the world can stand as much exposure as the Chinese—exposure to sun, to rain, to cold, to sudden changes. Certainly there are few people who can work so long and hard upon two simple meals a day.

It is difficult to know whether such statements are true or not; but it is true that the Chinese are a hardy people, *certainly among the hardest in the world*. Now the question is, Are they as hardy, healthy, strong, and energetic as they might be? Are they going to continue to be so as they *take their part in the modern world*? One is forced to notice that many students in the modern schools of China lose their health, while most of those who go to Western countries to study come back well and strong. We must look carefully into the question of the health conditions in China. Next time when you go back to your native village, ask everybody you know *how many times he has been sick during the past year*. What are the commonest causes of illness?

4. Health is Necessary to Win Success and to Hold it

A college professor was once asked if he could explain why so many promising students failed when they went out into the world. "It is a matter of health, chiefly," he said. "It takes almost perfect health to win success, and, if such a thing were possible, even more health to hold success. Success, you know, cannot be won once for all. It has to be re-won every year."

三 中國人民是耐勞苦的人民

醫師說，中國的男女比黑白兩種人能耐勞苦，能受飢寒，能多失血，這是一般的情形。據說中國比兵起西洋兵來，總是吃得少，睡得少，走得快，背得多，就是個戰線也是迅速的。據說中國人不做其他的人民容易患病，容易死亡。又說世界上的人很少能像中國人一樣受得起曝曬——日晒，雨淋，寒侵，及驟然的變化等等。自然，只吃兩頓苦飯，能做整日工作的人實在是少數。

這些話是真是假，固不易知道；可是中國人是全世界最能耐勞的人倒是事實。現在所要問的是：他們能像他們所希望的能够耐勞，健康，強壯而有力量嗎？他們仍繼續分擔現世界的職務嗎？現代中國有好多學校的學生失去他們的健康，可是從西洋留學回國的倒很強壯，這是不容忽視的。我們必須留心考察中國的健康問題。下次你回到你的故鄉時，問問大家去年患了幾次病。疾病最普遍的處因是爲了什麼？

四 健康爲獲得成功和保持成功所必需

有人請一位大學教授解釋：爲什麼許多有希望的學生出來謀事會失敗？「主要的原因是在健康上面。」他說：「要獲得成功，必須完全健康，既然有成功的希望了，要保持成功，就更需健康。你知道，成功並非一下子就可獲得的。每年都該再得着它。」

As a rule, most great men and women have been strong and healthy. Sometimes a man with genius will succeed in spite of a weak body. Genius is often *superior to all obstacles*, even ill health. But genius is rare. Most of us must be simple workers in the office or factory or village. *Genius will not come to our assistance.* We must rely on brain and body. In Western countries, many a great industrial company requires every person who applies for a position to be examined by the company's physician. To be accepted the young man or woman must be 90 per cent well and strong. Some of the large department stores also refuse to hire any person who cannot pass a strict physical examination. No doubt, modern business in China will do the same thing, and the time may come when all important business houses will refuse to employ any person who cannot prove that his body is well trained and capable of many years of hard work.

It is especially difficult for a man who *drinks or smokes to excess* either to get or to keep a good position. *Physiologists have proved beyond a doubt* that alcohol kills more men and causes more misery than war has ever done. Doctors are agreed that while the effects of smoking tobacco on adults are not clear, it is injurious to the rapidly growing bodies of boys and girls.

A person who smokes opium is *bound to fail* and to live a miserable life. It gradually takes away all his strength, energy, and *will power*, and makes him take greater and greater doses of opium. He cannot do any useful work, and very soon the drug will leave him a weak body, a dull mind, and an empty purse. Opium is man's deadly enemy. No man should use it. Every patriot should *work for the prohibition of opium-smoking in China.* Join the anti-opium movement.

5. Boy Scouts and Girl Scouts

Hardships help the body. The right kind of hard training *builds up a strong physique.* That is one kind

照一般的慣例，好多偉大的男女人物，都有強壯健康的身體。不過，一個天才，身體衰弱，有時却也能够成功。天才是勝過一切困難的，就是多病也不打緊。可是天才並不多。我們之中，大多數是公司工廠的，和鄉村中的普通人才。天才不能來幫我們的忙。我們必須依賴我們的腦筋和身體。在西洋各國，許多大實業公司對於請求位置的每個人，均須受公司醫師的身體檢驗。青年男女須有百分之九十強壯的身體，始准雇用。許多大百貨商店對於不能通過醫師嚴格檢查的人也一樣的不肯雇用。無疑的，現代中國的商業，也要做類似的事情，凡是重要機關所聘的職員，須得證明他是有鋼鐵的身體，並且能勝任幾年的勤勞工作：這樣的時期，中國是快到了。

犯煙酒嗜好過度的人，最難得着或保守一個好位置。生理學家毫無懷疑地證明過，酒精的殺人和害人比戰爭更厲害。醫師對於成人吸煙的結果固不十分清楚，但對於正在發育的少年男女，却都承認有害。一個吸鴉片的人一定失敗的，而他的生活也一定可悲的。鴉片這東西，能漸漸地消磨人的氣力，能力，志力，使他愈吸愈上癮。他不能做任何有用的事業，因為不到多時鴉片就能使他變成衰弱的身體，愚鈍的思想，和空虛的錢袋了，鴉片是人的致命的仇敵。誰也不能去吸它。每個愛國的人，都為爲中國做禁止吸鴉片的工作。現在，加入禁煙運動吧。

五 男女童子軍

勤勞是有益於身體的。正當刻苦的鍛鍊，足以養成強壯的身體。

of training that Boy Scouts and Girl Scouts get. They undertake difficult tasks that keep them exposed to the weather and make them work hard for a long time. They stand guard by the hour. They carry loads and do cooking and other work. They combine the health of outdoors with the hardships of outdoors. This is very strengthening. People in the city would weaken if they did not seek the hardships of outdoor life. Such training as that of the Scouts and of sports clubs and other similar organizations will put new life into every generation even of city people.

Outdoor life is hardening, strengthening, and health-giving. Thousands of Europeans go on long walks every summer. They walk from village to village, from city to city, over the mountains, around the lakes, and along the rivers. The Japanese visit famous places, go to see beautiful views, and tramp from place to place all over their country. Every summer thousands of American families and parties and clubs go out into the forests to camp. Sometimes a whole school camps out under a military organization. Some families go in motor cars or wagons. Some parties put their food, cooking-utensils, ax, and tent upon their backs and tramp away many miles to some lake or river in a forest. They are living again the pioneer life that put such strength and endurance into their ancestors. Has China outdoor sports and customs like these? Is not the time for attending to graves a great outdoor day for the whole nation? Is not "Dragon Boat Day" a great occasion for making rowing a national sport? How can we develop the best outdoor life for the people?

6. How Many of us are Well?

"How are you?" is a common Western greeting. It is usually answered, "Oh, very well, thank you." I wonder how many of us really are very well. Did you sleep soundly eight or nine hours last night? Did you have no unpleasant feeling this morning in your mouth

這是男女童子軍所得的體操訓練之一種。他們處理各種艱難的職務，暴露在寒熱的天氣中，使他們養成能做久長的苦工。他們換班站着守衛。他們採貨物、燒飯、及他種工作。他們把戶外的衛生和戶外的勞作合而為一。這樣很可以增加體力。城中的人如不覓取勤勞的戶外生活，他們的身體便易變弱。各種的訓練如童子軍、體育會、及其他類似的機關，就是對於城中的人，也能使他們在各時代裏得着新生活。

戶外生活是勤勞的，強身的，合於衛生的。幾千的歐洲人民，每年夏天常作長途步行。他們從這村到那村，從這城到那城，不論爬山，繞湖，沿河，都是徒步而行的。日本人常去看名勝的地方，賞美麗的風景，走遍全國各地，每年夏天美國的家屬、團體、和俱樂部，成千的到樹林中去紮營。有時學校仿軍事的組織在外露宿。有的家庭是坐汽車或貨車去的。有的團體把他們的糧食，烹調器具，斧頭，帳幕放在背上，步行幾里路遠，到林中的湖邊或河邊去。他們再過着原始創造者的生活，這種生活給他們的祖先不少的氣力和忍耐。中國的戶外遊戲和風俗也像這樣嗎？掃墓的時節不是全國戶外大遊行的日子嗎？端午節的賽龍舟，不是全國划船遊戲的好機會嗎？我們怎樣才能替人民發展健康的戶外生活呢？

六 我們人民有多少是健康的

「你好嗎？」這是西洋請安的一句俗語。通常總是這樣回答：「好啊，很好，謝謝你。」我懷疑我們雷中有多少確是很好的。你昨天夜裏會熟睡八九個鐘頭嗎？你今天早上覺得你的口眼不爽快嗎？你吃早餐，

or eyes? Did you have a good appetite for breakfast? Did you feel as if you would like to do something strenuous? Do you never have a pain? Do you never cough? Does your breath never have a bad odor? Do you never have to take any medicine to keep your habits regular? If you can give a favorable answer to every such question, you are indeed very fortunate, for you are probably very healthy. Pain is a sign that something is wrong. A headache is a common sign of many different troubles—of stomach trouble, of eye trouble, of nerve trouble, etc. Sometimes trouble comes with no sign.

If a person has no bodily weakness or trouble of any kind, he is well, and he is very fortunate. If he is wise, he will keep himself well as long as he can. It is, however, very rare to find anyone physically perfect, absolutely well and strong. We may, many of us, keep near to that condition, and if we make wise and earnest effort, we may all come closer and closer to it.

7. Why seek Health so Strenuously?

One reason for seeking perfect health has been given—to be more fit for the work of life, for *the struggle for success*, for the service of the nation. Fitness means strength and endurance. Good health makes men and women able to work hard and *stand strain*, to strive and to persist.

Another reason for seeking perfect health is to be free from pain. Pain is not only disagreeable and a sign of trouble but it hinders activity and often prevents success in life. All sickness brings pain or discomfort of one sort or another.

A third reason for seeking perfect health is to lengthen one's life. It is not only the "deadly" diseases that kill. Every sickness weakens. *Every accident leaves its scar. Every injury to the body or to its health leaves its effect, something to appear later on, perhaps to shorten life by just a little trouble or weakness added at the very end.*

胃口好嗎？你覺得很累嗎？你從來不會有過痛苦嗎？你從未咳嗽過嗎？你的呼吸從沒有臭味嗎？你沒有吃過什麼藥而使你的習慣有規則嗎？如果你能圓滿地回答上面的每個問題，那你該就算僥倖了。因為你也許是健康的。痛苦是有病的象徵。頭暈是各種疾病的普通現象——如胃病，眼病，神經病等。有時縱是胃病也看不出來。

一個人如果沒有身體上的虛弱或任何疾病，他就是健康的，很幸運的。他若聰明，必盡力永保自己健康。可惜很少看見身體健全的人，成羈對地健康和強壯的人。我們當中，有很多人近乎這種情形的；若能聰明而熱誠地再加努力，那就應接近健康的條件了。

七 爲什麼這樣努力地追求健康

追求完全健康的一個理由已經說過了——就是使一生的工作更能勝任，爲成功而奮鬥，爲國家而服務。勝任的意義是說有氣力能耐勞。

- 完全的健康可使男女吃苦、耐勞、奮鬥、堅忍。

追求完全健康的另一理由，是解除痛苦。痛苦不但可厭，不但是殘廢的象徵，並且足以妨害活動阻礙一生的成功。所有的疾病帶來了痛苦或各種的不適宜。

追求完全健康的第三個理由，是延長人的壽命。變身的不限於致命的疾病。各種疾病都使人變弱。各種意外都留下傷痕。各種對於身體或健康的傷害，都達不了的目的，有時或者復發，或者爲了加上精神的困倦或虛弱，最後滅絕了壽命。

A fourth reason for seeking perfect health is found in its purely financial advantage. It not only saves money to have no need of a doctor or a dentist and makes life insurance easier and cheaper, but it makes time more valuable and living more economical.

A fifth reason for seeking perfect health is that only a healthy person can grow and develop normally. How we like to see handsome people! It is a joy to everybody to look at pretty children and good-looking men and women. Do you realize that most ugliness is the result of the imperfect health either of the child or its parents? Disease, or lack of proper food, can usually be blamed for ugliness. There are a great many more good-looking and well-formed people among those who are well fed and well taken care of than among the poor and unfortunate. If you are careless of your health and strength, you may leave the evil effects both upon your own body and upon the bodies of your children. Diseases of impurity leave to one's children the worst effects—a short limb, a deformed face, blindness, etc. Alcoholism or opium-smoking makes weak children. Poor food and poor care and illness of the mother cause children to be born in bad physical condition. They cause bow legs, bad eyes, bad teeth, and flat chests.

A sixth reason for seeking perfect health is that it gives energy. It makes one eager. It gives zest to life. It makes life worth more. Life to a sick man may be so miserable that he cares little for it, but life to a perfectly healthy man is of supreme value. Enthusiasm is the moving force that makes most people accomplish great things. It is difficult for any but healthy people to be enthusiastic or to make others so. If you are advocating some good cause, present it to healthy people, for they are much more likely to be enthusiastic about it. If anyone "turns you down," say, "Poor fellow! he is probably sick." Then try some perfectly healthy man. Health gives energy and joy in life, and strange to say, the reverse is true also—being cheerful and enthusiastic

追求健康的第四個理由，全是爲談經濟上的利益。這不但省去請醫師或牙醫的費用，使人壽保險容易投保，減低保險費，並且還使時間更有價值，生活更加經濟。

追求完全健康的第五個理由，因爲只有健康的人能照常生長和發育。我們多麼歡喜看健美的人呀！人人都愛看優秀的孩子和美好的男女。不論孩子或父母，最醜陋的人是不健康的結果，你可知道嗎？疾病或缺乏相當的食物，通常就是造成病的。美好的健全的人在吃得好調養得好的人中，比窮苦的和不幸的人中爲多。你若不注意你的健康和氣力，你就得在你自己身上和你的子女身上留下不良的結果。不良的疾病給了子女最壞的影響——四肢短小，臉貌醜陋，眼睛失明等等。漏酒精，吸鴉片，都足以使子女身體衰弱。營養不佳，照顧不良，母體有病，都能使生下的孩子身體不好。這種結果是腿彎，眼環，癩蛙，駝背。

追求完全健康的第六個理由，因爲它能給我們以精力。健康使人奮發，使人生活有興味，使人生活有價值。一個病人對於人生也許是悲慘的，不必看重的，但對於一個完全健康的人就很有價值了。熱情是使一般人成就大事業的原動力。除了健康的人以外，人們很難有熱情，而且也不會使人發生熱情。如果你主張某種好的動機，你得貢獻給健康的人，因爲他們對於專業富於熱情的成分較多。假使有人攻擊你，他可說是個可憐蟲了！或者是有病的人了。然後再向完全健康的人試試看。健康給人生的精力和快樂，說也奇怪，倒逆的事情也是一樣——愉快和熱情使人更加健康。

makes one healthier. A doctor who spreads brightness and enthusiasm wherever he goes cures a great many by his mere presence and influence.

8. "Safety First" or "I will be Careful".

"Yes, indeed," someone says, "we know all the reasons for wanting to be healthy and well and uninjured. We are not so foolish as to be blind to the importance of these things. Why do you remind us of all these reasons?"

There are 86,400 seconds in a day. There are certainly that number of people on an average injured every day by motor cars, trams, and other moving vehicles and animals. Take out your watch and think of the fact that for every second it ticks off, somebody, somewhere, is being injured. Think of it the next time you walk out into the street or get into a car or ricksha or, still more, if you ride a bicycle or drive a car. The sad thing is that sickness and accidents come from carelessness, from just the kind of blindness that says, "I am not going to worry about health and that sort of thing." People are careless. You are careless. We must awaken each other to think about these things. We must take up the cry "Safety First!" The man who walks out in front of a train or car is a fool; so is the man who says, "I am not afraid of getting sick."

Stand by the side of a busy street where vehicles of any kind are passing rapidly, and watch the people. Count how many of them do one of the following foolish things:

1. Walk in the paths of the vehicles instead of along the sides of the street.
2. Look in one direction while walking in another.
3. Carry something that keeps them from seeing the road in one direction.

一個醫師散佈他的樂觀和熱情在他所到的任何地方，只要他一來到，許多人便因受着他的影響而把疾病治癒了。

八 『安全第一』或者『我要小心』

有人說：『是的，不錯，我們知道一切要健康，平安，無病的理由。我們並不這樣愚笨，連這些重要的事情也看不出來。你為什麼拿這些理由來提醒我們呢？』

一天有八萬六千四百秒鐘。平均起來，每天的每秒鐘內部有受汽車，機車，別的自動車及畜牲的撞傷。取出你的錶來，想想每當一秒鐘的時候，總有某人在某地受傷的事實。下次你在街上走，或坐汽車，或力車，或腳踏車，或開汽車時，再去想想它。最可慘的是由於不小心而得病，而碰着意外的危險，那種凶莽的人老是說：『我並不在乎健康及類似的事情。』人們總是大意的。你也是大意的。我們對於這些事，必須彼此醒悟。我們應用力呼喊：『安全第一！』在火車或汽車前面走的是愚人；說『我不怕疾病』的人也是愚人。站在熱鬧的車輛來往很快的街上，看看走路的人，數數他們有多少會犯下列各種傻事的一件：

- (1) 不在人行道上走而在車道上走。
- (2) 看着這一面，走着那一面。
- (3) 帶着物件遮着自己要走的方向。

4. Carry long objects partly or entirely *crosswise to the road*.
5. Allow a motor car or other vehicle to signal more than once before they *clear the road*.
6. Loiter in the road, or even stop to talk.
7. Walk on *the wrong side of the street*.

The motto of such people is not "Safety first!" It is "Trust to luck." It ought to be "Safety first!" or "I will be careful."

9. Personal Hygiene

It is the same with the care of the body. As long as one has no pain, and his hunger and thirst are satisfied, and he is not tired, he is likely to forget that he has a body. He gives little thought to health when he eats and drinks. And when he has a pain he usually thinks the pain is something to be driven out of that particular spot.

In schools every girl and boy should be carefully taught how to take care of the body: to brush the teeth, to wash the eyes and ears, to keep the hair and skin clean and healthy, *to look out for poisons*, to avoid injurious drugs, *to escape the forming of bad habits*, to eat proper food, to drink only pure or boiled water, to have regular habits of eating and sleeping. Certain cities also have passed laws prohibiting the selling of cigarettes to boys or girls.

Many things must be done to make people take care of their health. The first is to teach them the importance of doing so and how to do it. There are now good books of this sort for use in China, both in English and in Chinese. Study them and teach them in and around your home. Recently, just before Commencement, the principal of a certain school *brought forward* a great pile of health books and asked the students, "How many of you will pay twenty cents each and take some of these

(4) 拿了長的東西一部或全部橫着街道。

(5) 讓汽車或別的车辆再三警告才肯避開。

(6) 徘徊在路的中心，或佇足而談。

(7) 走在不應該走的街上的那一邊。

這類人的座右銘並非「安全第一」，乃是「聽天由命」。一個人應當注意的是「安全第一」，或者「我要小心」。

九 個人衛生

珍重身體也是一樣的觀念。一個人常是沒有痛苦，得着飢渴的滿足，並且不覺得疲勞，他就好像忘記自己有個身體了。他能吃能喝，就不想到健康。等到他有疾病的時候，他總想把那痛苦的地方去掉。

在校的男女學生，關於怎樣珍重身體的問題，應當深刻的訓練：刷牙，洗滌耳目，保持髮膚的清潔和衛生，預防毒物，避免有害的藥品，防癩養成習慣，吃正當的食物，喝清潔的沸水，有一定的寢食時間。有些城裏會訂定了法律，不准把香煙售給未成年的男女。

要使人民注意健康，必須做上列各項事情。第一是教他們知道衛生的重要與衛生的方法。現在中國有很多已經採用的關於衛生的好書，中英文的都有。你轉去研究這些書籍，並且指導你的家人和鄰居。最近，某學校的校長，在開學前帶來一大包衛生書籍，向學生道：你們書中有多少人顯出兩手發黑木等。

books home so as to spread these good-health ideas?⁶⁷¹ There were two hundred students who raised their hands. They were true patriots.

10. What is Sickness?

Before we go farther let us get a clearer idea of what we mean by good health and bad health, disease, disorders, etc. There are several quite different kinds of bodily troubles. If we are to work for better health for ourselves and others, we must know at once and remember some of the fundamental facts.

There are some bodily troubles that are called sickness which are not really so at all. Seasickness, although it is *a very real thing at the time, is only the body acting as if it were sick.* It is, so to speak, deceived. The moment the ship's motion stops or the patient becomes accustomed to it, the trouble is over. It is so with some mental troubles: *There is very little you can do for the body in such cases, because there is nothing really wrong with the body itself.*

There are many disorders which are due only to the general weakness of the body. Some parts are merely too weak to do their work, and that gives the whole body trouble. The need here is usually only for good simple food—enough of it, but not too much at a time—and for good exercise, or something of that sort. Usually a cup of perfectly fresh and clean unboiled milk, a raw or boiled egg, and rice boiled soft are the foods that are given to *build one up.* Sometimes very special foods are needed—foods containing *iron, or yeast, salts, or vitamins.* Only a skilled physician can say what is needed in such a case. Many disorders of uncertain character, and also many common "diseases" belong in this class. An ignorant person may give the patient drugs which *make him feel better for a little but worse later;* a good physician, however, shows the patient how to build up his health and strength.

拿回去宣傳健康的知識呢？」居然有兩個學生舉起手來。他們確是真正的愛國者。

十、疾病是什麼

在我們未多講以前，先要把健康，不健康，疾病，不爽快等的意義弄清楚。身體上的難過有許多絕對不同的種類。我們若要為自己或別人謀得健康，我們必須立刻明白並且記着幾件主要的事實。

有幾種身體上的難過，稱為疾病，其實並不完全是疾病。例如：暈船在當時是真的，但不過身體的動作好似有痛吧了。那麼，這種病不能算為事實。因為等到船停或者病人成為習慣之後，痛苦便隨着消失。精神上的難過也是如此。在這種情形之下，你對於身體雖無辦法，因為身體的本身並沒有不舒適的地方。

有幾種不爽快，普通祇是由於身體的虧弱。某部分太衰弱得不盡工作了，這才是使整個身體痛苦。為補救這種缺憾，只有吃簡單而易於消化的食物——分量須得充足，但每次不能吃太多——有相當的運動及其他類似的事情。普通一杯完全新鮮清潔的生牛乳，一隻生或熟的雞蛋，一碗軟熱的米飯，都是有益身體的養料。有時却需要特別的食物——含有鐵質或食鹽或維他命的食物。倘遇這種情形，祇有精明的醫師能斷定需要什么了。許多不定性的或時形的疾病，全屬這一類。無知識的人給病人吃了某種藥，暫時是好的，但到後來就更加厲害。可是，一位有本領的醫師只指示病人如何培養他的健康和氣力。

Sometimes, from one cause or another, some organ or part of the body grows too much. This *must be dealt with* in an entirely different way. Proper food may help this trouble but will not cure it. As a rule an operation is necessary, and the sooner it takes place the better. Most of the operations which fail are *failures only because the patient has come too late*. More than once surgeons in China have removed a tumor which weighed more than the person, who lived and regained health. Adenoids are growths back of the nose. They often cause children to keep their mouths open, and often hinder their growth and development. A common kind of blindness is *due only to a growth called a cataract, on the lenses*. The lenses are then removed by a very skillful operation. The fitting of thick-glass lenses in front of the eyes restores fairly good sight. In the neck there are many glands and other organs which frequently give trouble. It is said that in parts of central Asia 70 per cent of all the grown people have great swollen places on their necks. One of the worst of all fatal diseases is cancer, which is a malignant growth in the body. No one has yet been able to discover its cause, and it is frequently impossible to remove. The important thing to remember is that the sooner the patient sees a good physician the better, in spite of the fact that these growths seem to be so slow.

11. Infectious Diseases

Infectious diseases are often spoken of as real diseases. They are due to the workings of some very small plants or animals called germs. Many of these tiny living things have been thoroughly studied under the microscope. For example, the tiny animals which are introduced into our blood by an *Anopheles mosquito* infected with malaria multiply very rapidly when they find us a little weakened by cold or slight illness. Their new generations are born in two days, and so we *shiver with their births in our blood* every other day—unless we have a *double set*

有時爲了這種或那種原因，身體上的某部器有過於發達了。這當然也應用一種完全不同的方法醫治的。正當的藥物也許有益，但不能治愈。照例須施手術，愈早愈好。許多人施了手術仍不見好，這是由於病人延醫太遲的缘故。中國的外科醫師，常常割下比病人身體更重的肉瘤，使他保守生命而恢復健康。異狀腫是生在鼻後的。這種毛病常使孩子張開嘴，妨害他們的生長和發育。最普通的腫眼，是由於眼中的水晶球上長翳。這種水晶球可用精巧的外科手術取去。同時在眼前配裝厚玻璃的水晶球，便可恢復了本來的視覺。頸上的許多種和別種的器官常引起人的病痛。據說亞洲中都有好些地方，百分之七十的人頸上都有腫的部分。最危險的使人致命的疾病是癌，這也是身體上面所長着的癌肉。沒有人能知道它的病源，也沒有方法可以割除。最緊要是病人要記着趁早延醫，別說這種過生長的腫瘤。

十一 傳染病

傳染病可常稱爲菌病。這種病是由於很小的植物中或動物中的微生物作怪。許多小生物已經用顯微鏡仔細研究過了。例如，這蚊把它們的微菌引入我們的血中，就能傳染瘧疾，這種微菌使我們受瘧疾或微病時，便繁殖得很快。它們的新蟲，兩天內即可生出，我們爲這新蟲的繁殖，每隔一天就要得發抖起來——如暴發性發冷。

that brings a chill every day, which is far more serious. It has been discovered that quinine kills these little animals without, as a rule, doing the patient much harm.

Another little animal that gives trouble is the one that gets into the skin and causes an itch called scabies. It is very common on beggars and other unclean people or on people living together in dormitories, like soldiers or students. This little animal is very large compared with germs: it is almost large enough to be seen without a glass. It is easily killed with sulphur if you know how to use it and are *thorough with the work*.

How fortunate it would be if there were some harmless substance that would kill the germs in the same way those little animals are killed! There are some antiseptics and disinfectants, but the difficulty is that they would usually kill the patient as well as the disease. You can wash your hands with a disinfectant, but you can hardly wash your food with it or give it to a sick person. So when you realize that germ diseases include most of our worst diseases,—plague, cholera, typhoid, typhus, tuberculosis, leprosy, influenza, etc.,—you see that here are some of the greatest problems of the world today. How can these germ attacks upon us be beaten back? How can the enemy be conquered? Here is a world war to fight. *Everybody is in it*. Everybody must fight. The doctors are the leaders. What are the methods of warfare?

1. Keep yourselves in good condition.
2. Prevent the germs from entering.
3. Attack the germs if they enter.
4. Nurse the patient properly.

12. The Prevention of Disease

Even when we keep ourselves in the best condition, we cannot always resist disease if it comes. Then the second important thing is to keep it from coming. Incoming ships are examined to prevent diseases from being carried from one port to another. An infected city is often cut

那麼病症是厲害。後來有人發明了，金雞納霜可殺這種病菌，而且一般地說來，它對於病人也無甚妨害。

還有一種叫作疥癬的小蟲，它侵入我們皮膚中，我們就覺得發癢。凡是乞丐身上，或不潔的人身上，或同住一室的人身上，或兵士或學生身上，都常有疥癬。這種小蟲的身體比細菌大一——大到不用顯微鏡也可以看出來。這小蟲可用梳橫殺死，祇要你應用得法，功夫真到。

假使有了無害的藥物可以殺死細菌儘殺死小蟲一樣，那多麼可憐啊！好多防腐劑和殺菌藥雖能清愈疾病，但亦能殺人，你可用殺菌光洗你的手，却不可拿來洗你的食物或給病人吃。你知道細菌的傳染病包括許多最危險的病——瘟疫，霍亂，傷寒，熱病，肺病，麻瘋，傷風等等——由此可知今日世界上還有最大的問題存在着。這些侵犯我們的細菌怎能被擊退呢？敵人怎樣被克服呢？這是等於世界大戰，人人全是裏面的戰士。所以人人都要去打。醫師是其中的戰將，戰術的方法是怎樣的呢？

- (1) 自己應善為保養。
- (2) 預防細菌的侵入。
- (3) 細菌如侵入就撲滅它們。
- (4) 用正當的方法調養病人。

十二 疾病的預防

就說我們善於養生，病來的時候，也往往不能抵抗。那麼第三種重要的事情就是預防它的發生了。進口的船須經檢查，免得疾病從遠海岸得到那海岸。一個有傳染病的城市

off from all others. A diseased person is often quarantined in the same way. If a child has a contagious disease he should be kept at home. Schools are sometimes closed to prevent any disease which is very bad at the time from spreading among the children. All of these are efforts to stop the spread of such diseases, but one great difficulty is that many diseases are most contagious just before we find out that we are sick. Therefore other methods are also necessary.

There has been a great deal of study of diseases in order to learn *how they are caught*. Some are supposed to be caught from breathing infected air. Some we get through the skin. Some come in food or drink. Some are not yet understood; the search for their secrets continues.

13. Clean Food and Drink

Typhoid fever is an example of a disease that comes from impure food or drink. It is prevented by having food and drink free from germs. Dishes must be clean. This means that they must be washed with boiling water and soap and must not be touched by anything that is infected. It is not so difficult to wash things clean, but it is difficult to keep them clean. A fly or a person's hand may put the germs on a dish or a piece of food. If food is well cooked, not just heated, the germs are killed. If fruit is very carefully peeled and not handled, it is sure to be clean. If water is boiled or well filtered and the cup is clean, there is little danger there. In every case care must be taken both to clean things and to keep them clean. Keep food covered from flies, dust, etc.

In Western lands the problem of water supply is a very difficult one, because people drink the water unboiled. In China the problem is not so urgent, because the custom of drinking tea furnishes a protection against such diseases as typhoid fever. We must realize, however, that people usually do not really appreciate the

應和別的地方斷絕關係。一個病人也須同樣用隔離的方法與人斷絕關係。如果一個孩子得了傳染病，他應住在家裏，為着預防病菌在學生的身上散佈開來，學校有時也須關閉。這些全是停止病菌散佈的方法，但是有一種最困難的地方，就是我們未察出我們有病以前，那可怕的疾病已經傳開了，所以別種方法也同樣需要。

悉心研究清理，是想知道人們如何得病。有的因為呼吸不潔的空氣而被傳染，有的由皮膚上傳染，有的從飲食上傳染，還有的至今尚不明白；故仍然繼續不絕地探索着。

十三 清潔的飲食

傷寒症便是由不潔的飲食而來的例子。只要飲食清潔，這病便可預防。碗碟須潔淨，就是說，須用熱水和肥皂洗滌，不可僅將有傳染性的東西，把這些東西洗乾淨，並不是無事，却難在保持它們乾淨。套鐘的腳和人的手都能帶菌到碗碟或食物上面去。食物若是煮熟的，並非一熱就算的，那細菌自然發死了。水莫若是小心地剝皮，不接觸着手，一定是潔淨的。水若開過，濾過，而杯子又是清潔的，那為沒有什麼危險。無論如何總得當心，使物件潔淨，並保持潔淨。食物宜遮蓋着，以免灰塵及塵埃等落上。

在西洋，水的供給是個最艱難的問題，因為人們總喝不開的水。但在中國卻無多大問題，因為中國人有喝茶防止傷寒症的習慣。可是，我們要知道，人們並不一定要注意危險。

danger, and often drink water that is not pure or drink tea from cups that are not clean. Modern cities and towns are putting in *water systems* and thus tempting the people to give up their old customs and to drink the cool water that is made so convenient for them. It is, therefore, very important for us in such places either to teach people the danger or else to make sure that the water is clean. Some cities keep a great region free from people; and thus from disease, so that *the water caught and stored is pure*. Others filter or disinfect the water supply.

Another source of infection is in carelessly handled fruit. Certain diseases — cholera, for example — are likely to be carried by fruit. Another source is in vegetables which come from badly infected ground and then are not cooked long enough to kill the germs. Watch these *two danger points* carefully. Explain them to your family and friends and to your cook and all your servants.

Flies are exceedingly dangerous. Coming from their dirty breeding places, they carry straight to your food the germs of many diseases, especially typhoid fever and dysentery. If the breeding places can be covered or removed, that is the best means of prevention; if not, the flies must be kept away from food, drink, dishes, hands, etc.

In Western countries the milk supply is carefully watched. Milk is both a perfect food and a dangerous carrier of disease. Cows must be healthy and clean; the milk must be carefully handled; bottles must be clean and quickly sealed. If a milk dealer puts water into the milk, he is severely punished, not so much for cheating his customers as for endangering their lives. China and India have not suffered much from infected milk supply, because Indians boil their milk and Chinese do not often drink it, although there is now a large and rapidly increasing amount of milk used in China. If the Chinese use milk as it is used in the West, there will be a new health problem for China.

往往喝的水既不清潔，而茶杯又不乾淨。現代的鎮市裏都設有自來水，誘着人們放棄了舊習去喝那方便的冷水。在這地方我們很要緊的，應把危險告訴人們，或者使所用的水必須是潔淨的。有的城裏留着一塊空地，不讓人住，所以疾病既可免除，而飲食貯水，亦甚清潔。又有的城裏把自來水濾過或消毒過。

還有一種傳染病的來源，是由於不謹慎料理水菓。有幾種病——例如霍亂——是從水菓帶來的。也有從蔬菜傳染而來，那種蔬菜一來種在不潔的土壤，二來沒有煮熟把細菌殺死。這兩種危險務須謹慎。將這些意思解釋給你的家庭、朋友、廚司、僕人聽。

蒼蠅最是危險。牠們來自污穢的繁殖的地方，直接地帶着各種疾病的細菌——尤其是傷寒和痢疾的細菌——傳到你的食物上。要是把牠們繁殖的地方蓋住或去掉，那自然是穩妥的預防法；不然，必須把手、飲食、碗碟等與蒼蠅隔絕。

西洋各國，對於牛乳的供給，必須經過精密的調查。牛乳是精美食品，也是疾病的危險媒介。母牛宜健康清潔；牛乳宜小心處理；乳瓶宜乾淨，並須從速封口。如果賣牛乳的攪水，應受嚴厲的處罰，欺騙買主，尚屬小事，危及人命，那就罪不可赦。中國和印度尚不多受不潔牛乳的害處，因為印度人只喝熟牛乳，而中國人又不常喝牛乳，難說牛乳的量在中國增加很大很快。假使中國人和西洋人一樣喝牛乳，那中國又多加上一個健康的新問題了。

14. Carriers, or Hosts

When one entertains a guest one is the host or hostess of that guest. Some diseases have been discovered to have hosts and hostesses. Farmers in America lost a great deal of grain from a certain plant disease. The government scientists went to work on the question Where is this disease in the winter time? It was not in the seed and it was not in the ground. It was found that it lived through the winter, in an entirely different form,—as different as the larva from the insect,—upon certain bushes. The scientists proceeded to destroy all those bushes and so stopped the disease. They gave it no host, and it starved to death.

Have you ever wondered where diseases *hide between the seasons when they appear*? It has been discovered that some have hosts to take care of them. Typhoid, for example, is often carried for a long period by someone who seems to be well. He does not know that he carries typhoid, and so he cheerfully spreads death wherever he goes. He is, of course, most dangerous as a cook or waiter, because he then spreads infection through the food he handles. The government of the Philippine Islands examines the blood of every person who comes to its hospitals, and thus discovers some carriers of hidden diseases. Far more than this, however, must be done to locate all carriers. This is only a step in the right direction.

15. Fighting Diseases

When disease germs enter the body they are attacked by certain cells in the blood. Some are perhaps eaten up; some are killed by poisons made for them. If they can be defeated, the patient recovers. The fight is sometimes long and sometimes very short. Physicians have already discovered methods of assisting the body to attack these enemies. Medicines are usually of little use. They sometimes serve only to help the enemy. In the fight against

十四 媒介物或寄生物

一個人款待賓客，那個人就是賓客的男主或女主。有的疾病，會發見也有男女主人之分。美國的農夫爲了某種植物的病，損失大量的糧食。政府的科學家研究這個問題：冬天的害蟲到那裏去了？牠既不在種子裏，又不在泥土裏。結果查出牠在冬天時具有特別的情形——好似幼蟲的不同於成蟲——寄居於灌木上。科學家毀了那些灌木，害蟲便不能生長。因爲不給牠們寄生的地方，後來牠們也就餓死了。

當這病菌未出來時，埋伏什麼地方，你不覺得奇怪嗎？現在已經調查清楚，原來牠們也有主人照顧着。例如，傷寒常很長久地寄生在人身當中，而病人並不覺得有病。他不知道他帶着傷寒的病菌，因此他還快樂地到處散佈死神。他若做了廚司或侍役，那是更危險了。因爲他拿食物的時候，就把病菌傳開。菲律賓政府對於進醫院的人都要檢驗血液，結果發見好多隱藏着的微菌。可是，進一步的辦法，是須指出微菌的所在。這種辦法可算最正當。

十五 抵抗疾病

病菌侵入人身時，血液中有種細胞可以攻擊牠們。有的被細胞吃掉；有的被細胞所預備的毒素殺死。如果病菌戰敗，病人即可復原。這種戰爭有時較長，有時候短。醫藥曾經發明幫助人身攻擊這些病菌的方法。藥品普通無甚用處，有時反而幫助了敵人。

Smallpox the patient prepares his blood to receive and kill the germs. He is vaccinated with cowpox, which is a very mild disease that does him no harm but that provides his blood with some quality which serves to protect it against smallpox. In some other diseases serum is taken from the blood of an animal which has conquered the disease, and is put into the blood of the patient. This helps him to overcome the disease. These are some of the ways in which diseases are fought when they enter the body. Some of them are so successful that you may say the disease is never really caught at all. Clearly the important thing is to have a good doctor supplied with these aids for combating disease. They must be prepared in great science laboratories and be ready in fresh supplies near at hand. Ask your doctor where he can get antitoxin for tetanus, or lockjaw. Where is his nearest supply of antitoxins for diphtheria, rabies meningitis? You should also ask him how often one should be vaccinated against smallpox and inoculated against typhoid fever.

16. Tuberculosis

Tuberculosis is said to be the world's greatest slayer. Probably more people in China die of tuberculosis, or consumption, than of any other disease. It lives in the darkness and dampness of China's shaded streets with their windowless houses and crowded rooms. There is no medicine that cures it and no antitoxin that conquers it. And yet, strange to say, if it has not gone too far, it can be stopped by the simplest methods. The germs of this disease cannot thrive in the sunlight and in dry fresh air. If the patient is well nourished and is kept warm and dry and in the fresh air and sunlight as much as possible, he will probably recover.

Tuberculosis is carried from person to person chiefly by the germs spit up by the one who is infected. If not exposed to bright sunlight, these germs continue to live for some time. Spitting is a terribly dangerous habit. Every effort should be made to prevent it, to keep floors

關於抵抗天花，病人必須預備他的血液去接受微菌，殺死微菌。他患了牛痘，牛痘並非重症，故無妨害，但他血液中所備的那種特質，卻能抵抗天花。如欲抵抗別的病菌，可將會經戰勝某種清菌的動物血液取出，注入病人的血中。這可幫助他克復疾病。這是用動物的血液注入人身中，和病菌戰鬥的幾種方法。有的很有效驗，你可說決不會再得病了。顯然地最要緊的，是須有良醫供給和病菌戰鬥的補助。這些補助品，必須在科學實驗室中預備，並須是新鮮的，隨身攜帶。問問你的醫師，從何處可得到壘寧或牙關緊閉的抗毒素。何處是使用白喉，狂犬病，腦膜炎各種抗毒素最近的地方？你也應當問問他，防天花須種幾次牛痘，防霍亂須打幾次針。

十六. 肺 病

肺病可說是全世界殺人最多的病。中國死於肺病或腸結核的人，或者比任何疾病為多。凡是中國隱晦的街上，房子不開窗戶，房內住着衆人的黑暗和潮濕的地方，都有肺病的微菌。肺病在今日，尚無藥物可以醫治，又無血清可以制止。但是，說也奇怪，如果這病患的並不久，可用最簡單的方法醫治。肺病的微菌不能在陽光下或乾燥的新鮮空氣中繁殖。要是病人有很好的滋養，使其溫暖乾燥，吸收新鮮空氣而多曬太陽，他也許可以復原。

肺病的傳染，大半由於患者吐出的微菌。若不經過烈日的曝曬，這些微菌仍能繼續生存。吐痰是一種非常危險的習慣。應該竭力戒除它，保守地板的

clean, and to have sunlight as often as possible inside every room. When such a disease is common *the Chinese method of "shaking hands"* is far safer than the Western method, because people are constantly putting their hands to their mouths.

Every one of us should be a soldier in the war against this "*white plague*." In a recent year, 11 per cent of all the deaths in Shanghai were due to it; and in Hong Kong, 10.9 per cent. What do you think the percentage is in your city or village? Tuberculosis *carries down rich and poor alike*. Fight it. Get people into the fresh air and sunshine to take exercise. Tell women that foot-binding and staying indoors *encourage tuberculosis*. Eating from a common dish or using the same pipe or chopsticks that somebody else uses is apt to spread it. Mud floors and poor diet and poor cooking are dangerous. Smoking encourages tuberculosis. *Take a stand against tobacco*. Shopkeepers, students, soldiers in barracks, and people in any kind of dusty work are quickest to die of tuberculosis. Fight it.

17. Injuries and Local Infections

When one is injured, *the body cells set to work at once* to repair the injury and to kill the germs that attack the injured place. If the injury is slight, the body cells may be quite successful; if it is severe, the repairing may be only poorly accomplished, leaving the body very weak and imperfect at that place. It may, in any case, become too difficult a fight against infection, with the result that the place begins to poison the whole body. This poisoning process may be slow and may begin in a tooth or in some entirely hidden spot. It may be in some broken limb or other injury that kills the patient quickly. In all cases two things are important: to keep the place as clean and free from infection as possible and to give it whatever assistance it needs *to get the injured parts in proper place again*. Sometimes a part must be removed.

潔淨，使陽光充分地灑進房內。如果肺病普遍的時候，最好是實行中國式的『拱手』法，此法較西人的握手法爲好，因爲人們常有把手放入口中的習慣。

人人宜做個反抗『結核病』的戰士。最近有一年，上海死於這病的佔百分之十一，在香港佔百分之一〇·九。你想，在你的城裏或村中佔百分之幾呢？肺病是同樣地置貧人和富人於死地。去抵抗它吧。讓人們在新鮮空氣中和陽光下運動運動。告訴婦女，趺足和一天到晚閉在屋中，都能促進肺病。使用公共的碗碟、煙筒或筷子，足以傳播肺病。泥地，食物不良，煮法不合，都很危險。吸煙就是鼓勵肺病，所以應決意反對，店員，學生，軍營的兵士，及做污穢工作的人們，害了肺病，死得最快。跟它戰鬥吧。

十七 受傷和局部的傳染

人受了傷，身體中的細胞就開始做修補傷痕的工作，並且殺死由傷口進來的微菌。若是輕傷，體中細胞就很有成效；若是重傷，這修補工作也許能慢慢地完成，但身體總很衰弱，而傷口仍不能全好。假使抵抗病太困難，說不定結果會毒害全身。這種毒害的演進，或者很慢，或者從一個牙上開始，或者從絕對隱秘的地方發出。又或者在破損的四肢及旁的傷口傳入，使病人死得很快。在這種情形之下，有兩件重要的事情：第一，須竭力保持傷口清潔和避免病菌；第二，盡量幫助傷口部分恢復原狀。有時一部分須去掉或替換。

or even replaced. That is work for only the most skilled and scientific surgeons. It is important to keep in mind that the first things to do are to keep out infection and to stop bleeding. Do not think that drugs will heal. Keep dirty plasters off. Clean, soft cloths are better than anything except the care of a doctor.

18. Hospitals and Nursing

When one is badly injured he should be taken as quickly as possible to a hospital. There instruments, tables, beds, and other things are *ready at hand*, and nurses and doctors will give aid at once. If the patient has fainted, there are stimulants to restore him; if he is in great pain, he can be given an anesthetic *until the injury is attended to*; if the injury is a hidden one, the X-ray machine may reveal it. In a good hospital things can be kept aseptic.

In the case of very severe illness or of illness that cannot be easily understood, the hospital is the best place to examine and treat it. It is very important to watch the progress of the case closely. We cannot easily look into the patient's body and see what his condition is, and therefore it is important to have every small fact about *the progress of his disease*. A chart showing *how his temperature runs* is one important bit of evidence. All such care requires trained nurses.

Nursing is the physician's fourth way of fighting disease and treating injuries. Good care and proper feeding give the patient the advantage of strength in the battle against the germs that attack him. Every bit of sleep that he loses, every mistake in his nourishment, and every moment of unnecessary talk or worry or excitement are handicaps in his fight. It is difficult to provide such quiet, food, and care except in hospitals. We must *work for the better support* of the hospitals of our communities.

這種工作，只有最精明，最具科學知識的外科醫師始能勝任。第一要記着的，就是排除病菌和停止流血。不要以為藥物一定能療治。不要貼上不潔的膏藥。除了醫師的調護外，潔淨溫柔的棉布比任何東西都好。

十八 醫院和看護

人受了重傷，應趕快送進醫院。醫院的器具，桌，床，和別的物件都早有準備，而且有看護和醫生立刻可以救護。病人若昏去，有興奮劑使他蘇醒；病人若痛苦過甚，可給他上麻醉，直待傷口料理好了為止；若傷在暗處，可用愛克司光照射。設備完善的醫院中，還有防腐的方法。

遇有重病或難症，醫院是受檢驗和調養最好的地方。細心考察病的變化，確是最要緊的。我們不容易看見病人身體的內部，也不容易看出他的病狀，所以對於病的變化，就是最小的一件事也得注意。體溫表是重要的證據之一，可指出病人溫度的高低。這些照料，都需有訓練的看護。

看護是醫師抵抗疾病和治傷的第四種方法。周到的照料和正當的食物，可供給病人大的力量，去和侵入的病菌奮鬥。要是病人的睡眠不足，滋養欠缺，無用的談話太多，或煩惱或刺激，這些全於奮鬥有阻。除了住醫院以外，很難設備那樣的安穩，食物，和照料。我們必須設法資助我們社會上的醫院。

19. First Aid and Home Remedies

Ask your doctor to give you lessons in *first aid* and home remedies. Everyone ought to know that when a person faints, people should not crowd around and raise him up. They should stand back, give him air, fan him, wet his forehead a little to cool it, and let him lie flat. Why should people either neglect an injured person or do the wrong things? Let us be eager to help and be *intelligent about it*.

We should also know something about simple medicines. People do not *go to the doctor about everything*. Sometimes there is no doctor near. Many small matters need only the attention that we ourselves can give. We should therefore know the uses of some simple and harmless medicines. You know that *sterile vaseline* is good for a burn, that boracic acid is a good but mild antiseptic for cuts and scratches, and that castor oil is usually the first thing to take for a stomach ache or for constipation. You should know something about bicarbonate of soda, eucalyptus oil, menthol, calomel, salts, quinine, and common-salt solution.

20. Narcotics, Alcohol, and Patent Medicines

One of the most important things to keep in mind about medicines is that the general public, being sick and yet not appreciating the service and science of the medical profession, tries to cure itself with the many medicines it buys from people who get rich selling them. Nothing seems easier than to cheat a sick man, if anyone is *mean enough to do it*. People have a foolish idea that there must be some great cure-all. You need only to color some water, give it a taste, put it in bottles, and say, "Here is the cure-all," and people will begin to buy. You are stealing their money. They are foolishly throwing it away in the hope of getting well.

十九 主要急救法和家庭救護

請你的醫師給你主要急救法和家庭救護的教訓。人人都該知道，如果有人昏去了，不可圍繞着他，也不可扶他起來。他們應稍退後，給他多呼吸，給他打扇，微濕他的額，使他受涼，然後再讓他平躺地上。爲什麼人們不應當疏忽受傷的人或者錯用急救方法呢？我們必須熱心去救護他，並且對於這件事情宜有相當的知識。

我們也得明白普通藥品的用途。人們並非什麼事都去請教醫師的。有時附近並無醫師。許多小事只要我們自己能注意就行了。我們得知道幾種簡單無害的藥品。你曉得凡士林油膏可治燙傷，硼酸是安全的防腐藥，可治割傷與抓傷，蓖麻油通常是治胃痛與便秘的第一聖藥。你也該明白重碳酸鈣，加利樹油，薄荷片，甘朮，食鹽，金雞納霜，和普通鹽類溶液的用途。

二十 麻醉品，酒精與專利藥品

對於藥品，有一件最重要的事情記在心上：那就是一般人害了病，不重視醫師的任務和科學方法，祇想買藥來自己醫治，而賣這藥的人也從此致富。一個人若要卑鄙行事，莫過於欺騙病者。人們有一種妄想，以爲世界上一定有能治百病的靈藥。你只須在清水上加些顏色，用些藥料，放在瓶中，說這是能醫百病的靈藥，就會有人來惠顧了。販賣偽藥，就是偷人家的錢。他們白白地拋棄了錢，空想着治好毛病。

Patent-medicine manufacturers go farther than that. They have two ways of making their products sell faster and for a longer time. One way is to put into the bottle some simple liquid food that does not easily spoil. Then they truthfully say that it is good for you, and they have many witnesses to prove it. Yes; but it is no better than milk, bean curd, eggs, butter, and rice, and if you buy it you are only throwing away money, for these good foods are cheaper. Some of the most widely advertised medicines in China are in this class.

Another common trick is to add some stimulant or narcotic to make the patient either feel more energetic or sleep, and thus think that he is better. Not only does he want more of the medicine to try to make that feeling continue, but he soon forms a habit of using it, and thus the manufacturer develops an ever-increasing trade in his deceitful, useless, and dangerous medicine. Not long ago an American in Shanghai was given some cough sirup. It seemed to make him feel better at once. He wanted to know what was in it, but the label did not tell. Knowing that it was an American patent medicine, and that the American law requires all packages of foods and bottles of medicine to state their contents, he went to a *drug store* (or *chemist's shop*) to see the original bottles from which this sirup was taken. Imagine his surprise on seeing that it was a *mixture of sirup with morphine, chloroform, and alcohol*—an anæsthetic, an opiate, and a stimulant! Nothing but a quick poison could be worse for him than that.

Chinese do not need to be told the danger of opium and other habit-forming drugs. These drugs are used by physicians with the greatest care, for they are *quick to seize upon the patient and make him a slave*. The Chinese Maritime Customs seized in 1926 over thirty-seven tons of opium. The fight against opium now is a world-wide one. Will you join and take your part in this worthy cause?

China, however, is not yet *awake to the great harm that alcoholic drinks are doing*. Chinese "wines" are

專利藥品的製造者做得比這更巧妙。他們有兩種方法，可使他們的藥品賣得更快更長久。一個方法，是用簡單的流質食物放入瓶中，而那流質食物是不易腐敗的。於是他們正經地說這於你很有益；並且還舉出若干證人來證明。不錯；可是這種藥並不好過牛乳，豆腐，雞蛋，奶油，米飯，你若買了它，祇是白費金錢，因為這些補品，倒比偽藥便宜。中國有許多大登廣告的藥，就是屬於這一類。

還有一種普通的詭計，在藥品中加上一些興奮劑或麻醉劑，使病人精神興奮或易入睡，這樣就當作病好了。他不但要再買這藥而使感覺繼續，且不久也成了使用的習慣，因此製造商的營業逐漸發達，而弄騙人的，無用的，危險的藥品害人更深。不久以前，上海有個美國人，買了一瓶咳嗽糖漿。他服了之後，當時覺得很有效。他想曉得些瓶內是什麼，但說明書上並未提及。他知道這是美國的一種專利藥品，可是按美國的法律，對於食物包裹，藥水瓶子必須說明內為何物，所以他另到一月藥房去看看原來的藥瓶——就是裝他所買的那糖漿的藥瓶。他於是發見那種糖漿原是嗎啡，麻藥，酒精的混合物——一種是麻醉藥，一種是催眠藥，一種是興奮劑。你得替他想想，他驚駭到如何地步呵！再也沒有比這毒藥害他更快的了。

關於鴉片及能成癮的藥品的危險，中國人可不用人家去告訴他們了。這些藥品，就是醫師使用時，也極謹慎，因為它們能綁住病人，使他成為奴隸。一九二六年中國海關抄獲三十七噸的鴉片。抵制鴉片，是現今世界共同的目標。你可盡你的本分加入這有價值的運動嗎？

可是，中國對於酒精的害處，尙未覺悟。中國的酒，

really weak or strong whisky, and the foreign imported whisky is worse. Alcohol is *taking the strength out of China* when she needs it most. It is taking her money and her foodstuffs. Why should we let China handicap herself thus *in her struggle to stand up among the great nations?* Let us begin at once *to use our influence against this national enemy.* Drinking among Westerners is often a *rough, quick, wild, crazy business*; in China it is usually a slow and gradual taking away of strength and shortening of life. It is hard to say which evil is the greater, *Temperance becomes a patriotic virtue.*

21. Public Health and Sanitation

Health is a matter that requires not only personal attention but public coöperation. It has become *an important function of modern governments to look after and improve public sanitary conditions.* Our National Government has a *Ministry of Public Health* to direct and coöperate with local governments in this work. Many provinces, cities, and districts now have *boards of health.* It is necessary that honest, public-spirited, energetic, and well-trained physicians be appointed to such boards for a long enough period to learn the conditions and *to carry out a policy of improvement of health conditions.* That means they must not be *political appointees.* A number of our cities are now launching public-health programs, which include the cleaning of streets and *public toilets,* the making of the right kind of sewers, the inspection of slaughterhouses, markets, dairies, and restaurants, the examination and certification of doctors, the keeping of vital statistics, the prevention of epidemics, the supervision of public and private hospitals, the maintenance of *a staff of visiting nurses,* the elimination of wild dogs, rats, flies, and mosquitoes, the establishment of an institute to make bacteriological or chemical analyses of water, milk, food, manufactured goods, patent medicine, and to perform various tests for diseases, and finally the *promotion of health education through public lectures,*

有的比威士忌強，有的比威士忌弱，但從外國進口的威士忌確是最貴的。中國現在所需要的是氣力，而酒精則把氣力奪去。它還耗費了金錢和食料。中國現正在奮鬥要成為強國的時候，為什麼我們要讓它去妨害它自己呢？讓我們立刻開始，用我們的力量去反對國家的敵人。西洋人喝酒，總要鬧出野蠻，慌張，放蕩，瘋狂的事情；在中國呢，老是慢慢地，漸漸地消磨了力氣，縮短了生命。要說那種害處較大，頗不容易。節制是一種愛國的德行。

二一 公共健康與衛生

健康這件事情不但需要個人的注意，還得有大眾的合作。繁重與改良公共衛生狀況，已成為現代國家的義務。我們的國民政府設立衛生部，指導地方政府，並已與它合作辦理此種事業了。好多省、城、縣，現在都設有衛生局。這裏需用誠實的，熱心的，有能力的，受過訓練的醫師，長期在局內任事，以便熟悉情形，並設法改進衛生的狀況。這裏，衛生事業是不能隨政局變化的。我們的許多城市，現正着手公共衛生的計劃，其中所包含的是清潔街道和公坑，改良陰溝，考察屠場，市場，牛奶棚，酒館，檢查醫師執照，保存重要統計，預防傳染病，監視公立的私立的醫院，添設巡查的看護員，肅清野犬，老鼠，蒼蠅，蚊蟲，設立機關用化學方法分析水，牛乳，食物，製造品，專利藥品，檢驗各種疾病，未了是舉行公共演講，

demonstrations, and regular school work. Study the public-health program of your locality. When the board of health requests money for health purposes and for necessary laws let us help *build up public opinion* to aid them to carry out their plans. The more healthful a community is, the better are the chances for good health for everyone in it.

22. Some Important Health Rules

Here are some health suggestions that, if possible you should begin to follow at once:

1. Go to a good doctor once a year to have a *thorough physical examination*. By thorough examination is meant having eyes, ears, nose, throat, lungs, heart, liver, kidneys, and spine tested. Be sure that your doctor is reliable.

2. Go to a good dentist twice a year to have your teeth examined.

3. Be sure to keep your spine straight by sitting and standing correctly. A twisted spine will affect all the organs of the body. Try to grow a "military" back.

4. What you grow on is what you eat, drink, and breathe. Breathe fresh air. Drink much water and milk, but no strong tea or coffee or alcoholic beverages. Eat only wholesome, well-cooked food. By weakening your digestion and health, half-cooked rice or vegetables and greasy meat may lose you an important position *in years to come*.

5. Eat slowly. Go without a meal rather than half chew your food.

6. The fresher the food you eat every day, the better. Dried foods lose most of their values. Boiled and broiled things are far better than fried things, though not so easy to cook. Learn as much as possible about the right kinds of food and how to prepare them.

7. Do not smoke. It may weaken your heart.

8. Sleep at least eight hours in the twenty-four in a well-ventilated room.

9. Begin at once to learn some game or sport which will keep you out of doors. Exercise hardens the body, and is necessary for a person who is to do vigorous work. Walking about out of doors is not sufficient exercise. Basket ball, baseball, tennis, swimming, climbing, vaulting, skating, horseback-riding,

表演，和有規期的學校工作，以促進衛生教育。研究你本地的公共衛生計劃吧。如果衛生局需要款項，建設衛生事業，或訂立重要規則，我們應去建立輿論，幫助他們實現他們的計劃。社會愈尊重衛生，個人愈能得到健康的機會。

二二 幾條重要的衛生規則

下面是幾種合於衛生的提議，要是可能的話，你得立刻開始實行：

(1) 每年請一位良醫詳細地檢驗身體。所謂詳細檢驗，是指檢驗眼，耳，鼻，喉，肺，心，肝，腎，脊骨等。但要確實知道你的醫師是可靠的。

(2) 每年請好的牙醫檢驗兩次牙齒。

(3) 不論坐立，都得使你的脊骨挺直。彎曲的脊骨能影響全身的器官。使你的背像個專人。

(4) 你的生長是全賴飲食和呼吸。呼吸新鮮的空氣。多喝水與牛乳，但不可喝濃茶，咖啡，或食酒精的酒。吃有益的煮熟的食物。若吃了半生的飯菜肉類，非特會減弱你的消化和健康，說不定將來害了病，甚至要失去重要的位置。

(5) 慢慢地吃。食物不細嚼，不如不吃好。

(6) 每天吃愈新鮮的東西愈好。乾燥的食物喪失了許多價值。煮的和烤的食物比煮的好，雖說燒時比較困難，要深知那種是正當的食物，並須知道怎樣去預備。

(7) 不要吸煙。也許它會減弱你的心臟。

(8) 在二十四小時內至少得睡八小時，房內的空氣須絕對流通。

(9) 開始學習一種遊戲，以便在戶外運動。運動能強健身體，努力的人愈是需要。單在門外散步並不算是充分的運動。籃球，棒球，網球，游泳，跳臺，登山，溜冰，騎馬，

gardening, mowing the lawn, are some of the ways of getting outdoor exercise. Get it either by play or by work, or in both ways.

10. Be happy. If you are often sad or angry, you will find it impossible to keep your body in good condition. You cannot be angry just "*inside your brain.*" You may not know it, but you are angry throughout your whole body. If all the nerves are quivering with anger, they are not attending to their regular work. *The next-best thing to being happy is making believe that you are.*

11. Work hard, study hard, and play hard. Hard things are good for you. Remember that all your heroes and heroines are those who have done hard things well.

12. Never get discouraged about your body. Even if the doctor tells you that you have a twisted spine, short eyesight, and a weak digestion, *the chances are that if you will determine to straighten your spine, to train your eyes, and to discipline your stomach, you can do so.* If your doctor cannot tell you how to help yourself, find one who can.

13. If you have some physical defect which cannot be wholly overcome, make the rest of the body as perfect as possible. Wonderful things can be done with two thirds of a body if that part is perfectly trained.

14. What are you planning to do when you leave school? Different occupations require different physical qualifications. If you have weak lungs, you must avoid work indoors if possible. If your spine has a twist, your work must not make this worse. Find out, at your earliest opportunity, whether you can fit your body to do the work that you are planning to take up. If you cannot, change your plans.

QUESTIONS AND EXERCISES

1. Did you ever try to study when you had a bad headache? If so, it will help you to understand why your health is necessary for work and for play. Can you remember any occasion when ill health prevented you from doing what you had planned to do? How many days have you lost on account of illness this school year?

2. Health is "the first of all liberties." Explain what this means.

3. Write a brief paragraph on "Safety First!"

4. What physical education is given in your school?

植園，割草，這些全是戶外運動的方法。你可當它是工作，當它是遊戲，或當它兼而有之。

(10) 要快樂。你若常憂愁憤怒，便不能使身體保持常態了。你的憤怒並不單在你腦中的。也許你自己不知道，可是你的憤怒能普遍全身。若腦筋為憤怒而全部震動起來，便不能再做別的工作了。第二種比較可以快樂的方法是自得其樂。

(11) 勤於工作，勤於讀書，勤於遊戲。勞苦的事於你有益。要記住：中國的男女英雄就是能把勞苦的事做得最有成績的人。

(12) 不要為你的身體灰心。就是你的醫師告訴你，你有彎的背，近視的眼，衰弱的消化力，祇要你有決心直你的背，練習你的眼光，調整你的胃腸，你仍然有機會可以矯正的。如果你的醫師不能告訴你怎樣去調養你自己，那你可問另外的人。

(13) 你若有了身體的缺點不能完全克服，就盡量使其餘的部分完全。身體中如有三分之二經過完全的鍛鍊，你便能做出驚人的事業了。

(14) 你離開學校以後預備做什麼？各種職業需要各種體格。若你的肺弱，最好不做戶內的工作。若你的背曲，你不能再做使背更曲的工作。預先就要明白，你打算做的事情是否合於你的身體。要是不合，就改變你的計劃。

問答練習題

(1) 你頭痛的時候會想讀書的，那就使你明白，無論工作或讀書，都需要健康的身體了。你會記得你打算做的事情因了疾病而妨害你的進行機會嗎？這個學期你請了多少天的病假？

(2) 健康為『一切自由之冠』，試申述其意義。

(3) 用『安全第一』的題目寫一短文。

(4) 你的學校所施行的是何種的體育？

5. What is being done in your community to destroy flies? What should be done?

6. Frame a few rules that everyone can practice, to help prevent tuberculosis. You might call them *the tuberculosis "do's and 'don't's"*.

7. What can the community do to safeguard health?

8. Mention several ways in which your school can help to safeguard health.

9. What is the greatest health reform needed in your community? What do you think can be done to further the reform?

10. Explain why the use of narcotics and stimulants is an enemy to the nation.

11. Find out all you can concerning the life and work of Louis Pasteur; of William C. Gorgas; of Jesse W. Lazear.

- (5) 本地所行的滅菌工作是怎樣的？應該怎樣實行才對？
- (6) 計劃幾種人人能實行的預防肺病的方法。你可把它分爲『要……』與『不要……』的兩項。
- (7) 社會有些什麼方法以保持健康？
- (8) 說幾種你校中能幫助保持健康的方法。
- (9) 本地所需的重要的衛生革新事業是那一種？你能想出進一步革新方法嗎？
- (10) 說明使用鴉片藥和興奮劑是國家之敵的原因。
- (11) 試述巴斯特 (Lavis Pasteur) 喬治 (William C. George) 拉斯爾 (Gosse W. Lazera) 的生平及其事業。

CHAPTER XV

CHINA'S YOUNG PEOPLE

1. The Children's Age

About a third of the population of a country are children and young men and women under twenty-one years of age. There are enough of them to make a nation in themselves. The United States, counting all its men, women, and children, has not as many people as China has boys and girls. It is only in recent years that people have come to realize the meaning and importance of this fact. Now the young people of a country are known to be a very important part of its population. This was not realized in earlier years.

All that many historians have thought it important to tell about the boys and girls who lived centuries ago makes a mournful picture. It is hard to believe, yet it is true that some nations have thought so little of their children that when sickness or trouble came to a family they allowed parents to offer one of their children as a sacrifice. In other countries, if a child was born with a twisted foot or a hunched back or sightless eyes, or even if it was only weak, parents could leave it in the woods or fields to die. Nobody knows how many great men and women have been lost to the world in that way.

In all countries, in every age, the strong children of noble parents have been well cared for, but for many centuries poor or weak children were almost always neglected. Only a few were educated; it was not thought worth while to teach most of them even to read and write. Now the attitude of civilized people toward all children, both rich and poor, is entirely changed. The

第十五章 中國的年青

一 兒童時代

一國的人口，三分之一是兒童二十一歲以下的青年男女。單只他們便够自成一國了。美國把它的成年男女和兒童一起算進裏面，還不及中國青年男女多。到了最近，人們才知道這件事情的意義和重要。現代國家中的青年，可作為人民最主要的部分。這件事從前的人並不明白。

許多歷史家認為很重要的，說述幾世以前關於青年男女的事，頗有凄慘的景象。這話不能盡信，然而有的國家並不着重它們的孩子，當着一家有了疾病或患難時，准許他們的父母獻一個孩子作為犧牲品。有的國家，假使一個孩子生下來跛了足，或駝了背，或瞎了眼，甚至只要身體太軟弱，做父母的可以把他們拋在林中或地上任其死去。世界上不知道有多少偉大的男女人物，這樣地被犧牲了他們的生命。

所有的國家，在任何時代裏，對於貴族的強壯子女總是妥為保護。可是幾世以來，那些窮苦軟弱的孩子，幾乎永遠被人忽視的。只有少數受過教育的，就是教他們寫讀，也似乎有些不值得。現代開化的民族，對於小孩不論貧富，態度是完全改變了。

young people of today are in far better and happier condition than they used to be. *This has been called "the children's age," because in these days the young people occupy so important a place in the life of the country.*

2. Children are Part of "the People"

Fathers and mothers and teachers used to talk about what a boy or girl was going to be and not so much about what he or she was as a boy or girl. It was as if children *lived only in the future*. They were made to imitate grown people, to act and talk like grown people. Western parents dressed their children like grown ladies and gentlemen. They even made their hair white. They thought play was foolish and even wrong. Children must act only as their elders told them to act. Chinese parents put a long scholar's gown on a little boy the first time he went to school. His *childhood days were over*; he must behave like a man. Thus children were considered to *have very little life of their own*: they lived for the future and for the service of their parents. They were either little old people or else small slaves.

About one hundred and seventy years ago *Rousseau broke away from all these old ideas and began to prove that children were real people*. He said that they must live their own lives; that nature was the best teacher; that children should almost run wild like animals in the forests; that they should learn for themselves; that they could not be forced to learn what they were not ready for; that they must play and enjoy their own natural lives; and then, *at the right time*, they would be ready and able to learn what men and women should know. This great Frenchman did much to influence people in giving children a larger and more natural place.

Now people want children to play. They do not dress them in clothes that hinder them. They give them play-grounds and toys, especially toys which can be made into things—blocks, tools, materials. Thus the children can

今日的青年所處的境遇比往昔好得多，也快樂得多了。這便叫作『兒童時代』，因為在現在，青年在一國的生活中佔了極重要的地位。

二 兒童是人民的一部分

父母教師常說男女孩子大起來應該怎樣，但他們却不多說他們自己在孩子時代到底怎樣。這好像說兒童是為將來而活着的。他們生下來就得做成人，舉動談話都得像成人。西洋的父母把孩子穿得像太太和紳士一樣，甚至把他們的頭髮也弄白起來。他們以為遊戲是愚蠢的，錯誤的。孩子只好聽大人所吩咐的去做。中國的父母，每當孩子第一天入學時，總是給他穿上大褂子。他的兒童時代已經過去了；他的舉動應該像個成人。因此，孩子自己的時代被大人看得很短促；他們只是為將來而生活，為服侍父母而生活。他們可說是小老頭子或稱為小奴隸。

大約一百七十年以前，盧騷破除了這些舊思想，起初證明了兒童是真實的人民。他說兒童必須照兒童自己生活的方式生活；大自然便是最好的教師，他們應當像野獸一樣在森林中奔跑，他們應當自己學習；他們不能被強迫着去學習他們未能學習的事物；他們應當遊戲，享受自己自然的生活；最後，到了相當的時期，他們便自然知道成年男女所知道的事情了。這位偉大的法國人，他所說的話很能影響一般人民，使他們給兒童更廣大的更自然的地位。

現在，人們要孩子去遊戲了。他們也不給孩子穿上有礙發育的衣服了。他們給孩子運動場和玩具，尤其能做成東西的玩具，如木塊，器具，材料等。這樣，孩子便能

be active and carry out their own ideas. Natural imitation of older people is not bad, and as far as the children choose that form of play they may learn much from it. They imitate also animals and engines and ships and all sorts of things. They play in their own natural ways. Some of their play is really hard work. As they get older they constantly change their forms of play. The more different kinds of play and work they take up, the more they learn from them. It is genuine education. But to them it is their own natural, happy life. Why should people not enjoy life when they are young as well as when they are grown, especially if that is also good preparation for later life?

3. Indoor and Outdoor Play

After our chapter on health it is not necessary to argue the importance of outdoor sports. Young people who *have as children developed their play instincts and their health go in for such sports eagerly.* Those who have been kept too quiet and given too little chance to play are often very slow to begin to play when they get a chance. They ought to become young again. They have grown old too fast. They should make themselves play. If they begin, they will quickly become enthusiastic. If they do not feel energetic and strong, play will give them energy and strength. It may be the one thing they need to awaken and develop them.

A common plan in modern schools is to require every student once or twice a day *to take part in sports or physical training.* If a student is not sufficiently strong and healthy to enjoy football, tennis, and similar sports, the physical drill soon makes him so. The principal of a large school for girls in China says that when regular physical drill was begun, *the number of cases of sickness* at once decreased very much and the interest in sports increased.

Outdoor sports are better than indoor sports. If it is impossible to play outdoors, play indoors or, better still, on a veranda. But it is usually possible to play outdoors.

活潑起來，發揮他們自己的思想了。自然地學做大人，並非廢事，孩子選了那種遊戲，就可得着許多的知識。他們也摹做動物、儀器、船隻、及其他各種東西。他們照自己天然的方法去遊戲。其中有些遊戲，實在是困難的工作。等到他們的年齡較大，就常改變遊戲的方式。他們玩的做的愈多，所學習到的也愈多。這才算真正的教育。可是在孩子本身看來，這是他們自己的快樂生活。爲什麼青年不該像成人一樣享受生活的樂趣呢？而況這是有益於後來生活預備的呢。

三 戶內和戶外遊戲

我們已經講過衛生的一科，不必再說戶外遊戲的重要了。青年人也像孩子一樣喜歡遊戲，發展他們的本能和健康。那些只准安分守己而沒有機會遊戲的人，就是有了機會，也是遲於遊戲的。他們應當再成爲青年。他們是未老先衰呢。他們須替自己設法怎樣去遊戲。只要一開始，他們便很快地成爲熱心的了。要是他們覺得無力和軟弱，遊戲便能給他們力量和強健。這是一件應當提醒和謀發展的事情。

近代學校裏的普通計劃，是要每個學生在一天中作一兩次的遊戲或體育訓練。如果一個學生不十分健壯去玩足球，網球，和同類的遊戲，體育的訓練能使他成功。中國某女校的校長說過，當體育訓練開始了的時候，各種疾病就馬上減少，同時遊戲的興趣也就增加起來了。

戶外遊戲比戶內遊戲更好。要是戶外遊戲不可能，就在戶內遊戲，尤其在走廊遊戲比較好些。但是，戶外遊戲通常是可能的。

even in the snow or in the rain, *if you are dressed for it*. If there is not room enough for all to play every day, each one may have a turn every other day or twice a week. The big sports and swimming are the best; but the more different kinds of sports there are, the better. In Western schools a large number of young people play in little groups of two, three, or four. A boy takes a ball out of his pocket at recess time and for a few minutes throws and catches with another boy not far away. One has a stick which he asks another to take away from him. One vaults over a railing, and others try to vault farther. One turns his face to the wall, and when someone give him a spank he tries to guess who it is, so as to put that one in turn against the wall. They run races, walk on stilts, have a tug of war, jump, pole-vault, play leapfrog, marbles, etc. "Jackstones" is played in the West just as in China. "Prisoner's base" is a favorite in many schools. In "tag on wood" you may be "tagged" by the one who is "it" if you are not touching wood; when you are tagged, you are "it."

All these forms of play are more or less organized. That is one reason they are good. One difference between civilized and uncivilized people is that the former have learned how to carry on organized activities. All these sports have rules and definite objects. There is *the law of equality of opportunity*. There is respect for rights. No *underhand activity* is allowed. The majority or the powerful leader does not suppress the minority or the weak. That is one reason sports are better than idle gossip. That is one reason some *would-be leaders* do not go in for sports.

Another great value in sports is that they keep people youthful. The strength of a nation comes partly from the health, vigor, and training the men and women have received in the sports of her schools, and partly also from the continuance of sports long after leaving school. Tennis may be played by old men as well as by small boys. To keep oneself young by continuing to play not

就是下雪下雨，只要穿上雨衣也就行了。若房間太小，每天不能大家一齊玩，那麼可以輪流玩，每人隔一天一次或一星期兩次。大規模的遊戲和游泳固然最好；可是遊戲的種類愈變化愈好。西洋的學校裏，許多青年的遊戲是分組的，或兩人一組，或三人一組，或四人一組。在休息的時候，一個學生從袋中取出一隻球，同別的距離不遠的學生一，拋一接，玩了幾分鐘。一個學生手裏有根棍棒，讓別的學生從他手裏奪去。一個學生跳過欄杆，別的學生爭着想跳的更遠。一個學生面煮牆，另一學生在拍他一下叫他猜是誰，若猜着了，就由那個學生面牆。他們賽跳。踏繩躑。拉繩，跳高，撐高跳，跳背，彈石子等等。『拋石戲』，像中國一樣，西方也有的。『捉迷藏』是各學校覺着最有趣味的。在『竊木戲』裏，你可指定一個人，叫他追逐別人倘若不竊着木頭，要是你被他追逐着，那你就得開始追逐別人了。

這些遊戲的方法多少總有點組織。那就是它們的一個優點。文明人野蠻人的分別，便是前者知道行使有組織的活動力，而後者却不知道。這些遊戲都有規則，都有一定的目標，有平等機會的定律，有尊重公理的意義；不准私自活動。多數的或有權的領袖，不能壓迫少數的或軟弱的。這就是遊戲比閱讀為佳的一個理由。這也是做領袖的野心的人不願加入遊戲的一個理由。

遊戲的另一種大價值，在乎能保持人們的青春。國家的力量，一半來自男女在學校裏從遊戲得來的健康，氣力和訓練。一半來自離開學校之後的繼續遊戲運動。網球是老幼皆宜的遊戲。藉繼續遊戲方法保持一個人的年青。

only keeps the body strong and well but also keeps one eager and able to learn. Do not let yourself grow old too fast. Stay as young as you can—as full of life and as ready to learn new things as possible. *Love of sport for its own sake* is a wise and wholesome thing.

4. Public Playgrounds

Schools encourage sports because they have learned to appreciate their value and the rights of young people. What of the children who are not in school or who go to day schools which have no space for sports? In modern cities playgrounds are provided for such children. In a village every home has an open space for the children to play in. Clean grass, fresh air, and sunshine are the least that every children should demand for its play place. In crowded cities these cannot be provided. For the sake of their children, therefore, people should either move to the villages or demand that the city authorities provide playgrounds. Clean, grassy lawns for the children are far more important than potted flowers and tea houses for the grown people. Such places can be provided, and they are provided as soon as the people demand it. The city authorities may say *it will take money*. Is money more important than children? The rights of the children are not yet fully recognized. There are people in all countries who still give you *the argument of money against the rights of the children*. Such people ought never to have any children. Let us take up the children's cause against them. Here is one of our future wars to fight. *Forward for the children!*

5. Protection of Children

Even a wild animal will fight to its death to protect its young. If you wish to start trouble, strike somebody's child. Who would not defend and protect a child? There are now many modern laws for the protection of children. They are, for example, protected against kidnaping,

非但可使身體強健，且能熱心求學。不要讓你自己未老先衰。盡量地保持年青保持豐富的生活；保持你的新知識的準備。爲愛遊戲本身而愛遊戲，這是聰明而健全的事業。

四 公共運動場

學校鼓勵遊戲，因爲他們知道重視遊戲的價值和青年的利益。一般未進學校和上日校沒有運動場的兒童應當怎麼辦呢？現代的都市裏運動場就是爲這般兒童而設的。在鄉村中，家家都有空地給孩子遊戲的。每個孩子應當要求他的遊戲地方，至少要有清潔的草地，新鮮的空氣，和溫暖的陽光。在熱鬧的都會中，便無此種設備。爲着兒童的緣故，人們或者宜遷到鄉下去，或者要求市政府當局多辟運動場。兒童的需清潔草地，比成人需要花盆或茶館更爲迫切。這種場所只須人民要求便能開辦了。市政府當局也許說這要化錢。可是兒童不比金錢更重要嗎？兒童的權利至今尚未被人完全承認。各國的人民尙有對你主張金錢反對兒童權利的。這類人永遠不該有小孩。讓我們拿兒童的理由去反抗他們。這就是我們將來奮鬥的目的之一。爲着兒童向前進呀！

五 保護兒童

就是野獸也要拚命奮鬥保護牠們的小獸。你若要搗氣，打入家的孩子就行了。誰不擁護而且保衛一個孩子呢？現在有好多保護兒童的新法律。例如，保護小孩的被拐。

which in many countries is classed among the three or four greatest crimes. Even a father or mother may be fined for treating a child badly. If a father whips his son cruelly, the father may be arrested and punished. If parents neglect their children, they may be fined or imprisoned and the children may be taken from them to be cared for by the government. If parents cannot care for a child, they may, *by legal process*, give the child over entirely to some good and responsible people, who adopt it, and the child then becomes the son or daughter *in full standing* in its new home.

One of the hardest fights for the children has been that against child labor. Again it is money against the child. The factory owner prefers children in many jobs because they are cheaper. Cheaper! Ask him how cheap his own children are. How much money will he take for them? He will kill other children for a few dollars. What is the price of his own? Moreover, the parents want the money the children earn. The children, not knowing their own needs and rights, are willing to work. It is wrong to make children support themselves or their parents. If people cannot support children, they should not have them, or else the community should take care of them.

A little work every day in good light and air is not bad for a child; it is good for him if it is the right sort of work and is varied. But work for too long a time—even such healthful work as watching the water buffaloes out on a hill—is bad for a child because it keeps him out of school. Work of only one kind, even if not long at a time, is dulling to a child's mind and often causes uneven or wrong development of his body, which the varied work about a home does not do. Work in bad light or close work of any kind, such as fine needlework or making paper flowers, is sometimes such a strain upon the child's eyes as to bring on blindness. Work that keeps children away from the fresh air and sunlight, work that makes them stand for a long time, work that exposes them to

有許多國家都把這種罪名列入三四種最大的罪名裏面。甚至父母虐待兒女也得受罰。如果父親殘忍地打他的兒子，他就得被捕定罪。如果父母忽視他們的子女，他們也就得處罰或拘禁，同時孩子則由政府領去守養。如果父母無力養育他們的子女，他們可依法律的定例，把孩子送給能負責任的慈善家負責照顧使他們享受新家的子女的完全資格。

爲兒童奮鬥最迫切的一件事，便是反對童工。這又是金和錢兒童對待了。廠主有好多事要找童工去做，只是因爲他童工資便宜。便宜呀！問問他，他自己的兒女多少便宜？他願拿他的兒女換多少錢？他只想用幾塊錢殺了人家的兒女。他自己的兒女價值多少呢？況且，父母要用兒女賺來的錢。孩子願意做工，並不知道他們的需要和權利。要孩子來養活自己，養活父母，這種思想是錯誤的。要是人們不能養活兒女，他們便不該生小孩，不然，社會應該替他們設法收養。

每天在好的光線與好的空氣中做點工作，對於兒童並無壞處；假使這工作是正當而又隨時變改的，對於他就很有益。但是工作的時間太長久——比如在小山上看水牛，固然是有益於健康的工作——却也有害於兒童，因爲他們不能上學校唸書了。單做一種工作，縱使時間不長久，也會使兒童的思想愚笨，並且使他的身體發育不全或不勻，若在家做各種不同的雜務，便可免此弊病。在不良的光線下工作，或做精細的工作，例如細微的針線生活，剪紙花，有時兒童因用力過度，以致變眼失明。叫兒童在缺乏新鮮空氣或陽光的地方工作，或使他們站得太久，或讓他們發受

rust or steam, work that begins early or continues into the night, work that requires a certain speed, work that puts the child in danger from wheels, knives, poisons, and the like,—all this is cruel and inhuman. Against it we must carry on our war for the liberty of the children.

In Western countries one of the most prominent of the many organizations for such warfare is the Society for the Prevention of Cruelty to Children. This organization has members and branches far and wide. It makes contributions to support secretaries and carry on many activities for the protection and care of those who cannot protect themselves. This sort of work has done much to develop popular opinion against child labor. One country after another has passed such laws as the following:

No child under sixteen can legally be employed in any mine or quarry at any time; no child under fourteen can legally be employed at any time and no child under sixteen more than eight hours in any workday, more than six days in any week, or before 6 A.M. or after 7 P.M. in any mill, cannery, workshop, factory, or manufacturing establishment.

When citizens have grown up to be men and women after being healthy, happy, vigorous, protected, cared-for, and educated children, the country is both happier and stronger. It does not pay, even in dollars and cents, to let the children work instead of growing and studying. Most of the work open to boys and girls is a "blind alley." It leads nowhere. Soon the worker is grown and out of a job, and with no preparation for a life work. He has lost the enjoyment of life as a child and made no preparation for the enjoyment of life as an adult. With your aid China in time will have laws to protect its children.

6. What One Nation is doing for its Children

Here are a few of the things which one modern nation has done or is doing for its children:

1. It has made hundreds of laws to protect and help them. It takes more than a thousand pages of a closely printed book to give the most important state laws about child labor.

灰塵和蒸汽，或從一早開工延至深夜停工，或帶一定速度，或使兒童受輪，刀，毒等的危險——這都是殘忍不人道的工作。爲着兒童的自由，我們必須實行我們的奮鬥。

在西洋各國，爲兒童奮鬥中一種最顯著的機關，就是「虐待兒童預防會」。這會到處都有會員，到處都有支部。一般捐資創辦的人員，對於那不能得到保護的兒童，做了許多保護和收養的事業。此項事業，頗能提倡輿論反對童工。故各國相繼地通過下列的法律：

十六歲以下的兒童，不論何時，法律禁止他們在礦中受雇；十四歲以下的兒童，不論何時，法律禁止他們受雇；十六歲以下的兒童，不論在何工廠，鑄鐵廠，店家，製造廠，每日不得做八小時以上的工作，一星期不得超過六天，每天早上不得在六點鐘以前上工，晚上不得在七點鐘以後放工。

凡兒童由健康，快樂，強壯，受保護，有照顧，有教育而長成爲公民的，這國家也一定快樂而強壯。徒叫兒童做工，不讓他們發育和讀書，這並無絲毫代價可言，也說不上有什麼銅元和銀元的代價，爲兒童開闢做工的路，大半是死路。它是到處走不通的。等到長人便要失業，而且對於終身事業並無準備。他不但失了幼年的生活趣味，並且無享受成年快樂的預備。仗着你們的力量，中國將來才有保護兒童的法律出現。

六 國家保護兒童法

下面的幾件事務，是一個現代國家曾經替兒童做過的，或者正在替兒童做着的：

(1) 訂定數百條保護救助兒童的法律，關於童工，國家以精詳瑣細的，有千餘頁之多的書籍，指示最重要的國家法律。

2. Every year thousands of books are written especially to entertain children and young people.

3. Special boys' and girls' magazines are printed every month.

4. Millions of dollars are spent each year for schools. Many of the schoolhouses are the finest buildings that skill and money can devise. Ancient men of wealth did not live in such great luxury as do many pupils in their magnificent steam-heated schoolhouses, with their beautiful pictures, attractive assembly halls, convenient lunch rooms, and tiled bathrooms. There are special schools and homes for children who are blind or dumb or handicapped in other ways.

5. All large public libraries and most small ones have separate reading-rooms and separate lists of books for children. Special librarians are ready to show children how to get information from books and to give them any other needed help.

6. All large museums have attendants to show children the treasures of art.

7. Many artists of great ability give all their time to painting pictures for children to enjoy.

8. There are playgrounds and parks for children in every part of the country. Cities tear down whole blocks of tenement houses to make room for a playground. When they cannot do this they shut off traffic from certain streets and say, "No wagons, no automobiles, only children allowed."

In one river there is a Children's Isle. On the coast there is another children's island that has been used as a vacation home for crippled children.

9. There are separate hospitals for children, and separate wards for them in regular hospitals. There are children's specialists who give all their time to studying and curing children's diseases. Schools have school physicians to examine the pupils and to tell them how to take care of their health. Some cities now have school nurses who go into the homes of pupils to tell the parents how to prepare the right kind of meals for their children.

10. The government has a special Children's Bureau that gives all its time to studying the needs of children and planning ways of helping them.

11. There are children's courts, where young offenders may be heard without having to appear in courts where old offenders are tried.

(2) 每年著書數千冊，專備兒童青年閱讀。

(3) 每月出版男女學生的雜誌。

(4) 給各學校補助費每年數百萬元，利用技巧和金錢，建造若干最優美的校舍。現在學生所住的華貴的具有暖氣管的宿舍，裝置美麗的圖畫，精緻的大廳，方便的膳堂，鋪磚的浴室，就是從前的富人也沒有住過這樣奢華的房子。尚有特種的學校和宿舍，專為盲啞或有別種殘缺的兒童設立的。

(5) 一切大圖書館及多數小圖書館，都有為兒童分設的閱書室和書目分類簿，專門圖書館員指導兒童怎樣從書中得到知識，並給他們所需要的別的幫助。

(6) 所有大博物館都有招待員指示兒童藝術的寶藏。

(7) 許多具有大天才的藝術家，用他們所有的功夫畫圖畫，供給兒童欣賞。

(8) 國內各處有為兒童設立的運動場和公園。城內大批召租的房屋都拆毀了改設運動場。如果他們辦不到這種事情，就在街上貼出斷絕交通的告示：「不准貨車汽車通過，只許兒童遊行。」

有一條大江，江中有個「孩兒島」。岸上還有一個孩兒島，是殘廢兒童休息的家鄉。

(9) 有為兒童專設的醫院，在正式的醫院中，又有照應兒童的特別病房，此外尚有兒科專家，他們悉心研究醫治兒童的疾病。學校裏有校醫替學生檢驗身體，並指示他們怎樣注意衛生。有些城裏聘請學校看護，專到學生家中去，告訴他們的父母怎樣為兒童預備正當的飲食。

(10) 政府設立兒童特別顧問局，專事研究兒童的需要，並計劃各種扶助他們的方法。

(11) 設立兒童法庭，審判少年罪犯，不必進入成人法庭受審。

7. Youth comes to the Front

Not only is the world now doing more for the young people: the young people are doing more for the world. We saw in Chapter XI how boys and girls can even serve their country. In China we have seen the students *take a share in the great political struggles of their times*. Those struggles are not over. After outside enemies cease to endanger the nation, inside enemies *will be all the more difficult to overcome*. It is the history of every republic. Strong but selfish or ignorant men try to get and hold power for their own purposes. Good laws are *defeated or set aside*. Money is collected for public works and then put into the pockets of a few officials. Schools are *robbed of their support*. Rich people are protected in return for money payments or else robbed of their money, while poor people are *left to do the best they can*, which may be to get poorer and poorer. In all these dangers there must be heroes to do battle for the good of China. They will grow up from among the young people of today. Yes; and the young people themselves are already in the battle. They make public opinion on *the right side*. They educate people to higher ideals for their children. They open schools for poor children. This sets a good example for government officials and for wealthy people. They work for more playgrounds, and help to develop better games among the smaller children.

Recently some of the more progressive cities in China have opened great parks for the use of the people. They are beautiful green spots where children may play and grow in the open air instead of being huddled together in the narrow, dark streets. Why should not every city *throughout the entire length and breadth of the Republic of China* have many such playgrounds? Students have organized many processions. It might be well for them to advertise and promote a movement to get playgrounds for the children. All the children in a city would want to join such a procession. They would carry banners saying:

七 青年站在前線

現在不管世界要爲青年出力，青年也得爲世界出力。在第十一章裏，我們可以看出青年男女爲國服務的情形。在中國，我們看見在政治的奮鬥上，學生也是加入的一份子。這種奮鬥尙未過去。等到外敵停止危害國家後，內敵更難克服。各民主國的歷史都是如此。那設法慳、慳、自私的人。祇知道爲自己的利益而劫奪政權。公正的法律反被毀棄。爲公衆事業而收集得來的公款，只進了幾個官吏的私囊。學校的補助費也被劫奪。富人須納了稅始得保護，不然財產也得瓜分，至於窮人祇好任其所欲，愈弄愈窮了。在這種危險中，必須要有英雄出來爲中國的公共福利而奮鬥。這些英雄都是從今日青年羣中長大的。是的；青年自己登壇在奮鬥了。他們使輿論趨向正確的方面。他們用教育人民的高尙思想去教育兒童。他們爲兒童開辦學校，給政府官吏與富人們樹立良好的榜樣。他們開闢更多的運動場，替幼孩設計更好的遊戲。

近來中國比較進步的城市，都爲人民開設大公園，公園中有鮮豔的草地可供兒童遊玩，使他們在清潔的空氣裏生長，不致擠塞在狹小黑暗的小徑上。中國的各城爲什麼不都設這樣的運動場呢？學生組織了童子宣傳隊。他們也得爲兒童的運動場發起宣傳運動。每個城中的兒童更願意參加各種運動。他們應舉起旗幟喊道：

CHINA'S YOUNG PEOPLE

We are one third of "the people."
Tomorrow the nation is ours.
Help us to grow strong.
We want sunshine and fresh air.
Give us playgrounds and protection.
No child labor. *Schools for all.*

8. A Nation with an Educational Tradition

Fortunately we do not need to persuade China that the education of her young people is important. We are *happy in living in a land with an ancient and strong educational tradition.* All the people know that education is a good thing. Every village wants a school. Every teacher is respected. Every father and mother would like to have the children educated. These *sweeping statements* are true in almost every corner of China. We are fortunate in being in a land with a strong belief in learning. Many a place in the world is different. Many a family in other countries despises an education for even one of the children.

China's heroes have almost always been men of learning. *Long before there was much science to study, when there was only literature or history, learning was held in high honor, and men were promoted to the highest positions on the basis of learning.* China in her new day, therefore, is not one whit behind the most advanced nations in her respect for education. She is establishing great universities. She has built wonderful libraries. She has a plan for schools in all grades and reaching into every village of the nation.

It is necessary, however, to keep in mind that China's educational task is the greatest the world *has seen or will ever see.* It is so enormous that it must be accomplished gradually. There are many faults in the present work. There are sure to be many weaknesses for a long time to come. We must, then, *keep the problem constantly before us, and do all we can to promote education.*

我們是『人民』的三分之一。
明日的國家是屬於我們的。
援助我們發育強壯。
我們需要陽光和新鮮空氣。
我們要求運動場，也要求保護。
廢除童工。普及教育。

八 有教育傳統的國家

在中國青年教育如何重要，我們實在不用多講舌。我們很快樂地生長在很古很強的有傳統教育的國家裏。人都知道教育是有益的事業。個個鄉村需要一所學校。個個教員受人敬仰。凡是做父母的都希望子女受教育。這些滔滔的議論，在中國差不多全是如此。我們生長在重視學問的國家，真可算爲僥倖。世界有好多地方便不同了。有若干家庭藐視教育，連他們孩子中的任何一個也得不到享受的機會。

中國的英雄差不多總是有學問的人。在未研究科學以前，那時只有文學和歷史，學問至爲尊崇，人們之所以能升到最高的地位，是以學問爲基礎的。所以，今日的中國，在重視教育上，並不落後於先進的國家。中國正辦理着有名的大學。中國已設立了偉大的圖書館。中國有各級的整個計劃，並使它們普遍於國內所有的鄉村。

可是，要記着：中國的教育是將來全世界所僅見的教育。因爲它的計劃過大，必須慢慢地成功。現在的制度不免有錯的地方。就在遙遠的將來也不能說沒有缺點。因此，我們必須把這個問題永遠放在我們面前，竭力地促進教育。

9. Does Education Pay?

The United States is one of the countries which values highly the education of all the people. Any boy or girl who has the mental ability and can provide food, clothes, and shelter can get *free of charge* an education through primary, middle, college, and university grades. Many other Western countries are rapidly moving in that direction. Modern nations believe that *it pays to put money into schools.*

In China a man can be hired to work all day for a few cents. This is because he has never learned to read or write and has never been trained to do any skilled work. He is actually worth only a few cents a day. Education would *increase his money value* as well as his enjoyment of life.

No better or quicker way of getting skilled hands and trained brains has yet been found than through the schools. Because some great men had little or no schooling, some people have said, "Schools are not necessary." But these great men probably studied harder by themselves than most boys do in school. It does not prove education is useless. In fact, most of the famous men of history spent many years in study. Can you recall a few heroes whom you admire, and see if they were educated men and women?

10. Schools help to build Bridges and Railways

For every large bridge, building, railroad, and dam that we make, scores and hundreds of young men have had to spend months with pencil and paper, *figuring, figuring, figuring.* Without the schools behind them the bridge, the railroad, the dam, would be impossible. All of the architects, civil and electrical engineers, and other skilled workers, now engaged in the planning and developing of Nanking as the new national capital of China, have been school-trained.

九 教育能生利嗎

美國在各國中是重視全民教育的一個。無論青年男女，祇要他有體力，能供給自己衣食住者，便可免費受小學，中學，大學各級的教育。西洋的好多國家都很決地正向着這個方向進行着。現代的國家相繼投資於學校是能够生利的。

在中國，雇一個全天勞動的人祇需幾分錢。這是因為他沒有學過讀書寫字，沒有受過神巧工作的訓練。他祇是值幾分錢一天。教育能增進他的工資收入和生活的享受。

除了從學校以外，無法得到更好更快的方法去找有訓練的頭腦。因為有若干偉人並非由學校出身的，所以有人說過，「學校並非必要」。是可「這些偉人刻苦的自修，也許勝過校裏的學生。這不能證明教育的無用。實則，歷史上的許多名人都費數年讀書的功夫的。你能想起你所崇拜的幾個英雄嗎？這些男女到底受過教育嗎？

十 學校幫助建設橋樑和鐵道

所有大橋，房屋，鐵道，堤壩等的建築，必須先經過數十數百的青年，日積月累地用鉛筆打樣，始克成就。沒有學校的幫忙，什麼大橋，鐵道，堤壩，都是不可能的。一切的建築家，土木工程師，電氣工程師，及其他神巧的工人，現在計劃發展南京為中國新都的人，全是經過學校訓練的。

The following story will show how schools help to carry out many building projects. On September 16, 1917, a hundred reporters from the large newspapers in Canada and the United States were sent to *Quebec*. Before daylight the next morning these men had left their hotels and stood waiting with thousands of others on the bank of the *St. Lawrence River*. All eyes were turned toward sixty-five thousand tons of iron that had been wrought into a huge span to form the center of a great bridge which was to cross the *St. Lawrence River*. This lay on six big steel boats. At a given signal huge machines slowly started to raise this mass of iron. At twelve o'clock the reporters telegraphed their papers that it had been moved eight feet. When night fell, the iron still hung in mid-air. Not until noon of the next day was the news flashed over the wires that the span was finally in place. Hundreds of men in both the United States and Canada had worked for years on this bridge, which is one of the largest in the world.

One of the men who helped build the bridge had spent nineteen years in school in the United States—seven years in grammar school, four years in high school, four years in college, four years in the *Massachusetts Institute of Technology*. He was paid a salary of eight thousand dollars a year, although he was still a young man. When someone asked him what studies had most helped him to gain success he said: "In my position I must be able to figure speedily and with absolute accuracy. Not a minute that I ever spent over arithmetic, algebra, and geometry was wasted. Why, see here," and he pointed to a great pile of sheets of paper. "One single example covers twenty-five sheets and probably has about fifty thousand figures. This whole pile represents only one truss of the bridge. Any boy who wants to build with his hands or plan buildings of any kind must keep at his figures." Public schools offer to every boy *the same start that this young man had.*

下面的故事可以證明學校怎樣幫助實現許多建築計劃。一九一七年十月十六日的那一天，加拿大和美國的報館派出許多新聞記者到魁白克地方去。天尚未亮，這些人就離開了旅館，站在聖·勞倫斯河的岸上，和數千人一同等待着。萬目睽睽地注視着六萬五千噸鐵，將要鑄成拱形的大橋——經過聖·勞倫斯河中心的大橋。橋的身子是在六隻大鋼船上。號令一發，那大的機器慢慢地舉大塊的鐵來。到了十二點鐘，新聞記者拍電報告訴報館說，已經移動八尺了。到了黑夜，鐵塊依然在半空裏懸着。第二天，還不到正午，電報傳遞着消息，說是橋樑已佈置妥當。美國和加拿有幾百人爲這座全世界最大的橋做了幾年的工。

有一位幫助造這大橋的人，在美國會讀了十九年書——小學七年，中學四年，專門學校四年，麥色朱斯工業學院四年。他雖然是個青年，每年卻得着八千元的薪金。當時有人問他：『那種學問使你得到最多的成功呢？』他回答說：『論我的職位，我必須敏捷地打樣，絕對地準確。我從前學數學，代數、幾何的時間，這一分鐘也沒白費過。不信，你可看這個，』他指着一大捲紙繼續說道：『單是這個樣子就有二十五張紙，而這二十五張紙裏面又有五萬個圖。但這堆紙僅代表圖的一部分呢。凡學生要用手建築，或設計任何種類的房屋，必須按照圖樣。』像這位青年起首的工作，是公立學校所能供給每種學生的。

11. Useful Citizens are more Necessary than Famous Men and Women

The world needs few famous men, but it must have millions of useful citizens. The woman who can keep house without wastefulness and can make a home happy and efficient, the man who can take care of his family and make his soil yield the largest possible crops—such women and men are the ones on whom the prosperity of the nation depends.

All that the nation asks of its school pupils is that each will train himself to do his best. The "best" of one boy will be to become a skilled locomotive engineer, who with clear brain and steady hand will guide long trains of precious freight through wind and rain and darkness, never faltering, never shirking. Another boy's "best" will be to learn to use carpenter's tools and to build houses that are *as strong as faithful work can make them*. The "best" of one girl may be to save lives by skillful nursing in home or hospital; another girl will do her "best" by cheerfully caring for the children at home and serving her neighbors as she has opportunity. The motto that might well be written over the door of every schoolroom in the land is, "*Prepare here to do your best, whatever that may be.*"

Of course, then, even the smallest village should say, "We will give all our children the very best chance we can to develop in each one his best abilities. Perhaps even here we may have among our children a future world-renowned engineer, a skillful nurse, a great lawyer, a distinguished inventor or a farmer who will make his fields produce far more than they have ever produced before."

12. The Schools give an Equal Chance to All

Neither the parents nor the towns can tell how valuable a man and woman each boy and girl will become, so all children must be treated as if they might some day

十一 有用的公民較有名的男女爲重要

世界上只需要幾個名人，但需要幾百萬有用的公民。女人若善理家政，不事濫費，並能增進家庭快樂和利益者，男子若能照顧家庭，使田園出產最大之收穫者——這一種男女便是國家強盛的靠山。

國家所要求於學校學生的，就是每個學生要能訓練自己發展其特長。有一個學生，他的特長是當個伶俐的火車頭的調度師，他有海嘯的頭腦，平穩的手腕，能駕駛一輛裝載實貨物的列車，經過風雨和黑暗，毫不畏懼，毫不躲避。還有一個學生，他的特長是知道用木匠的器具去造房子，盡量用忠實的工作去造得堅固。有一個女學生，她的特長是利用巧妙的看護術，救家中或醫院中的人的生命；還有一個女學生，她的特長是在家歡天喜地照顧小孩，有機會時替鄰居做事。國中每個課堂的門上，應寫着這樣的格言：『準備發展你的特長，不問你特長的是什麼。』

自然，就是最小的鄉村也應該說：『我們要把最好的機會給我們兒女，去發展他最好的才能。也許就在此地我們的兒女當中將來有的是世著名的工程師。有的是能幹的看護，有的是大律師，有的是出類拔萃的發明家，或是一個能使他的田地出產較前豐富的農夫。』

十二 學校給大家平等的機會

父母和一般的人都不能說男女兒童將來會成爲怎樣有價值的人，所以看待孩子們，應當把他們看做將來的。

be at the head of the government of the nation. Perhaps some boy just beginning the study of chemistry in the middle school will, many years from now, make an important discovery that will benefit the whole world. Many men have spent their lives searching for a cure for that dreaded disease, cancer. No one has yet succeeded, but in some schoolroom today there may be a boy or girl who will keep on into the middle school, from middle school will go to college, from college will go to medical school, and then after years of patient search will make the great discovery for which the world is anxiously waiting.

The American schoolmaster who, a hundred years ago, taught Cyrus H. McCormick how to multiply mixed fractions probably never dreamed that one day his pupil would invent the reaper and become one of the world's great inventors and manufacturers. When, more than forty-five years ago, Dr. Sun Yat-Sen was quietly studying in a medical school, no one knew that he would be the founder of the Republic of China. It costs a great deal of money to provide school buildings and teachers for all the boys and girls of a country. In each generation few of these students become famous, yet it pays to give them all the best possible training. The services which men like McCormick and Sun Yat-Sen have rendered each to his people, have paid, many times over, for every dollar spent on the schools.

13. Education is becoming Compulsory

Compulsory education means that parents are obliged to send their children to school. The reason for this is to give everybody a chance to succeed and to become an intelligent and useful citizen. Some fathers think they are too poor to send their children to school. Others think that because they have wealth their children do not need to learn arithmetic and history. But the people who make the laws know that neither ignorant poor boys

一國元首一樣。或者有的孩子起初祇在中學裏研究化學，過了幾年他就做了些有益於全世界的發明。許多人費盡一身的光陰，去研究那可怖的毒瘡症。現在還沒有一個研究成功的人，但是現在也許有一個年輕的學生，由中學而專門學校，由專門學校而醫科大學，再費多年功夫的刻苦研究，就能做出全世界迫切期待着的偉大發明。

百年前，美國的一位教授麥康密克學習乘混合分數，也許他從未夢想到他的學生有一天會發明割稻機，並且成爲世界最大的發明家與製造家，大約四十五年以前，當孫中山光生在醫科學校悉心用功的時候，誰都想不到他將來會成爲中華民國的建國者。爲一國的學生設立校舍，聘請教員，需款很大。在每個時代裏，祇有少數的學生能成爲名人，可是學校却須給他們最好的可能的訓練。像麥康密克和孫中山先生一樣的人，他們對於本國人民的服務，在學校方面化了錢而所得却超過不知多少倍數了。

十三 即將形成的強迫教育

強迫教育就是做父母的必須把子女送入學校的意思。這理由是要給人人成功的機會，並且要他做個有知識有用處的公民。有些父母以爲經濟太困難，不能送子女入學。還有些父母，因爲家有財產，不必讓他們的子女學習數學和歷史。但是立法的人知道，不論貧

nor ignorant rich boys ever become very useful or successful. Most nations now have laws requiring parents to send their children to either public or private schools or to teach them at home. A parent may be *fined or jailed* for failure to send a child to school when he is of school age.

A great problem in *compulsory education* is how long children should be kept in school. One fact is that we should like to give each child as advanced an education as possible. Another fact is that the country cannot build schools or train teachers fast enough to *carry the great mass of children beyond a certain point* every year. Some must stop for lack of room and let the new ones *come in at the bottom*. Still another fact is that people in general still believe in only a certain amount of education for a boy and, as a rule, less for a girl. They must, accordingly, themselves be gradually educated to a higher ideal. Then there is *the further question of finance*.

14. Education in a Republic

Only a short time ago people entirely failed to see what we today think was *as plain as the nose on one's face*: that if they expected all the men and women in a nation, not just a selected few, to be useful citizens, they must train all the children, not just a few. If they trained only a few boys and a few girls, twenty years later they would have a nation with small groups of trained men and women, and all the others would be like sheep, to be led or driven as the few desired. Even the sickly children and those who are crippled or blind or deaf are an important part of the people, because they too will be citizens. We must remember that in a few years all *this great land passes over, little by little, into the hands of those who are now its boys and girls*. What becomes of it—whether it advances or declines, whether it remains free or not, whether some seize the rights and property of the others or all have equal justice—these questions depend upon the character of its future citizens and

富的孩子，要是他們無知識，便不能成爲有用的公民。許多國家現在都定了法律，強迫父母把子女送入公立的和私立學校或在家教授他們。若子女已達到入學的年齡，父母不送他們入學，父母就得受罰或拘禁。

強迫教育的一個大問題，便是兒童在校年限的多少，一來人人都想他的子女受高深的教育。二來國家不能很快地每年設立校舍訓練教員，也不能在一定的地方收容多數的學生。有的因爲課堂不敷應用，祇讓新生坐在後排。三則人們仍有舊的觀念，以爲男孩受教育的程度既有限制，而女孩那就更厲害了。因此他們必須自修，漸漸得到較高的程度。此外，更有經費上的問題。

十四 中華民國的教育

不久以前，人們總不及現在看得像鼻子在面上那樣清楚：比如要希望一國的男女——並不限於選出的少數——成爲有用的公民，他們必須訓練所有的孩子，不僅少數而已。若他們祇訓練少數的孩子，那麼二十年後，國內也只是一小部分的男女受過訓練，其他的人就像綿羊一般聽少數人遣這使驅了。就是病孩和那些殘廢的，盲聾的，也是人民的重要分子，因爲他們同樣是公民。我們要記住：這些大塊的土地，幾年之後也會一點點地歸到現代少年男女的手裏。至於這些土地，將來有何變化——不論興盛或衰敗，不論自由或束縛，不論劫奪別人的財產權利或是大家享三平等——種種問題全靠將來公民的人格，

therefore upon the training which the boys and girls of today receive.

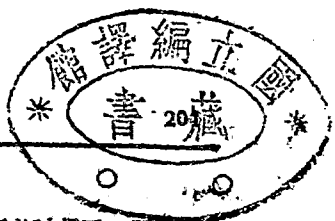
If China is to be a republic no further argument is necessary—she must have *popular education*. That means education of all the people. Every boy and girl is to be a citizen; the citizens are to govern the country; then every boy and girl must be educated. How can a citizen vote intelligently if he does not understand the government, if he does not read the news, if he does not know such things as you are reading in this book? Every citizen must read and understand the newspapers, especially the editorials. He should *read on both sides of every question*. He should read two or three opposing papers, and also books upon public questions.

Information is not enough. The citizens of a *self-governing nation* must be honest and intelligent. They must be trained to think clearly and accurately and to weigh matters and judge justly. Good judgment and honesty are even more important than information, for honest and intelligent people may choose good representatives even if they cannot solve the political problems themselves.

It is not only as voters that citizens must *act with understanding and good judgment and patriotism*, but also in the many ways already mentioned in this book. Good order, laws, safety of property, sanitation, improvements, thrift, and investment—all such things depend upon the education of the people. A few educated leaders and great scientists cannot do anything unless they are supported by the citizens. The work must be done by intelligent workers; it will be paid for only if people understand its value, and it will be approved and appreciated only by an intelligent public opinion.

15. Mass Education Movement in China

One of the most hopeful signs of progress in new China is the *nation-wide movement for the education of the*



所以也就得依賴現在青年男女所受的訓練。

若中國爲一民主國，必須普及教育，這是不必討論了。所謂普及教育即使全國人民都受教育的意，男女兒童是將來的公民；公民是治理國家的；所以每個孩子得受教育。如果一個公民不明白政治，不懂得讀新聞，不知道你在這舉中所讀的事情，他怎能聰明地投票選舉呢？每個公民對於報紙，尤其對於評論，必須能讀能了解。他應當把各種問題的兩面都讀過。他應當讀兩三種以上的反對派的報紙，並討論關於大眾問題的書籍。

消息是不夠的。一個自治國家的公民宜誠實聰明。他們受該訓練，明晰正確地去思想，公正地去評斷，公平的判決和正直，比消息更重要，因爲正直而明智的人，本身雖說不能解決政治問題，却可以選出良好的代表。

公民並非在投票選舉時才有良好的見解，判斷和愛國心，就是在本書中所說的許多地方，也應當有的。整齊的秩序，法律，財產安全，衛生，改革，節儉，投資——這些事情同樣依靠民衆的教育。幾國教育領袖和大科學家要不是受了公民的扶助，他們也不能做什麼事情該由有才幹的人去辦；人民若明白它的價值，那是有利益的，同時憑藉着美好的輿論，它才被發許被重視。

十五 中國的大眾教育運動

在新中國，一種最有希望的進步的象徵，便是全國的大眾教育運動。

masses. It is heartily supported by all public-spirited officials, leading citizens, educators, and students. It is eagerly appreciated by the masses of people themselves. There are millions of children of school age who are not in schools. There are millions and millions of adolescent boys and girls, young men and women, who have never had a chance to go to school, or whose schooling is not sufficient to make it useful. There are many millions of adults who cannot even read or write but are not too old to learn. In the leading countries of the world, the percentage of illiteracy (lack of ability to read or write one's native language) is seldom more than 8 or 9 per cent, but in China it is estimated at 80 per cent. That means out of the 400,000,000 people about 320,000,000 cannot read or write Chinese.

Fortunately "People's Schools" are rapidly increasing in number all over China, in villages as well as in cities. These schools aim to teach the people how to read and write the commonest characters of the Chinese language. In studying this vocabulary they learn simple lessons in personal and public hygiene, civic virtues and duties, knowledge about common objects and affairs, new ways of thinking and doing things, etc. There are special textbooks as well as "follow-up" books, newspapers, and magazines for city people, for village people, for soldiers, and for overseas Chinese. These publications often sell for only two or three cents a copy. School hours are arranged so as not to interfere with the regular work of the people. Tuition is free. Most of the teachers in these schools are patriotic students from middle schools and colleges who gladly volunteer their services. ☉

The removal of illiteracy is only a first step. The Mass Education Movement is carrying on work to show village people how to improve agriculture, to better living conditions, and to secure richer community life. This is a great task that calls for the best consideration and attention of all patriotic citizens of China. Let us spread the good news of the Mass Education Movement, raise

凡是熱心的官吏，領袖的公民，教育家，學生，莫不竭誠擁護。就是大眾自己也很重視它。中國有幾百萬到了入學年錢不能入學的兒童，還有數百千萬少年男女和成年男女，他們永遠沒有進學校的機會，或者他們所受的教育不够應用。更有數百萬的成人不能寫讀，可是他們並未到了老得不能學習的年齡。世界的幾個能要國家，文盲（指不能寫讀本國文學者）的數目，倘不到百分之八九，但在中國卻佔百分之八十。就是說四萬萬人民當中，有三萬二千萬不能寫讀中國的文字。

幸而平民學校在全中國的數目增加得很快，不論在鄉村或城市中都是一樣。平民學校的目的，是在教導人民寫讀中國最普通的文字。在最讀單字時，他們附帶地學習個人衛生和公共衛生，公民的道德和義務，普通事物的常識，思想和做事的新方法等等。有特種的教科書，也有速成的講義，報章，雜誌，都是給城中的人，鄉民，兵士，和華僑預備的。這些印刷品，每份只售二三分錢。上課的時間並不與人民正當工作的時間衝突。學費不收，校裏的教員大多是大中學的愛國學生，他們自願地願盡義務。

減少文盲是唯一的初步辦法。大眾教育運動的工作，是指示鄉村的人民怎樣改良農業，怎樣改善生活狀況，怎樣得到更美滿的團體生活。這種偉大的事業，凡是中國愛國的公民該鄉重考慮和注意的。讓我們傳播大眾教育運動的好消息，

money for its support, volunteer to teach in these schools, and to do everything we can to help the movement.

16. Public Opinion

Public opinion is a powerful thing, as the young people in China have already learned. It has made and destroyed laws and customs, schools and armies, commercial intercourse and even government itself. But public opinion does not always take a wise and beneficial course. It is often blind and foolish. It often destroys what is good and true and sets up in a high place what is false and useless or harmful. It is like fire, water, or wind: it may either serve you or destroy you. It must be tamed and trained. It must be made intelligent. Every boy or girl that is truly educated is a step in that direction, and also an agent for the more rapid education of public opinion.

How is public opinion made in your school? Is it made by the best students? Do you do your part to make it right on every question? Are you brave enough to stand up for good sportsmanship, for cleanness, for the honor of the school, for the protection of school property, for fairness, for an equal opportunity to everyone, for the weak against the strong, for the "under dog," for the rights of the minority, for justice to the one who may be accused by the group? It takes courage to make the right sort of public opinion. What could be more valuable to China now than that sort of courage? It ought to be developed in your school by practice. The real hero is the one who stands for the right, no matter how strong the crowd may be against him.

The newspapers are the greatest makers of public opinion for the province or nation. "The press" is an enormous power in every country. The first periodical ever printed is said to have been the old official gazette of China; but thirty years ago there were still only about 20 Chinese newspapers and magazines in all China, while the number of periodicals in North America, for example

筆款轉動，自動地任教，並且竭盡我們的能力在各方面扶助這種運動。

十六 輿論

中國的青年一向知道，輿論是有權威的東西。它能造成法律，風俗，學校，軍隊，交通，甚至於政府本身，而且它也同樣可以破壞它們。但是輿論並不常向聰明和有益的方向走的。它往往是盲目和愚蠢的。它往往把好的真的毀壞了，把虛偽的，無用的，有害的事業起來。它好像是火，水，風：有益於你，也有害於你。它必須受教化，受訓練。它必須能理解，每個男女受真正的教育，就是向那方向走的步驟，也就是迅速增加輿論教育的主力。

在你的學校裏，輿論是怎樣造就的？是從最優秀的學生造就的嗎？你會盡你的本分，使各個問題導入正規嗎？你可有充分的勇氣去爲好的運動精神，爲清潔，爲學校的名譽，爲保護學校的財產，爲公平，爲人人平等的機會，爲扶弱抑強，爲不幸的，爲弱小者的權利，爲一個人被一羣人控告所受的不平而努力奮鬥嗎？造就公正的輿論是要勇氣的。中國現在有什麼能比那種勇氣更有價值的呢？這種勇氣應在你的校中實習中養成，真正的英雄是擁護公理的，不管大眾是怎樣猛烈地反抗他，

報紙是一省一國最大的輿論造就者。它的力量在各國都是最大的。據說中國最早有的報紙是政府公報；但在三十年以前全中國只有二十種雜誌和報紙，同時光美的

was probably about 15,000. Since 1900, however, and especially since 1911, the number of papers in China has greatly increased. There are now over 1200 registered at the post office. There are still no Chinese papers which have a circulation of 500,000, as some papers in the West have, and there are still no great popular magazines in China and yet the influence of the press in making public opinion is already very great. This means that in the owning and editing of papers and magazines there is need for character and true patriotism, for honesty, courage, and fairness.

17. The Salvation of "White Cloud Village"

See how it works. "White Cloud" is a little village in a valley among the hills; *it might be almost anywhere in China.* "White Cloud" is poor. The houses are in bad condition; the streets are dirty; the people are weak with sickness; the roads are in bad repair; robbers are always present; business is poor; the government is ineffective; there is no public spirit, or public opinion. When you ask what is wrong at "White Cloud," one says there is no educated public opinion or public spirit. Another declares that this is because there are no schools and the people are ignorant, weak and discouraged. Another says, "Yes, but this is only because the streets are unsanitary, the houses leak, the food is poor, and the people do not *save anything against the times when it is needed.*" Then it is declared that all this is merely the natural result of poor business conditions: no money is being made at "White Cloud." But this in turn, they say, is because the roads are broken up and the robbers are bad. But why aren't the robbers caught and the roads made suitable for commerce? It is because there is no good government at "White Cloud." But why not? Because there is not enough general intelligence, public opinion, and public spirit—and that is where we began. We have gone round in a "*vicious circle.*" Is there no way out? At what place is it easiest to break this circle?

定期刊物約有一萬五千種。自從一九〇〇年以來——尤其一九一一年——中國的報紙大有增加。現在在郵局註冊的有一千二百種。但中國報紙的銷數並不像西洋能銷五十萬份，雜誌也不能普及全國，不過在輿論上的勢力却算很大了。這是指報紙和雜誌的發行和閱讀方面，必需人格，真正的愛國心，誠實，勇氣，和正義。

十七 「白雲村」的救濟事業

看看它所做的工作。「白雲村」是山谷中的一個小鄉村；中國到處都有這樣的鄉村。「白雲村」是衰落的。房屋破舊；街道蹙蹙；人民軟弱多病；道路失修；盜賊時常出沒；商業不振；政治腐敗；沒有輿論，也沒有公益的精神。你若問「白雲村」為何落到這地步，有人就會告訴你說，這是因為缺少有知識的輿論和好公益的精神。又有人說，這是因為缺少學校，向時人們又愚笨，軟弱，和殘廢。還有人說：『是的，這是因為街道不衛生，房子破漏，食物不良，人們不知儲蓄以供恐慌時期的需用。』更有人說，這完全由於商業不景氣的自然結果：「白雲村」所以破產咧。他們掉頭又說，這是因為道路破壞盜賊作惡的緣故。可是盜賊為何不捉，道路為何不修，以利商業呢？這是因為「白雲村」沒有良好的行政機關，但又為何沒有良好的行政機關呢？因為缺乏豐富的一般常識，輿論，和公益的精神——這又回到我們起首所說過的地方了。我們繞入那「惡圈子」裏去了。沒有法子可逃嗎？在什麼地方可以容易打破這個圈子呢？

If the government of the province will step in and establish order in this village and compel the people to repair and develop the roads, that will probably break the circle—start business, increase savings, improve conditions, and make it possible to open a good school. This general change for the better will after a time probably develop public opinion and general intelligence, but the change itself will be difficult and slow as long as it works without or against public opinion.

There is another way to break the circle, with or without the government's aid. Somebody in "White Cloud" sends a son or daughter away to school. The young man or woman gets an education and, in a fine spirit of loyalty and service, returns to "White Cloud," becoming the center of life and light and hope and public service. A little school starts of its own accord; it sets an example of repair and cleanliness; it teaches health and sanitation; it brings play and good cheer; it gathers the people together for conference and coöperation; it shows them things worth living for and saving up for; it develops public spirit and public opinion—and the old circle is broken from within. "White Cloud" is filled with pride and ambition. One boy or girl has built the right public opinion.

13. An Inspiring Story

Does the story of "White Cloud Village" seem too good to be true? Here is one about a place that you can go to visit. *Ting Hsien* is a district about six hours' train ride from Peiping. There are about 400,000 people living in about 400 villages in that district. The leaders of the Mass Education Movement have gone there to live, to work, and to coöperate with the people in order to make the district a model for all China.

This is how they began in one of the villages. They discovered that one of the village elders had been to Japan and naturally had some progressive ideas. They told him about their plans to improve the life of his

如果省政府肯出來在這村裏維持秩序，強迫人民修理和發展道路，這或許打開這重圍套——開始營業，增加儲蓄，改良狀況，使有設立正式學校的可能。這種普遍的改革，將來或能發達輿論與普通常識，然而要是沒有輿論或違反了輿論，那麼改革的本身就很難很遲緩了。

尚有另一打破這難關的辦法，或借或不借政府的幫助。「白雲村」的人送一個子女到學校裏去唸書。這個青年男子或女子既受了教育，回到了白雲村時便有忠實服務的精神，同時他們也就成爲生活的，光明的，希望的，公共事業的中心份子了。於是自己開始創辦小學校；樹立整齊的清潔的榜樣；指導健康和衛生；舉行遊戲和良好娛樂；聚集人民開會合作；指示有價值的儲蓄和有意義的生活，發展輿論和公益的精神——這樣，舊的圍套便破除了。「白雲村」從此充滿了光榮和希望。造成正確輿論的，原是一個男女學生而已。

十八 一個勵志的故事

「白雲村」的故事，似乎是好得疑非事實嗎？這裏有一個地方你可以去參觀的。這是定縣；從北平坐火車六小時便能到達。全縣有四十萬人民，分住四百個村莊。大衆教育運動的領袖搬到那邊去住，去工作，去和人民合作，想把這個縣造成全國的模範。

他們就是這樣從一個村莊開始的。他們查出村中有位長老曾經到過日本，他自然有進步思想的。他們告訴他，他們的計劃是在改進人民的生活。

people. He became enthusiastic and went at once to convince the other elders. A committee of ten elders was organized to be responsible for the whole affair. A mass meeting of the village was called, and the elders and the leaders from outside spoke, explaining to the people how every one, young or old, man or woman, could learn to read and write if they would open a "people's school." The people responded immediately. They set aside the village primary school—for they had one—and part of the temple to be used as classrooms. The primary school teacher volunteered to teach at night without pay. Some contributed oil for light. Others gave wood and coal for fire during the winter. A large number of people enrolled, and each paid only twelve cents for the four books used in the course. The success of this school made the people in this village as well as in others want more "people's schools." There are now over 200 of such schools, with nearly 10,000 students in that district. The number is rapidly growing.

But only to learn how to read and write is not enough. The people must get a better living. So a *demonstration farm* was established, and experts went to study how scientific methods might be applied to Chinese agriculture. They have improved the farm tools—the old Chinese plow, the harrow, the planter, the water-wheel, etc. For example, the old water-wheel takes two men to run it and can water only one mou of land; but the new one takes only one man to run it, can water three mou of land, and costs \$2.00 less than the old. They have also been working to improve crops by seed-selection, and chickens, hogs, and sheep by proper breeding. The results of the demonstration farm are always shown to the alumni of the "people's schools" first. Then they go back to their own farms and show them to the other farmers.

The graduates and alumni of the "people's schools" are organized into "*alumni associations*." They are very active in promoting all kinds of public welfare work. They kill flies, plant trees, build roads, organize clubs, carry on inter-village athletics, stage modern plays, and

他聽了就很熱心地立刻去召集別的長老。委員會由十個長老組織起來，且由他們全部負責。於是召集村民會議，長老與來賓的領袖對人民演說，大意謂：假使開辦平民學校，無論男女老幼，就都能學習讀書寫字。村民立即答應贊成。他們除設立村中原有的小學外，又借用廟宇的一部分作為課堂。小學的教員都願在晚上任教，且不支薪金。有的捐燈油，有的捐柴炭，以備冬日生火。報名的人很多，每人只化一角二分錢，就買了四部教科書。因了這所學校的成功，使本村與別村的人更要多開平民學校。現在定縣有二百所學校，成萬的學生。數目還在迅速地增加着。

但是單知寫讀還不夠的。人民必須有較好的生活。所以設立農事試驗場，並請專家研究怎樣的科學方法始適用於中國的農業。他們改良農具——如中國舊式的犁，耙，種植器具，水車等等。例如舊式的水車用兩人的力轉動，只能灌溉一畝田；新式的只用一人的力轉動，卻能灌溉三畝田，並且價錢還比舊式的便宜兩元。他們也用選種法改良收穫，用相宜的養畜法改良雞、豬、羊等家畜。最先看見農事試驗場成績的，是平民學校畢業的學生，等到他們回到自己農村後，又將還去告訴別的農民。

平民學校畢業生組織畢業生同學會。他們很活動的促進各種公益事業。檢撲滅蒼蠅，種植森林，建築道路，組織俱樂部，舉行各村聯合運動會，排演現代劇，

even organize a self-defence unit against bandits. The whole life of the people has been changed, because a group of educated young people went there in a spirit of service. Many of them had studied education, agriculture, medicine, engineering, etc., in foreign countries and have received the Ph.D. degree. Yet they have gone "back to the masses" to work, to serve, and to live. If all this can be accomplished at Ting Hsien, why can't it be done all over China? Who will do the work, if not those who enjoy such educational opportunities as you now do?

19. Higher Education

The stories of "White Cloud Village" and Ting Hsien, you will say, show that the higher education of a few is important as well as the general education of the many. Yes; we have already discussed the great importance of scientific and professional education. Between general elementary education and professional training there is a *great middle ground* that may be called higher general education or lower technical education. Here the teachers of the elementary schools are educated for their important work. Many of those who are leaders in their communities, such as business men, officers, clerks, agents, are educated here. Some go to college and become editors, officials, statesmen. Some go on to professional schools of medicine, engineering, etc.

It is sometimes necessary for a family to make a sacrifice so that one of their number can go on to a higher education. Perhaps several must *bow down to lift one up*. That is the meaning of the picture called "Getting an Education by Somebody's Sacrifice." What a return of love and service should be made to the family and community where the sacrifice was made!

In a certain home there were two boys, ten and fourteen years old, and a girl of twelve. The father was dead. The mother wanted all the children to have a middle-school education; but this was impossible, for they were

甚至組織保衛團抵禦土匪。因為有一般受過教育的青年設法服務的精神對那邊去，人民的全部生活已經改良了；他們有的曾經在外國留學，研究教育，農業，醫藥，機械等等，得到哲學博士學位的。可是他們依舊『到民間去』工作，服務，生活。假使這些事業在定縣能做成功，又為什麼不能普及全國呢？如果像你這樣享受教育的人不去服務，敢問還有誰去服務呢？

十九 高等 教育

從「白雲村」和定縣的故事，你可能證明少數人的高等教育和多數人的普通教育是一樣重要的。是的，我們已討論過科學教育和職業教育的重要了。在普通初等教育和職業訓練中間，有個很大的基礎，那就是高等的普通教育和低級的職業教育。小學教員須受過高等教育，始能勝任重要的工作。一般的社會領袖，如商人，官員，書記，經紀人，都受這種教育。有的進了專門學校，造就而為編輯，官吏和政治家。有的進了職業學校，如醫學校，工程學校等等。

有時為了家中一人要受教育，以致犧牲了全家的人。好似要把一個人舉高，其餘的人都得屈着身體。這裏的一張畫：『犧牲了別人而受了自己的教育，』就是指這個意思。對於為他犧牲的家庭和社會，他是應當怎樣去報答這恩惠和功勞呢？

某家庭中有個女孩十二歲，有兩個男孩，一個十歲，一個十四歲，父親死了。母親想讓所有的孩子都受中中教育；但這是不可能的，因為他們

poor. So she told them that they must decide which one should be sent away to school. The girl and the ten-year-old boy decided that the older brother should be the one to have the chance.

20. Elementary Education

The sacrifice of the many who will never receive more than an elementary education makes us all the more eager to make that elementary education our first object. The old saying is that it must be chiefly reading, writing, and arithmetic. These subjects are, of course, the foundation, both for *everyday general intelligence* and for further study. He must try to make the reading such that a pupil after three or four years of study can really read and enjoy reading. Writing must be such that the pupil can write letters that are clear and correct. Arithmetic must prepare the pupil to make really useful calculations. His education, however, must give him far more than the ability to handle words and figures. When he reads, he should read something interesting and instructive. He must know about his own people and his own locality—its business, its needs, its history, its progress. Above all, he must obtain a knowledge of how to live and to keep well and to be of use.

The elementary schools are the hope of China's success as a republic. Are they important? They are to be *centers for the spread of ideas* and the brightening of the community. Are they useful? They are to be *the channel through which public opinion will be formed* and the character of each new generation be developed. Can we neglect one of these elementary schools? Do we *believe in patriotism*? Well, here are the centers of patriotism. Do we believe in the uplift of the nation? Well, here are the means for that uplift.

太窮了。所以母親告訴他們，叫他們自己決定誰能進中學。女孩和十歲的男孩便決定由他們的大哥享受這機會。

二十 初 等 教 育

許多人受了犧牲，仍不能得到初等教育以上的教育，所以我們更要竭力主張初等教育是我們的第一目標了。世俗告訴我們，初等教育最主要的是讀，寫，算。自然，這些科目一來是日常的普通常識的基礎，二來是高深學問的基礎。關於讀的程度，我們必須使一個學生讀了三四年書後，確能閱讀並能感着深讀的興趣。關於寫的程度，學生應當能寫清楚通順的書信。關於算的程度，要使學生確實知道有用的計算。但是，學生所受的教育應有超過文字和數字的能力。他應讀有趣味有教育意味的讀物。他應明白他自己的人民和地方——包括着本地的商業，本地的需要，本地的歷史，和本地的進展。最要緊的，他必須有一種知識，知道怎樣生活，怎樣衛生，怎樣有用。

中國的成爲民主國，其希望即在初等小學。這些初等小學重要嗎？它們是散佈思想遠播社會的中心機關。這些初等小學有用嗎？它們是造成輿論，發展新時代特質的必由之路。我們能漠視它們嗎？我們有愛國的信心嗎？好了，這些就是愛國的中心。我們有興旺國家的信心嗎？好了，這些就是興旺國家的手段。

21. Who will do the Work?

There may be as many as 100,000,000 boys and girls in China today who are or who should be in an elementary school. If we allow one teacher for every 25 pupils, we need 4,000,000 teachers. If every pupil in every elementary school now recognized by the government should become a teacher, it would not give the required number. How many of them will teach? How difficult is our problem of supplying teachers?

There must be more schools. Let us demand more schools. Let us fill the land with the patriotic cry of "More schools!" Let us *make life miserable* for any official or citizen who is so blind and unpatriotic as to oppose or neglect the schools. Schools must be supported. Teachers must be paid well, and paid regularly and promptly. Villages and cities must be required by law to provide schools for all children just as fast as they can find teachers for them. Parents must be persuaded and even compelled to support the schools and send their children. One question is, Who is going to push this matter of schools? Another is, Who is going to teach in the schools? Young citizens of China, what is your answer? Is there any more patriotic service you can render than setting an example of public-spirited devotion by giving yourself to the development of some school and the teaching of some group of our boys or girls?

22. Women and Education

We have said that all the people ought to be educated—this includes girls as well as boys. We have said that all the citizens ought to work for the development of education throughout the land—this includes women as well as men. We have suggested that all of you ought to be ready to do your part in teaching—this includes the girls even more than the boys. Girls make good teachers. They are high-minded and earnest and have a natural liking for children. In America the education of the boys

二一 誰擔任這工作

中國今日有一萬萬少年男女應受小學教育，或正在受小學教育。如果在二十五個學生中需要一位教員，則中國須聘四百萬教員。若政府承認每個小學校的學生都有一日當教員的資格，恐怕所需要的教員數目還不夠吧。他們中間有多少能教書呢？我們供給教員的問題是如何困難啊！

所以還要多設學校。讓我們要求多設學校。讓我們在各處呼喊「多設學校」的口號。對於一般盲目的，不愛國的，或反對或漠視教育的官吏和公民，我們要叫他們受一點痛苦的生活。學校須受資助。教員待遇宜厚，且必按時發薪。法律得規定凡鄉村或城市都應為全體兒童聘請教員，正如他們設立學校一樣重要。做父母的應受勸導，甚至受強迫去扶助學校，並送子女入學唸書。一個問題是：誰去促進學校事業呢？還有一個問題是：誰去當教員呢？中國的青年公民呀，你們的回答是怎樣的呢？還有比以身作則，熱心公益，獻身教育，訓導男女孩子更愛國的事業嗎？

二二 婦女與教育

我們已經說過，人民都應當受教育——這裏所包括的是指女孩和男孩。我們也已說過，所有的公民應為全國做發展教育的工作——這裏所包括的是指成年的男女。我們也曾提議過，你們都應當預備盡教導的職務——這裏所包括的是指女的比男的成分為多。女的可成為好教員。她們里胡高尚，精神熱烈，且有愛護孩子的天性。在英屬，

and girls up to the high school is almost entirely in the hands of women. Some of the highest educational officials are women. For the sake of education in China there ought now to be just as many girls in school as boys.

Intelligent women are especially interested in education. Many a man's fortune and fame have been made by the patient insistence of his mother that he go on studying. In some Western countries women were given the vote first upon educational matters. They have been put upon school boards and employed as inspectors and supervisors. In many places they have more to do with educational affairs than have the men. They urge the people to put more into the schools. They keep the government from forgetting education. They insist upon school taxes, and they watch to see that the money is well spent. They can talk and they can write and they can vote; therefore attention has to be paid to them. We speak of patriotic women—here in education is one of the greatest fields for the patriotic service of women to enrich and ennoble life in China.

"Woman's place is in the home" is an old saying. There is much truth in it, but woman's place is wherever she is needed.

We have said that one of the greatest fields of patriotic service for women is in education. Women are needed as teachers, matrons, principals, promoters, superintendents, supervisors, and as voters and taxpayers. That is one great reason why the women of China must be educated. But there are many other reasons.

Educated women are needed to do a large part of all the work for China that we are discussing in this book. They choose foods wisely, prepare them properly, keep them free from disease germs. They understand clothing, home-furnishing, sanitation, protection of health, nursing. They work for public-health laws, the protection of children, order and justice. They make homes happy and good. That is the greatest patriotic service. They

直到高等學校爲止，所有的男女教育，完全操在女子手中。有些最高的教育人員，也是由女子擔任的。爲着中國的教育，現在學校中的女生同男生一樣多。

知識婦女，對於教育特別關心。好多男子的幸運和名譽，全靠母親的堅忍不拔，促其繼續求學造成的。在西洋各國，對於教育事業，婦女有首先投票的優先權。她們在學校裏或當職員，或任調查，或充舍監。有的地方，她們所辦的教育事業比男子還多。她們鼓勵人家多向學校捐款。她們督促政府勿忘教育。她們主持學校稅捐，並監視其正當用途。她們能講能寫能選舉，所以人家也就對她們注意了。我們稱譽愛國的婦女——因爲婦女在教育上是愛國事業最大活動範圍之一，可以增進並且提高中國的生活。

『婦女的地位只限家庭，』這是過去的論調。裏面固然也有若干真理，但婦女的地位是在任何被需要的地方的。

我們已說過婦女最大的愛國事業是在教育。凡是教員，保姆，校長，發起人，監督，視察員，投票人，納稅員，都需要婦女擔任。這便是中國婦女必須受教育的最大原因。但此外尚有許多別的原因。

中國需要受過教育的婦女辦理各種事情，這就是我們在本書中所要討論的。她們敏於選擇食物，烹調得法，防止微菌。她們懂得製衣，家庭佈置，衛生，健康保護和看護。她們實施公共健康的章程，保護兒童，維持秩序，主持公道。她們使家庭快樂幸福。這便是最大的愛國事業。她們

do a thousand small things that develop good communities to live in. They support useful institutions. They even manage large business affairs. They work for better towns and cities. Girls and women are half of the people. There is every reason why they should be educated and given a full half of the nation's work to do.

The binding of girls' feet ties them to their own homes. It not only makes them suffer and prevents them from playing outdoors and growing up to be strong and healthy women, but it also keeps them from going out into the world to do what women can do as citizens and workers. Foot-binding is an injury to the nation. So, too, is the neglect of the health and education of girls. When they are not sent to school, it is like binding their growing minds. This also keeps them too much in the house. Their minds are tied to a little circle of home duties and small talk. They cannot do their work in the world. Even if that work is in the home only, it ought to be done in an intelligent and broad-minded and patriotic way. China is now making laws that prohibit foot-binding and the neglect of the education of girls as well as boys.

23. Lend a Hand!

A man struggling in the water cries, "Help! lend a hand!" Would any man, woman, or child be so cold and hard-hearted as to refuse? Even a dog will often leap to the rescue. A man who would refuse or hinder the poor fellow in distress should be punished as a criminal and scorned as unworthy of any respect.

The schools in China are struggling like a man in deep water. They lack teachers, they lack good books of many kinds, they lack buildings and equipment, they lack encouragement and money. Do you think often of how you can help your school? If you help one school, you help education in China. If you can write a good story for children, you may help a thousand schools. In many ways a student can help education by helping his

做了千種小的事情，發展良好的社會，使人民安住其間。她們扶助有益的制度。她們甚至經營大規模的商務。她們在較著名的城邑中工作，女孩與婦人佔人民的半數。她們應當受教育，竭力擔任全國的一半事業，這是有充足理由的。

女孩的纏足，是使她的束縛在家庭中的。這不但使她們受痛苦，阻止她們作戶外遊戲，不能長成強壯健康的婦女，並且也妨害她們去做婦女應做的公民和工人的事務。纏足是有害於國家的。忽略女孩的健康與教育，也是一樣有害。她們若不入學，就等於思想上受束縛。這也使她們常守窠中。她們的思想被那小範圍的家務和微小的閒談所拘住。她們就不能在世界上做那些事業。縱使這種工作是在家裏做的，也應該用聰明的，有眼光的，愛國的方法做出來。中國現在所訂的法律，有禁止纏足和漠視男女教育的數端。

二三 援 手 吧

一個人在水中掙扎時，呼喊道：『救命！援救我，拉我上岸吧！』難道有這樣冷酷這樣心硬的男女和孩子會拒絕或他的要求嗎？就是一隻狗也要跳下去去救他呢。一個拒絕或妨害受難者的人，應照罪犯處罰，受人藐視，不值尊敬的。

中國的學校好像一個在深水中掙扎的人。它們缺少教員，缺少各種好的課本，缺少校舍和設備，缺少勇氣和金錢。你常想怎樣幫助你的學校嗎？假使你幫助一個學校，你總是幫助中國的教育。假使你能寫完這篇一個好的故事，你就可以幫助千個學校了。一個學生能幫助他的學校，就能用各種方法幫助教育了。

own school. Many a school in China has been almost destroyed by the students themselves. A *school strike* is a dangerous thing. It usually destroys interest and confidence in the school, discourages those who work for the school, makes it difficult to get teachers and officers, and keeps away good students. It is impossible for the students to manage a school, because they change too much from year to year both *in personnel and in ideas*. Now when education is struggling so hard, let us students and teachers confer together as to how we can cooperate to make our school better. Let us be *the last ones on earth* to do anything to discourage or destroy a school, our own or even a rival school.

24. How we can help our School

1. We can do our best in athletics and drills, so that our school will be in fine health and vigor.

2. We can do our best in all public sports or on other occasions, so that our school will have as high a place as possible among schools.

3. We can *conduct ourselves well on the streets* and wherever we go, so that people will say that it is a good thing to put money into a school like ours.

4. We can study, so that the result of our life will be good and people will appreciate our school.

5. We can do our best to protect school property, so that the school will not waste any time or money or be hindered in its progress.

6. We can keep things clean and orderly, so that the school will not be put to expense and so that its appearance will always be pleasing to ourselves as well as to visitors.

7. We can observe the rules, and conduct ourselves properly, so that the teachers and officers can devote themselves to their work and not have to spend valuable time and energy in discipline.

8. We can be cheerful and friendly, so that *school life will run smoothly* and all may be encouraged.

9. We can talk things over with our teachers and officers, frankly but sympathetically, so that all can work together in full understanding under the leadership of the school.

10. We can discuss these nine methods now, deciding upon a length and maybe every week.

• 中國的許多學校差不多是由學生自己破壞了的。罷課是危險的事情。它常損失學校的利益和信譽，使辦學的人灰心，使更難聘教職員，使優秀的學生遠離而他去。由學生來管理學校是不可能的，因為他們在人數和思想方面是年年變動的。當這教育正在困苦掙扎期中，讓我們師生共同商議，討論如何合作改進我們學校的辦法。• 如果要做損害或破壞學校的事情——不管是我們自己的或敵對的學校——讓我們列在世界上人羣中最末了的一個吧。

二四 我們怎樣幫助學校

(1) 我們盡力去從事運動，去鍛鍊，使我們的學校都很健康而有精神。

(2) 在公共遊戲或是別的機會上，我們要盡我們的力量，使我們的學校在各校中居於最高的地位。

(3) 我們走在街上或到任何的地方去，品行總要端莊，使人們承認，把錢捐到像我們這樣的學校，是一件值得的事情。

(4) 我們要用心讀書，使我們的生活有良好的成績，同時使人家重視我們的學校。

(5) 我們要竭力保護學校的產業，使學校不致白費光陰，金錢，或受妨礙而不能進步。

(6) 我們要保持物件清潔整齊，使學校不致濫費，並且參觀者和我們自己看了那外觀，也就一樣歡心了。

(7) 我們要遵守規則，尊重禮貌，使教職員盡心於原有的職務，不必費寶貴的光陰和精力管束我們。

(8) 我們要快樂親愛，使學校生活進行順利，一切發奮有為。

(9) 我們要與教職員坦白地同情地討論一切，使大家在學校的領導之下，充分瞭解地共同工作。

(10) 我們現在只討論這九種方法。並且也可以討論第十種或再多幾種。

QUESTIONS AND EXERCISES

1. Who was Rousseau? What service did he render to humanity?
2. Describe a favorite outdoor game so that one who has never played it can understand it.
3. Write a few paragraphs on the value of recreation.
4. Tell why child labor is an evil.
5. Why should cities provide playgrounds for the children?
6. Tell of a few of the things that the United States has done or is doing for its children.
7. Explain how education builds bridges.
8. Discuss the value of compulsory education.
9. Do you know of any "White Cloud Village"? What do you suggest to improve conditions there?
10. Discuss the statement "The elementary schools are the hope of China's success as a nation."
11. Name a few of the patriotic services that educated women can render to the Chinese nation.
12. Can you think of any other ways besides those mentioned in the text in which you can serve your school?

問答練習題

- (1) 盧瑟是誰？他對於人類完成了些什麼工作？
- (2) 描寫一種有趣的戶外運動，使未玩過的人也能明白。
- (3) 寫幾段文章說明運動的價值。
- (4) 童工是一種罪惡，試說明其理由。
- (5) 為什麼城市應當為兒童設立運動場？
- (6) 說幾種美國曾經或正在為兒童做的工作。
- (7) 解釋教育上能幫助建築橋梁的理由。
- (8) 論強迫教育的價值。
- (9) 你會知道像「白雲村」一樣的村莊嗎？你在那邊有什麼改良狀況的建議呢？
- (10) 「中國的成為國家，其希望即在於初等小學。」試言其故。
- (11) 舉幾種受過教育的婦女能替中國做的愛國事業。
- (12) 除了在這本教科書上所述的以外，你能想出別種方法去服務你的學校嗎？

CHAPTER XVI

LIBERTY, LAW, AND ORDER

1. The Tenth of October

Independence Day means Liberty Day, October 10 is the day on which we celebrate China's *freedom from the rule of the Manchus*. When the word "liberty" is used in China it usually means freedom from the control of the Manchu emperors and empresses. The Chinese people threw off that rule and became independent. They gained the right to *disobey the orders of the Manchus*. They cut off their *queer-looking queues*, and stopped wearing the old official hats and gowns. They no longer paid respect to the yellow-dragon flag, and they *refused to have Manchu officials appointed to rule in the capitals of the provinces*. They *decided after long centuries of Manchu power, to found a republic ruled by themselves and based on the consent of the governed*. This was indeed a remarkable forward step in the history of the country.

These, however, are small matters after all. What change of importance was brought about by the establishment of the Republic? Was it only that a Chinese ruler was put up in place of a Manchu ruler? That might or might not be a great change, depending upon the characters of the rulers. The great change was that all over China there *was established the idea that the people are not ruled over by anybody but themselves*. They are free. They have won their liberty. The fight has been hard, and many sacrifices have been made. Recall what we have already read about the heroes of the Revolution.

第十六章 自由、法律、和秩序

一 雙十節

國慶日就是自由紀念日。雙十節是我們慶祝中國脫離滿洲統治的日子。「自由」兩字在中國用的時候，總是指解脫滿洲帝王及皇后的統治。中國人推翻了那種統治，宣告獨立。他們奪得了反抗滿洲政府命令的威權。他們剪去醜陋的辮子，不穿舊式官場的衣帽。他們不再尊重黃龍旗，拒絕滿人充當各省的官吏。在滿人勢力之下經過了若干年代，他們纔建立共和，實行自治，大獲民心。這確是一國歷史上很明顯的進步。

但是，這些事情還算是小的。由建設民主國所發生的重要改革是什麼呢？是不是把中國的統治者來代替滿洲的統治者呢？這到底是多絕大的改革，須看統治者的性質而定。所謂大的改革，在乎全國都能建設一種思想，使人民不受治於人而受治於己。他們自由了。他們已奪得他們的自由了。這奮鬥是很困難的，而且也會經過若干犧牲的。回想回想我們讀過的那些革命英雄吧。

2. Every Citizen should value Liberty and use it Properly

Every Chinese must love the liberty that has been won for him.

To love liberty means *to value it properly*. You have learned that the foundation of the Republic of China is liberty. Therefore, *if a citizen learns only one lesson well, it should be how to use the liberty that is given him.*

Liberty is far more precious than dollars. It is never given to little children, and *to older ones only bit by bit as they learn what it is*. Boys and girls do not have full liberty until they are twenty-one; even then many of them cannot safely be trusted with it. The one who has to be watched to see that he studies, the one who cheats *unless the teacher's eye is on him*, the one who *takes advantage of the teacher's absence to waste school materials or damage property*, the one who gets permission to go to one place and then goes somewhere else,—these students have not yet learned to use liberty. If you want to test yourself to find out whether you can be trusted with liberty, see whether you need to be watched.

But earning the right to have liberty for yourself means something more than being honest. It means being able to use it properly. A four-year-old child must not have liberty to eat what it pleases. A child must learn a great deal before it knows enough to be trusted with freedom. Before you can spend all your time as you please, you must learn what kind of work and what kind of pleasures will be best for you. These cannot be learned in a few weeks.

Thoughtful men have declared that *in order to judge a person* you must know how he spends his leisure; that is, *his hours and days of liberty*. The superintendent of a large shoe factory once said that he did not like holidays because the workmen made more bad mistakes the following day than at any other time. "I think it must be

二 公民應重視自由並善用自由

每個中國人應當愛護他所爭得的自由。

愛護自由 就是重視它的正當用途的意思。你已知道，中華民國的基礎是自由。所以，一個公民最要緊要的一種教訓，便是怎樣利用給他的那項自由。

自由比金錢更寶貴。小孩是不能給他們自由的，就是年齡較大的，也須等他們懂得什麼是自由之後，才可一點點的給他們。青年男女非到二十一歲並不能過對自由；就是到了那年齡，也不能安心地把自由委託他們中的許多人的。一個學生要人家監督他讀書，一個學生要教員看管着才不亂人，一個學生趁教員不在的時候，耗費學校的用具或損害學校的財產，一個學生請假到甲地去的，他卻轉往乙地——這些學生都不明白自由的用處。如果你要試驗你自己能否受自由的信託，你得看看自己是否要被入監督。

可是，爲自己取得自由權，單是誠實也還不夠。你還得善用自由才對。一個四歲的小孩不能有任意吃東西的自由。一個小孩先須多多學習，然後始可給予自由。當你在任意利用你的時間以前，你先得知道那那種工作或那種娛樂於你沒有益。這些事不能在幾星期內學成的。

有思想的人們曾經說過，你若想批評一個人，你必須知道他怎樣利用閒暇；所謂閒暇是指自由的日子和鐘頭。一男大鞋廠的監督說，他不喜歡放假，因爲放假的次日，工人成羸便不及平日好。他說：『我想這一定是』

because they don't know how to make the best use of their spare time. They come back tired instead of rested." Thousands of people have never learned *how best to enjoy a holiday*, or even a leisure hour. They did not begin to learn when they were young.

Many a business man can and does spend every day in the week doing exactly as he pleases. But what he pleases is to plan out carefully both his work and his pleasures. The persons who value liberty most are those who make the best use of it. These are your learning days. Remember that often the most important difference between a person who stays poor and one who becomes prosperous is that the one knows how to use his liberty (which is often called opportunity), and the other does not. Liberty does not mean letting chance use you—it means *doing away with chance*.

3. What is Liberty?

So many people have a wrong idea of what liberty is that we must be sure that *we have it clearly and correctly in mind*. Some people think that liberty means only that we are *not ruled over by anyone from the outside*, that the official is a native. Many a little town has refused to have a good man fill an office simply because he was not born in that town. That is not the real meaning of liberty. In some of the most modern and advanced cities in the West the people do not hesitate to send to some other city and employ a manager to come and control their city for them. They do not care where he was born if he gives them good service.

Some people think liberty means that the officers are elected, and that the people vote on every question; but, as we shall see in the next chapter, the most despotic, unjust, and dangerous rulers are sometimes the result of that kind of government. Voting is not freedom, and *freedom may or may not come through voting*.

他們不知善用閒暇的緣故。他們回到工廠時，比不休息更疲倦呢。』無數的人不知享受他們的假日，就是一小時的空閒也不能享受。他們在年青時代，根本就沒有學習過。

許多商人能任意地在一週中天天消閒。但他是把他所歡喜的工作和享樂很小心地計劃着的。凡是重視自由的人，就是善用自由的人。現在是你們求學的日子。要記着：一個人的貧苦和發達的最大區別，是在前者知道怎樣利用自由，（自由又常稱爲機會）而後者則不知道。自由並不是說讓機會利用你——乃是說你去利用機會。

三 自由是什麼

許多人誤解了自由的意義，所以我們在腦中務必有個明白正確的解釋。有人以爲自由的真諦是不受外人的統治，官吏應當由本地人充任。有若干小邑，拒絕好人去做他們的官吏，祇是因爲他不是本邑人。這不是自由的真諦。西洋最現代先進的城市，毫不猶豫地遣送本城的人到別的城市去，或聘請他鄉的執事來到本城替他們辦事。他們不計較他所出身的地點，祇要他能給他們好的工作。

有人以爲自由的意思，就是官吏須自選舉而來，並以爲人民對於各種問題有選舉權；但是，在下一章裏我們便可明白，那種最專制的，最不公平的，最危險的統治者，有時倒反是那種政治的結果。選舉並不是自由，而自由固然是從選舉裏產生出來，但也不一定是這樣。

Some people think that liberty means no control—that a free person is one who can do as he pleases, that he is not like a horse or an ox in being held back or pushed forward or turned this way or that. *If liberty means license, the chance to do as you please, then there is no such thing as liberty in all the world.* In a state of anarchy, with no laws, police, or government, you may come or go, work or loaf, steal or kill, but you have no real liberty. You are in constant fear that someone may stop you or rob you or even kill you. In a savage land where there are no rules of any kind, or on a lonely island where there is no one to oppose you, your liberties are almost all lost; you can do nothing worth while; *your circle of freedom is useless because it is so small.* On the other hand, one's opportunities are greatest in some place where government is strong and laws are many and officers are strict. Liberty, then, is not license. *License is the opportunity to act regardless of other people; liberty is the opportunity to act in such a way as not to interfere with the opportunity of others.* When license increases, liberty decreases. It is, then, very important that all people should understand and value liberty, but fight against license and the disregard of the rights of others as they would fight against a cruel invader.

4. How is Liberty Secured?

Liberty has two sides: a negative side and a positive side. In a certain town there was no protection of liberty. A man one day took a bag of coins from his home and started for a bank. He was stopped by a group of men who took his money away from him. He went on to the bank. There he was told that even if he brought money it could not be invested for him, because business was too uncertain. That man had neither the liberty to keep his money nor the chance to use it. He lacked both protection and opportunity. He might have bought a gun and thus protected himself, but that would not have made it possible for him to carry on business or enjoy the

有人以為自由是廢除管理的意思——一個自由的人可以隨意行動，不像一匹牛或一匹馬要受人勒住，或向前走，或轉這邊，或轉那邊。如果自由是放縱，任憑你的機會去行動，那麼世界便無自由這件東西了。在一個混亂的國家裏，沒有法律，沒有警察，沒有政府。你可任意來往，工作或遊蕩，盜竊或殺人，但你還是沒有真正的自由。你永遠在恐怖中，怕有人阻攔你，搶劫你，甚至殺害你。在野蠻的地方，並無任何規律，或在一個荒島上並無誰來反抗你，你的自由也差不多全失了；你不能做出有價值的事情；你的自由是無用的，因為範圍太小了。反過來說，若在強固的政府統治之下，有繁複的法律，有嚴厲的官吏，一個人的機會也就愈大。這樣看來，自由並非是放縱的。放縱乃是以行動不顧別人利害的一種機會；自由却是以行動不干涉別人的機會的一種機會。所以放縱增加，自由減少。由此可知：最要緊的是人們應當明瞭自由，重視自由，然而反抗放縱，反抗漠視他人的利益，正如反抗暴虐的侵略者一樣。

四 怎樣獲得自由

自由有兩方面：消極的自由和積極的自由。在某城中，並無自由於保障。有一天，一個人拿着一袋錢從家裏走到銀行去。他在路中，被一羣人攔住，把他的錢都搶去了。他仍舊上銀行去。在那邊，有人告訴他，就是他把錢送進去，銀行也不能替它投資，因為營業太不穩定。那個人既無保存錢的自由，也無利用它的機會。他缺少保障和機會。也許他可以買枝槍用作自衛，但是一來不便繼續做生意，

opportunities that his community and his wealth ought to have furnished.

How is this double liberty to be secured?

In a certain city there was a vacant lot *just the right size for small boys to play football on*. All the small boys in the neighborhood were at liberty to play there every afternoon. Some boys would begin to kick a ball back and forth east and west on the lot. Other boys would come in with a ball and begin to play north and south. Then there would be confusion and argument and waste of time. Sometimes there would be a fight, and all playing would have to stop. Stones were thrown from one part of the field to another, and the field became rough and dangerous. Parents began to refuse to let their sons go there to play. Gradually the use of the field was lost to all except a few big rough boys, and they could get up only a very poor game. Finally one day a young man called together some of these boys and said, "Why not let some boys play on the field one day and the others the next?" One fellow answered, "Because we all have the liberty to use it every day, and, besides, *suppose it rains on my day*." Then the man answered: "No, it is very clear that you have lost the liberty to play on it, for you never have a good game. You not only lose the field when it rains but also when it does not rain. Furthermore, even when you play you cannot get up a really good game." The boys agreed that this was correct and asked, "But how can you help it?" The answer was: "Three things are necessary. We must form teams with captains; we must make rules about when each team is to play; and we must cooperate, as a group of all the boys in this community, to keep the rules and to clear off all the stones and put up goal posts." Needless to say, this was all quickly done, and *the liberty to use the field was enjoyed to the full*. Notice that three things—organization, restrictions, and cooperation—were necessary to secure real liberty, and that each of them was first a sacrifice of some liberty. By sacrificing small liberties, these boys

二來又不能享受社會和他的財產所給予的機會。

這兩種自由要怎樣纔能獲得呢？

在某城中，有塊空地，恰够作爲小孩踢足球之用，所有鄰近的小孩，每天午後，都自由地在那邊遊玩。有的小孩開始在空地上踢着足球，踢到前，踢到後，踢到東，踢到西。還有一般小孩也拿球開始玩着，踢到南，踢到北。於是場內秩序大亂。議論紛紛，濫費了好多時間。有時他們打起架來，各種的遊戲都得停止。石子從這邊拋到那邊，這塊空地也就變成粗暴的危險地帶了。做父母的，於是不讓他們的子女進去玩耍。漸漸地，那塊空地，除去幾個粗野的大孩子去玩以外，便無其他孩子的足跡，而且他們也玩得毫無興趣了。末了，有一天，一個青年召集了幾個孩子，對他們說：『爲什麼不輪流日子，今天讓這羣孩子來玩，明天讓那羣孩子來玩呢？』有一個回答道：『因爲我們每天都有到這兒來玩的自由，況且我若輪着下雨天呢？』青年於是解釋道：『不是，這顯然你在場上已失去遊戲的自由，因爲你永遠得不到有趣的玩意。不但雨天你失去這塊地，晴天也是一樣的。而且就讓你玩，你也不能得着遊戲的真意義。』孩子們贊成這種主張，然後問道：『可是你有什麼辦法沒有呢？』回答是：『有三件要緊的事。我們先組織成隊，在隊中選舉隊長；我們訂定規則，讓各隊的人遊戲；我們都是社會上的兒童，我們必須合作，遵守規則，清除石子，樹立球門。』不用說，這些事很容易地辦到了，用這塊地的自由，也就使大家享受着了。注意這三件事情——組織，限制，合作——是獲得真自由的主要東西，不過無儘那一件，起初總得犧牲一點自由。仗着犧牲小的自由，這些小孩

were able to secure a great liberty. If this is the secret of securing liberty, let us look into it more fully.

5. Organization

An organization is a group of people having certain aims and certain rules. It may be an organization of boys to buy a boat, or of robbers to steal the boat, or of police to catch the robbers, or of citizens to pay and encourage the police. It may be an organization of girls to learn more English, or of teachers to help them, or of a school to help both, or of citizens to support the school. It may be good or bad, large or small, wise or foolish, old or new, *for business or against business*, but it is a working together for certain purposes which can be attained better by group effort than by working separately.

You may say that this is true of a man's body or of an engine, both of which are made up of parts working together for certain purposes. Certainly it is the way of the world. The same principle of organization is in everything that grows and everything that men develop. You may say that civilization is the increasing and developing of more and more effective organizations.

Strange to say, *the more the world of men and things is organized*, provided that the organizations are wise and efficient, the more liberty has the individual. Science has discovered wonderful things; but organizations have spread that science, have published the facts about it, have made it useful, have brought it to the people, and have taught the people the best ways to enjoy it and have protected them in its use. Just think how many things we can do today that our grandfathers could not do. *We can talk to people at a distance; we can send a message across the ocean in a few minutes; we can read about what happened all over the world only yesterday; we can ride at a mile a minute; we can go from one end of the country to the other in a few days; we can fly through the air and go under the sea; we can send money*

才能獲得大的自由。假定這是保全自由的禱訣，那就讓我們充分注意這點吧。

五 組 織

所謂組織，就是一羣人有一定的目的和一定的規律。比如兒童合夥買隻船，或者這船被盜賊偷去，或者警察去捉盜賊，或者好多公民獎賞並鼓勵警察，這些事情都是有組織的。女學生要學英文，或者教員幫助她們，或者學校幫助教員和學生，或者公民扶助學校，這也有組織的。組織有好有壞，有大有小，有智有愚，有新有舊，可以幫助事業，也可以敗壞事業，但這是爲了一定的目的而共同合作，這種目的，憑着羣衆的力量比憑着個別的工作，容易達到。

你可說人體和機器的組織也是一樣，因爲這兩種組織都是爲着同樣目標而聯合各部分共同工作的。就是世界的組織也自然這樣。在各種能生長的東西和各種人所發展的事業上，組織的原理也正相同。你可說文化就是更有效率的組織之逐漸增長和發展。

只要組織完善有效，世界的事業就愈有組織，個人所享受的自由也就愈大，說來倒有些奇怪。科學發明了驚人的事物；但是組織去散佈科學，宣傳科學的事實，使科學有用，把科學介紹給人民，教他們用最好的方法去享受科學，並且保障人民去利用科學。想想吧，有多少我們現在能做而在我們祖母時代不能做的事情。我們能同遠方的人談話；我們能在幾分鐘內把信息傳到海外；我們能讀到昨日全世界所發生的事情；我們能在一分鐘行駛一里路；我們能在幾天之內從國內的這一端到那一端；我們能在空中飛行，海底行走；我們能用電報匯錢。

by *telegraph*; we can write a letter and send it to the other side of the world for a few cents. *There is no end of wonderful things we can do*, and organizations have made these possibilities ours.

6. Why are Rules Necessary?

On the bank of the famous West Lake in Hangchow there used to be an old, beautiful pagoda. It was called the "*Thunder Hill Pagoda*." It had an unusual form and an impressive appearance. People generally regarded it as one of the beautiful sights in that region. It was so old that its bricks were somewhat loosened. Tourists who went to see it often carried away small pieces of brick from the bottom of the pagoda as souvenirs. Recently the pagoda lost so much of its support that it fell to the ground. Future tourists can never see the "*Thunder Hill Pagoda*" again. Probably each tourist thought that it did not matter to take away a tiny piece of brick. If there had been a rule against this from the beginning and somebody to enforce it, the pagoda would have lasted much longer.

When a person enters a modern museum he usually sees a large sign, "All Umbrellas and Canes must be Checked." Here you are not left to obey the rule or not, as you please,—a man in uniform stands at each door to prevent you from disobeying it. You can easily understand why the library authorities would not want wet umbrellas carried about, but what harm could a dry umbrella or a cane do? The fact is, museums and art galleries have learned that things are so often injured by people who point at and touch things with canes and umbrellas that these dangerous articles must now be left outside. Most rules *have a common-sense reason back of them* even if we do not at first see it. Rules are not made to hinder people, but to help.

The people who took bricks away from the pagoda and the men and women with umbrellas and canes were not

我們只化了幾分錢，就能把寫成的一封信寄到海外去。我們所能做的偉大事情是無窮盡的，而組織就是使我們對於這些事情都成爲更有可能。

六 規則有何必要

杭州著名的西湖岸邊，有座古蹟美麗的塔，叫做雷峯塔。塔的形式很奇特，而且有動人的外觀。人們總是重視它，當它是西湖的名勝之一。這座塔太舊了，磚瓦也疏鬆了。遊歷的人常在塔底拾起一塊小磚作爲紀念品。最近因爲塔失去了支持力，便倒坍下去。將來的遊歷者永遠看不到雷峯塔了。也許每個遊歷者都以爲拿去一塊小磚是無關緊要的。假使起初就定下規則，並且強迫人們去實行，那塔或者一時還不會到坍的。

一個人走進現代博物院，總可以看見一塊大的牌子，上面寫着：「禁止攜帶一切洋傘和手杖。」到這裏來，不管你遵守不遵守，在每扇門口就有一個穿制服的人站着，非叫你遵守不可。圖書館當局不准你帶濕的雨傘進去，你當然容易明白，但帶乾傘和手杖有何妨害呢？事實上是博物院和圖書館的人常看見遊人用洋傘和手杖指點陳列着的物品，往往有所損傷，因此這些危險的東西現在都不准帶進了。許多規則全有常識的理由爲背景，縱使我們起初看不出來。規則並非妨礙人的，乃是幫助人的。

拿走塔磚的人和帶洋傘手杖的人，並非沒有

ignorant. They were careless and thoughtless. But carelessness and thoughtlessness will often do as much harm as ignorance or maliciousness. A poke from the umbrella of a thoughtless person will spoil a painting as quickly as a poke made by someone evil enough to want to injure it. Whether a boy drops a valuable vase through carelessness or because he wants to destroy it, the result is the same. A person who is thoughtless enough to throw a lighted match near a gasoline tank is as sure to cause an explosion as the person who intentionally does so. Because there are so many careless, thoughtless people, we have to have a great many rules.

7. Rules prevent Trouble

You would be astonished to discover how many rules every town and city has. We usually call them laws, but "law" is only another name for rule. Many Western cities have rules connected with certain kinds of sicknesses. If a pupil has scarlet fever or diphtheria, or any other contagious disease, he must stay at home and see no one but the nurse and doctor until he is perfectly well again. Even if neither the boy nor his parents understand the reason for the rule, it is for the good of all their friends and neighbors that they obey it.

At one time in a crowded suburb of a city several children were ill with diphtheria. The doctors had *red warning signs tacked on the doors* of these houses. They also warned the families that neither the sick children nor anyone who had been exposed to the disease should leave their homes *until further notice*. But the relatives of the sick children went to work and to school as usual. When the townspeople learned this, policemen were sent to guard the houses and to enforce the rule. If this had not been done, the disease might have spread to hundreds of people. As in this case, it is often necessary to compel people to obey rules.

知識。他們是疏忽無心吧了。然而疏忽無心，其害與惡意無意相同。一個無心的人用洋傘燬壁，和一個惡意的人要弄壞那壁，損害的方法是一樣快的。一個孩子由疏忽敲碎一隻寶貴的花瓶和有意打破它，結果總是一樣碎。一個人無心把根燃着的火柴到汽油桶旁邊，和一個人故意這樣做，結果是同樣的爆炸。因為疏忽無心的人太多，所以我們必須定出許多規則。

七 規則可以避免糾葛

你若看見每個城邑裏有這許多規則，你一定要驚奇的。我們又常稱這些規則為法律，可是法律是規則的別名。西洋各城市裏，對於某種疾病也訂下規則。如果一個學生患了猩紅熱或者白喉或者別的傳染病，他必須留在家中，非等到疾病完全恢復之後，除了醫師和看護外，不得與任何人見面。就說孩子或他的父母不明白這規則，但為他們的朋友和鄰居的安全着想，他們也必須遵守。

有一個時期，在某城外，許多孩子患着白喉。醫生就在他們住宅的門上釘着一塊紅色的警告牌。他們也警告病人的家屬，無論患病的孩子或任何傳染了這病的人，非待下次的通告不准離開家庭。但是病孩的親族仍舊可以工作上學。城裏的人知道這件事，就派巡警去監視那病人的房子，強制服從規則。要不是這樣辦，也許疾病會傳染到百人身止。在這情形之下，強迫病人遵守規則是必要的。

There are several other words that might be used instead of "rules" or "laws." One of these is "helps." Most rules are intended merely as helps. In one school this rule is written on the blackboard of each room:

When Entering or Leaving the School, Pupils must
move in Single File. There must be No Crowding or
Pushing on the Stairs.

The only reason for this rule is to help the pupils. It was found that when they did not go in single file, they could not go quickly. Before this rule was made, the younger children were often tripped by the older pupils, who crowded past them in a hurry to get to their seats first.

In China there is a very helpful rule: that all persons and vehicles should keep to the left of those they meet and to the right of those they overtake and pass. If there were not such a rule, thousands of persons would be accidentally killed every year. As it is, accidents occur. But suppose that there were no such rule. On a narrow road or crowded street if two automobiles were hurrying in opposite directions, neither could tell which way the other would turn. They would have to slow down and signal to each other. Even then one might misunderstand the signal. It is a great time-saving and accident-saving help to have as a rule of the road, "Keep to the left." It is the same in England, but in the United States the law is "keep to the right." *It does not matter which way it is so long as there is a definite rule followed throughout the country.*

8. Homes have Rules

In most homes you will not see printed rules tacked on doors or walls, but nevertheless rules are observed there. When each person gets up in the morning he washes and dresses himself so that the meeting at breakfast may be pleasant for all—this is a rule. Breakfast, lunch, and supper all come at certain times—more rules. At the table each person waits until all are present—another

還有好多別的名詞可以代替「規則」或「法律」。其中有一個名詞是「扶助」。許多規則的命意，全在扶助。有一個學校，每個課堂的黑板上都寫着這樣的規則：

「無論上學或課，學生務必單人行走。在樓梯上不准擁擠或推衝。」此項規則的唯一理由，就是扶助學生。因為學校知道若不照單人行走，他們便不能走快了。在未訂立這條規則以前，年幼的學生常被年長的墮倒，以便趕快地先佔座位。

中國有一條很有益的規則：就是所有的行人車馬須靠左邊走，倘若遇着從右邊開新或經過的車輛。要是沒有這條規則，每年便有成千的人受意外的死傷。就算有了這條規則，意外的危險仍屬難免。但是若無此項規則，那麼，設使在一條狹窄或擁擠的街上，有二輛汽車在相對的方向匆忙地開駛，大家就不知道向那一方轉彎了。他們必須慢慢地走，彼此施發號令。就算這樣，也會把所發的號令弄錯。所以路上有了「靠左邊走」的規則，可以省却許多時間免掉意外危險。英國也有這樣的規則，但在美國，那規則是「靠右邊走」。只要全國一律通行，無論靠那一邊走都沒有關係的。

八 家庭也有規則

在多數的家庭裏，你看不到門壁上貼着印好的規則，但仍得一樣遵守。人人早上起來，要盥洗，穿衣，爲的是大家快快樂樂地聚在一塊吃早飯——這是規則。早飯，中膳，晚餐，都須按時入席——這也是規則。每人坐在桌前，須待大家齊到——這又是

rule. All these rules are useful to every member of the family. Suppose that the fifteen-year-old member of this family wanted his supper at five o'clock instead of at six. Either he would have a poor supper or those who ate at six o'clock would have an unsatisfactory meal. Vegetables that are just right at five o'clock cannot be just right at six o'clock. Meat that is being cooked for a six o'clock supper will not be ready to serve at five o'clock. A home that fails to live by good rules faithfully kept is losing a great deal. A home that is well regulated is one where life is pleasantest.

Although many people do not know it, everybody likes the help of rules. Even men who live alone make rules for themselves. A student who was tramping for his health lost his way and wandered about for days in a large mountain forest. He finally came upon a hut in which lived an old man. For three years this man had not seen a human being. His nearest neighbor, he said, was forty miles away. There were no people and no rules or laws to limit his liberty. But, strange to say, on the wall was a piece of paper on which the hermit had carefully written, in a clear hand, the following sentences:

1. Read one good poem every day.
2. Improve my cabin a little every day.
3. See one beautiful sight each day.
4. Be sure to take a bath every day.
5. Eat only at meal times twice a day.
6. Do a little mending every day.

When the young man spoke about these rules, the hermit replied: "I found the rules of towns irksome. I wanted to be free, so I came up here. It seemed like heaven at first. But I soon found that I neglected to clean my cabin. Holes came in the roof. I worked a little *when I felt in the mood*, but some of my dishes were always dirty. My clothes were always frayed somewhere. I even neglected to bathe every day. After a time I came to my senses and realized that unless I wanted to become a mere animal I must make rigid rules for myself and *live by them*. Now I get up at sunrise, no matter what

規則。這些規則，對於全家的人儘是合用。假使家中有個十五歲的孩子，他不要在六點鐘吃晚飯，偏要提早在五點鐘吃，那麼，要不是他吃得很苦，就是六點鐘那班的人吃得不滿意。爲五點鐘預備的晚餐，到了六點鐘就不好吃。預備六點鐘煮熟的肉，在五點鐘是不熟的。一個家庭若不能謹守好的規則，便有莫大的損失。一個家庭若管理有方，那種生活便是最愉快的。

雖然有許多人不明白規則，但人人都愛規則的益處。即就一人獨處而論，也得爲自己定下規則。有一學生，作健身旅行，在大山的樹林中迷途，一直彷徨了幾天。最後，他到了一個老人所住的茅屋裏。這老人已有三年不見人類了。他說，他的最近的鄰居是在四十里路以外。這裏沒有人們，沒有法律或規則去限制他的自由。可是，說也奇怪在牆壁上貼着一張紙，在這張紙上，屋主小心地用清秀的筆跡寫了下面的幾句話：

- (1.) 每天讀一首好詩。
- (2.) 每天稍許改良我的茅屋。
- (3.) 每天看一回美麗的風景。
- (4.) 每天必洗澡一次。
- (5.) 每天進食兩次，必須按時。
- (6.) 每天做點縫補的工作。

當青年正在討論這些規則時，屋主回答道：「我覺得絨裏的規則討厭。我因爲要自由，才上這兒來。箇地這地方好似是天堂。但不久我發覺我忘了去清掃我的茅屋了。屋頂穿着小洞。我心境好時就做點工作，可是我的襪子老是不潔的。我的衣服常有破損的地方。甚至每天連洗澡也都忘了。後來我忽然覺悟了，知道除非我要全然做個動物，我必須給自己訂立規則。現在我不論天氣如何，日出即起。

the weather. I wash every board in these two rooms with warm water and soap each day, and also do some simple thing that will make the cabin stronger and more home-like. No city house has more convenient little devices than this now has. Some of the rules I change each week. Last week my first rule was: 'Read a good story every day.' Soon I shall add a seventh rule: 'Cut a little fire-wood every day,' for I must begin on my winter's supply."

9. Another Name for Rules is "Regulations"

Still another name for rules is "regulations." All factories, stores, railroads, and offices *have to have regulations*. At one of the largest shoe factories in a Western country the great gate is shut and locked exactly at 7.30 every morning. No employee who is outside the gate at 7.30 can enter at all that morning. And, of course, he loses a half-day's pay. This seems a harsh rule, but the managers found that without it sometimes a third of the machines would be idle for the first half hour. *This meant that about one thousand fewer shoes would be made than when all the employees began work promptly at 7.30.* The factory-owners have to know exactly how many thousand pairs of shoes *they can turn out in a day.* Otherwise they cannot keep their promises to the dealers. And broken promises will spoil any business. It is therefore for the good of the factory that every worker be at his machine on time. It is also to the advantage of the worker, for each additional hour of work means money in *his pay envelope.*

No business house can long prosper without regulations of the right kind. Suppose the only rule of an office is that all employees must work eight hours a day. Nothing is said about when they shall begin work. Perhaps one stenographer likes to lie abed mornings, and does not appear at the office until ten o'clock, while the man whose letters she writes gets in at eight. The telephone girl may prefer not to work mornings at all, but is perfectly will-

我每天用溫水和肥皂洗刷兩個房間的地板，並做些簡單的工作，使這茅屋更結實，更像住它。城中沒有房子比現在的這個茅更便於小布置了。有的規則，我每星期要更動一次。上星期，我的第一條規則是：『每天讀一篇好的故事。』不久，我將加上第七條規則：『每天所些木柴，『因為我要開始預備冬天的燃料了。』

九 規則的另一別名叫「章程」

規則的別名，還有一個，叫「章程」。所有工廠，商店，鐵路，和辦公室都有章程。西方的國家有另最大的鞋廠，它的那扇大門總在每天早上七點半鐘關閉下鎖。如果到了七點半鐘雇員還在外面，那天早上，他便不能再進去。自然，這時他損失半日的工資。此項章程，看來似覺太嚴，但經理知道，若無此項章程，在開工的頭半點鐘裏，有時三分之一的機器便空着無人管理。倘使按照七點半鐘開工，那就能多做一千隻鞋。廠主必須知道，每天確實可製多少隻鞋。不然他們便不能與買主訂約。失約足以損害任何事業的信用。為工廠的利益計，每個工人務必按時上工，這也是工人的利益因為多做一點鐘的工作，就是多得一點鐘的工資。

沒有一定的章程，各種營業機關都不能發達。假設一官辦公處的章程，祇說雇員每日必做八小時工作，這並未說明何時開始。也許書記員早上是愛賴在床上的，非到十點鐘不進辦公室，同時書記八點鐘就到了。電話女接線生大抵不願早上工作，祇歡喜

ing to stay at the office from noon until eight in the evening. But everybody else leaves at five, so for three hours this girl has nothing to do. Such an office would be topsy-turvy.

To prevent such an unpleasant situation all offices have certain rules, or regulations, which employees must observe. Schools also have similar regulations. If pupils could come to school at any time of day, there would be hopeless confusion, and waste of time and money. Perhaps the arithmetic class recites at ten o'clock every morning. If some pupils should not come to school until eleven, either they would miss the arithmetic altogether or the lesson would have to be repeated for them. Anyone can readily see that school must begin for all pupils at the same time and that classes must come at specified hours. Not to have regulations would be foolish.

Railroad time-tables are merely sets of regulations. If, for instance, you wish to go from Shanghai to Nanking, you must take one of the trains that are indicated on the time-table. You can go only at the stated times, not when you please. Neither can the engineers and conductors start their trains when they please. The railroad managers have drawn up a set of rules for engineers and other trainmen and for passengers. The figures of the time-tables are merely a shortened form of these rules. Hopeless confusion and hundreds of accidents would result without such rules, or regulations.

10. No Person is above the Law

Everybody believes in the "square deal." That is, there must not be a rule for one person and not for another. If we prevent one person from spitting on the street or in public places, we must prevent all persons from doing it. There is no person who is above the law. The highest official, just like the humblest person, must obey all the laws. In the army and navy, no matter how rich or famous his father may be, every boy must

自正午十二點起至晚上八點止。可是大家五點鐘都得離開辦公處，那麼其餘的三小時女接線生便無工作可做了。像這種機關，真是很糟糕的。

爲避免不良的情狀，各辦公處須有一定的規則或章程，而雇員務宜遵守。學校也有同樣的章程。如果學生在白天可隨時來校，那就混亂得使人失望，濫費時間和金錢了。也許每天早上十點鐘就要演習算術。如果有的學生到十一點鐘才來，他們便得缺課，再不然，仍須補習。人人都知道全校的學生必須同時上課，而上課的時間也應當有一定。不定章程，確是愚笨的辦法。

鐵路時刻表也完全是章程而已。例如，你要從上海到南京，你必须趁那表上所列的一班車。就是機器師和查票員也不能任意開車。站長給機器師，別的火車人員，和乘客，也訂定章程。時刻表不過是這些章程的縮短的形式吧了。要是缺少規則或章程，就會發生無望的糾紛和無數意外的結果。

十。法律高於一切人

人人都主張「公正」。意思說，規則並非專爲這個人，也不專爲別個人施行的。我們若要禁止一個人在路上或在公共場所吐痰，我們必須禁止一切的人。沒有人高過法律。最高的官吏和最低的平民，同樣要遵守一切法律。在海陸軍中，每個兵士不論他的父親如何富裕，如何著名，他仍須

obey the rules. In the World War the sons of kings and presidents and millionaires fought side by side with poor boys and obeyed the same rules.

One day a military officer was traveling with his wife on a train from Shanghai to Hangchow—a railroad owned by the central government. He did not buy any tickets because for many years some corrupt officials and military officers had been able to get "free rides" simply by ignoring the conductor. The railroad management was too weak to enforce its rules. But recently the National Government, in its effort to "clean up" the government, made it known that it would not allow this sort of thing. The conductor demanded that this officer produce two tickets or buy them, but he stubbornly refused to do so. The conductor reasoned with him for a long time, finally threatening to arrest him. The passengers on the train backed up the conductor, and trouble ended when the officer paid for two tickets and also a small fine for not buying them until after he got on the train. Rules and laws that are intended for everybody must be obeyed by all. *Public opinion should be on the side of enforcing laws on all people alike.*

11. Respect for Laws

We have said all this about rules and regulations because it is important that citizens respect both the laws and the government that enforces them. It is a dangerous thing for a boy at school to get into the bad habit of talking disrespectfully about the rules and the school officers. Such an attitude frequently leads to disrespect of the laws and authority of one's locality or country and finally to crime and prison. The law of the land must be respected and upheld.

Suppose there is a law that goods or other obstructions may not be placed on the sidewalks or in the streets, and then suppose some man puts things out for sale on the street. Perhaps he shows a double disrespect for the

服從法律。歐戰時國王、總統和貴族的兒子，與窮苦的青年一塊兒打仗。一樣的奉公守法。

一天，有一軍官，帶了他的夫人乘火車，從上海到杭州——這條鐵路是屬於中央政府的。他不買票，因為近年以來許多腐化的軍人總看不過查票員，要想免費趁車。鐵路管理太軟弱不能強制實行章程。但最近國民政府努力於整頓政治，宣佈取締這類免費辦法。查票員要軍官取出兩張票來，否則補票，但他却毅然地拒絕。查票員費了許多時間把理由講給他聽，最後要把他拘押起來。車上的乘客是幫助查票員的，這場風波的結果，是軍官補購兩張票子，此外還繳了少數罰款，因為他到車上才買票。凡是為大家定的規則或法律，人人必須遵守。輿論也應當扶助法律，使民衆一體奉行。

十一 尊重法律

我們已說過規則和章程了，因為這是很要緊的，所有的公民必須尊重法律和實施法律的政府，學校的學生若染了惡習慣，違背校規，藐視職員，便是一件危險的事。這種態度往往引起侮辱地方或國家的法律和威權，結果弄到犯罪入獄。一國的法律須受尊敬和擁護。

假使有一條法律，不許貨物和障礙物擺在人行道上或街上，又假使有人把東西放在街上賣，他若拿一點東西賄賂警察，

laws by giving the policeman something to make him "friendly." This soon causes other people to do the same thing. A blow has been struck at the law, and it is beginning to weaken. It now becomes harder and harder to secure obedience to that law. Soon that street is crowded and inconvenient. People prefer to go another way. Business is injured. There is loss to all because the law has broken down. And this has happened because respect for it was once weakened by a selfish and unpatriotic citizen, and perhaps by a corrupt policeman.

When that man first put the least bit of an obstruction on the street, the policeman should have told him to take it in. He should have said: "No matter how small an obstruction it is or how much it helps you, you must take it away. The important thing is the law. The fact that it is of advantage to you and of *but slight trouble to the passers-by* is not the question to discuss. The question is respect for the law. If you break the law, others will break it also. If one law is disregarded, other laws will be. It is my business to see that laws are respected."

If a law is not a good one, the citizens should start a movement to have it changed; but as long as it remains, it should be respected. Laws should be published in a code or catalogue, so that they may be known and studied and improved. It is the duty of citizens to know the laws of their country. There is an old rule! Ignorance of the law excuses no one. A guilty person is not excused because he did not know the law. He ought to have known it. How can citizens obey the laws and teach others to obey if they do not know them? They must know them, and they must hold them in high respect.

12. The Enforcement of Law

If honest people know and respect the laws and urge their neighbors to do the same, it is not difficult for the government to enforce them. It has then to deal chiefly with a few lawbreakers who can in time be caught and

使警察能容許他，是表示他犯了兩種不敬法律的地方。這可影響到別人的傲效。法律受了打擊，就開始軟化了。再想使人服從那條法律，就愈加困難了。不久，街道擁擠不便。人們不願再走這條路。商業大受損失。因為法律被破壞，連同大家也受損失。這件事情的發生，祇由於一個自私不愛國的公民，或是一個腐化的警察，使法律失去了威嚴。

當那人起初把一點障礙物放在街上時，警察就應該囑他拿進去。警察應當說：「不管這障礙物是怎樣小，或於你有多少利益，你總得移開。最重要的是法律。若說於你有利，和並不怎樣妨礙路人，這全是不值討論的問題。問題就在於尊重法律。你若破壞法律，別人也一樣要破壞。一條法律若被藐視，別條也是如此。監督人家尊重法律，這是我的職務。」

如果有一條法律不好，公民應當開始運動去變更它；但法律存在時，必須尊重。法律應該刊在法典上，使大家明白去研究改良。曉得本國的法律，是公民的義務。有句古訓說：不懂法律的人也不能討饒。一個罪犯並不因為他不懂法律就寬恕了他。他應當曉得法律的。如果公民不明白法律，他們怎能服從法律，並教人家服從呢？他們必須知道法律，必須尊重法律。

十二 法律的施行

要是良民知道法律，尊重法律，並鼓勵他們的鄰居同樣去實行，那政府施行法律便不難了。只要政府把少數的犯法者及時捕去關入

put into prison, where they cannot continue to interfere with the rights of the people. If there is no general respect for the laws, it becomes impossible to enforce even the best and most important ones. The officers very soon say: "Why should we work so hard to enforce laws if nobody wants them enforced? We prefer to sit back and wait till something important happens." The enforcement of the law comes back to that respect for law which the citizens must have. When the citizens insist that the laws must be obeyed and that lawbreakers must be punished, when they themselves keep every law and insist that every law should be kept, then the government is pretty sure to enforce the laws.

People themselves must *inform against lawbreakers*. They must come to court and testify honestly and boldly. This sort of bravery and patriotism is as good as that of the hero in battle. People themselves should resist robbers, fight them, catch them. When it is very easy to rob, many people are tempted to be robbers, but robbers are slow to attack a brave man or woman. We must help the authorities to enforce all the laws in every way we can.

It is sometimes easy to make laws, but of what use are they if not enforced? Policemen represent the enforcement of laws, although they have no authority whatever except to take to the police station one caught breaking a law, or to report anyone suspected. Policemen must be carefully chosen and must be paid enough to make their position a respected one. It is more important still to honor the magistrates and police officers and properly to support them. All honest citizens should treat them as among the best friends the people have.

13. Justice for Every Person

Many a decision has gone to the one who gave the largest bribe. Many a criminal has gone free because he had a friend close to the judge, and many an innocent

監獄，他們便不能再侵害人民的利益了。法律若不能普遍尊重，那麼就算最好最重要的法律也無法施行。做官的人要說：『如果大家不依法律施行，我們為什麼要辛辛苦苦去施行法律呢？我們還是閒坐着等待重要的事情發生吧。』要施行法律必須回到人民有法律並且能尊重法律的路上去。若人民堅持法律須服從，犯法者須受罰，自己遵守一切法律，並主張一切法律應當遵守，那麼，政府便確實可以施行法律了。

人民自己必須告發反抗那犯罪者。他們必須親到法庭忠實地大膽地作證。這種勇敢和愛國心，真如戰場上的英雄一樣有奇功。人民自己應當抵抗盜賊，同他們打，把他們捉往。要是劫掠的事可隨便幹的，那麼許多人就會被誘去欺騙盜了，但強盜對於勇敢的男女都不敢輕易攻擊。我們必須幫助當局，想盡各種方法去施行法律。

立法有時容易，但法律不施行有何用呢？巡捕是施行法律的代理人，雖說他的權限，只是把犯法的人解到巡捕房，或是把嫌疑犯報告巡捕房。巡捕必須謹慎選擇，必須待遇優厚，使他的地位成為最尊重的一個。更要緊的，是敬仰長官，巡官，並相當扶助他們。所有忠實的公民，應當像招待最好的朋友一樣招待他們。

十三 人人都該有公道

許多判決，都由於最大的賄賂者包辦。許多罪犯得着釋放，因為他們有與法官親近的朋友，又有許多無辜的

man has suffered in place of the guilty one because the officers of the law were stupid or careless. Many an innocent man has been convicted because the people were angry with him. Many a decision has been wrongly made because the trial was not properly conducted. Justice is not an easy thing to give or to secure. *Injustice is all too common.*

Justice is one of the tests of civilization. A nation, province, city, district, village, or person is judged partly by whether justice is given. If you say of a man, "He judges justly," you have placed him high up in the scale. You could hardly say anything better of him. It is not only for the good of ourselves and our people that we want justice for every person in the country, but because this, more quickly than anything else, gives a nation the highest respect of the world.

The processes of law by which justice is secured are a well-developed science. No untrained man, however honest, can render just judgment in most cases. The study of this science is classed among the professional studies. It requires years.

There must be a *tradition of justice*. People must value it and seek to honor the good judges. Thus they come to respect their own honorable records and to strive to maintain them. A man who attacks a just judge or accuses him of injustice is tearing at the foundations of society. *We stand upon justice*. Without assurance of justice we shake with fear. Justice leads to prosperity. Foreigners as well as Chinese all like to live and do business in a city where they feel sure of equal justice before the law for every person. Let us keep in mind that justice is both a test of civilization and a *cornerstone of national prosperity*.

14. Law and Order

One of the chief purposes of laws is to secure justice without the use of force. If a man owes you money and can pay, but refuses to pay, the law courts should make

人，因為法官的愚笨或粗疏，反替有罪的人受苦。許多清白的人會定了罪，因為人們憤恨地。許多判決弄成錯誤，因為審判的手續不合法。公道並非容易施行或得到的東西。不公倒是很平常的。

公道是文化的試驗品。一國，一省，一城，一區，一村，或一人的裁判，一半是看能否實行公道。你若說一個人「裁判公道」，你已把他抬高到天際上了。你不能再對他說更好的讚語了。不但為我們自己和為我們人民的利益，我們要全國的人主張公道，實在是因為公道奪得國家在世界上的最高尊榮，比任何東西都快。

仗着公道所獲得的法律手續，是一種制別發達的科學。沒有經過訓練的人，無論如何誠實，在各種案件上，都不能有公正的裁判。這類科學是列在職業學科內研究的。它需要多年的研究。

公道必須因襲，人民應當重視它，並尊崇好的法官。這樣他們也就自重自愛，竭力去維持了。人若攻擊公正的法官，或控告他不公正，便是破壞社會的基礎。我們是站在公道方面的。沒有公道的保證，我們便要驚懼震顛。公道可使強盛。中外國人都願住在一個城裏謀生，那兒他們覺着入人在法律上都有絕對的平等公道。讓我們記在心中：公道是文化的試驗品，也是一國強盛的磐石。

十四 法律和秩序

法律的主要目的，是不用武力而能獲得公正。若有人欠你錢，他能還，但不願還，法庭就強迫他還；倘你得不到使他還錢的公正判決，那你便要用武力使他。

him pay; but if you fail to get a just judgment against him, you find yourself greatly tempted to get your money by force. And yet it is easy to see that in a country where force might be used, no one would be safe. The law's first idea is to do away with the use of force and to use reason in the settlement of any difficulty, even of one in which force has already been used. Force outside of the law is the opposite of justice assured to all. *It is justice for only the strong*, if for any. The government *puts down force first* and then applies the law to each person. Unless order is established there is no hope of enforcing the law. On the other hand, if the law is constantly enforced there is always good order and safety for everybody. The government has to use force to get order and to secure obedience to law, but every application of the force is according to law already established by reason. If it is not, then the government itself is not legal. Under all good government the first object of the law is to insure order, which means security of life and property.

One of the greatest difficulties about revolution is that they naturally destroy the popular respect for government. After a revolution the citizens are sure to suffer from a *breakdown of law and order*. They must therefore make a special effort for years afterward to develop a respect for law and to insist upon its enforcement. This has been the history of France, America, and China. In some countries that you could name there has come to be a sort of habit of revolution. These have not yet been able to reestablish respect for and enforcement of law. Their condition is very serious.

15. The Reign of Reason

When there is order, when the citizens are not afraid to come forward, when they are not busy protecting their lives and property, when they have confidence in the authorities, then they can discuss the problems of law

聽懂了。但是，你明白的可以看出來，要是一個國家內施行武力誰都得不到平安。法律的要義，是避免武力，而用公理去解決任何困難的問題，甚至曾經用過武力的問題。法律以外的武力，是為人民保證公道的反面。這也算是公道，是惟一有力量的公道。政府先壓制了武力，然後對人民施行法律，秩序倘不規定，便無施行法律的希望。若法律若永遠施行，那人人都有好的秩序和平安。政府必用武力維持秩序，使人民服從法律，但施用武力，得按照理性所定的法律。不然，政府本身就不合理。在一切良好的政府之下，法律的主要目的是保守秩序，那就是保護生命財產的意思。

革命最大的困難，是自然摧毀了對政府的普遍的尊重。每次革命之後，人民總是受破壞了的秩序和法律的痛苦。所以他們以後必須經過幾年的特別努力，去發展尊重法律的心，堅持它的施行。這就是法國、美國、和中國的歷史。你能指出許多有革命習慣的國家來。這些國家，對於法律的敬仰和施行，尚不能重新建立，他們的狀況是非常嚴重的。

十五 理 治

公民有秩序的時候，不怕前進的時候，不忙於保護生命財產的時候，對於政府當局有了信仰的時候，然後他們才能討論法律和合作團

and cooperation. Reason can rule when force is under control. The people wish to do things,—to carry on business, to make things and plant things and enjoy things, to travel, to build, to paint, to read, to work for the best progress and highest enjoyment of life,—but first they must have order, then laws and organizations. Then they can use reason and science. They can cooperate to develop the country in all the ways they know.

This is the only way. Families, communities, the nations, and the world must work in this way. All the good things that we have mentioned—enterprise, thrift, investment, conservation, science, health, commerce, the enjoyment of life, education—depend upon order, upon cooperation and organization, upon good will and the reign of reason. We have said that it is an ancient principle in China that reason should rule, and not force. Let us make it the method in China forever.

The last words of a dying man are always carefully considered by those who know him. Here are the last words of the last public statement of one of China's greatest men, one who died in the summer of 1922:

Let me hope that my compatriots, bearing in mind the errors of the past and difficulties of the future, will be guided by law and reason in settling national problems, and cease strife through mutual trust and sincerity. And I pray that all may unite in a spirit of cooperation and tolerance to work for the good of the Republic and of Humanity.

WU-TING-FANG

QUESTIONS AND EXERCISES

1. What is liberty? Can you think of anyone who uses his liberty well? of one who uses it wastefully?
2. Explain the difference between liberty and license.
3. What is a rule? Give one rule that you have learned in arithmetic; one that you have learned in grammar.
4. Give an instance of how a rule prevented trouble.
5. Show that most rules are helps.

。武力欲控制時理智能夠統治。人民是樂於從業的——經營商業，製造物品，種種東西，享受快樂，旅行，建築，繪畫，讀書，做最進步的工作，謀最高的生活享樂——可是他們須先有秩序，再有法律和組織。最後，他們才能利用理智和科學。他們能盡其所知合作起來，發展國家。

這是唯一的方法。家族，社會，國家，與世界，都必須這樣辦。我們曾經說過的一切好事情——企業，節儉，投資，保存，科學，健康，商業，人生的享受，教育——都依靠秩序，依靠合作和組織，依靠好的意志和理治。我們已經說過，中國的舊道德，是主張理智統治，而反對武力統治的。我們要使這個方法永遠在中國實行。

一個臨終人的說話，常被知道他的人所嚴重考慮的。中國有一位最大的偉人，他是一九二二年夏天逝世的，當他臨終的時候，說了下面幾句公開狀：

『我希望同胞記着過去的錯誤與未來的困難。依照法律和理智解決國家的問題，藉互信和誠意而停止鬥爭。願大家仗着合作和忍耐的精神，聯合起來，為國家為人類謀幸福。』 伍廷芳

問答練習題

- (1) 自由是什麼？你能想出任何善用自由的人嗎？任何濫用自由的人嗎？
- (2) 解釋自由與許可的分別。
- (3) 規則是什麼，舉你在數學上所學得的一條規則；舉你在文法上學得的一條規則。
- (4) 舉一個事例，說明規則怎樣可以避免糾葛？
- (5) 許多規則是扶助性質，試舉例說明之。

6. Have you a club at your school? Draw up a set of regulations for it.
7. Should you like to go to a school where no one obeyed rules? What would such a school be like? Write a paragraph on "Why I respect a Law."
8. How does organization promote liberty?
9. Discuss the statement "Justice is both a test of civilization and a cornerstone of the nation's prosperity."
10. Explain the statement "Reason can rule when force is under control."

-
- (6) 你校裏有什麼俱樂部嗎？試為這個團體擬一份章程。
- (7) 你願進無人服從規則的學校嗎？這種學校像什麼？用「我為什麼要尊重法律」做題目，寫一短文。
- (8) 「組織」何以能增加自部？
- (9) 「公道是文化的試驗品，也是一國強盛的礫石。」試詳述這句話的意義。
- (10) 「武力被控制時，理智能夠統治」試解釋這句話的意義。

CHAPTER XVII

GOVERNMENT AND PUBLIC SERVICES

1. The Government is an Organization

We have just seen that organizations are necessary to *carry out people's wishes by coöperation*. The government is the biggest organization of all. If a school has a tennis club or a *stamp-collectors' society*, these are organizations of only the few who are interested in tennis or in collecting stamps. There may also be a self-government organization which includes every student. *No one can be in the school and not be in that organization*. In this case students do not go about asking, "Do you wish to join?" This is an organization of all. *They are all members from the moment the organization starts*.

The government of a village, district, city, province, or nation is an organization of all the citizens for certain purposes. There are rules *limiting the voters to those who are likely to be wise enough to vote properly*; but all citizens are in the organization, to be controlled by it and to benefit from it. The purposes for which it exists are, first, to secure protection for life, liberty, and property, which means law, order, and justice; and, second, to help the people to work together for mutual benefit. We have already discussed the first of these two main purposes of government. In this chapter we wish to discuss the second.

In ancient times, and even now in *backward communities*, kings and officials have often been people with power but with no idea of really benefiting the citizens. The result has been that citizens the world over are slow to believe that the government is really friendly and

第十七章 政府和公共事業

一 政府是一種組織

我們剛已說及，要藉合作實現人民的願望，組織是不可少的。政府是一切組織中最大的組織。學校若有網球或集郵社，這不過是少數人的組織，他們對於拍網球或集郵發生興趣罷了。也許還有自治會的組織，這是包括全體學生的。凡是在校的學生都須加入這種組織，在這種情形之下，學生用不到問：『你願加入嗎？』這是公共的機關。等到機關成立時，他們便都是會員了。

一村，一邑，一城，一省，或一國的政府，就是全體公民爲某種目的而組織的機關。機關裏有規則限制投票者，使投票者必須聰明伶俐，善於投票；但全體公民都隸屬於這個機關，受其約束，享其權利。這種機關存在的目的，第一是保護生命、財產、和自由，那就是要有法律、秩序和公道的意思；第二是幫助人民爲公共福利而合作。關於政府的第一種主要的目的，我們已經討論過了。在這一章裏，我們要討論第二種。

在古代，甚至在現代退化的社會裏，做國王和當官吏的，總是權勢高大，可是並無真正爲人民謀幸福的思想。結果，使全世界的人民都不相信政府確是可親的。

good and beneficial and necessary. *They are quick to oppose the government, to criticize a law, to scold an officer, to look down on a policeman or soldier, to refuse to serve under an official, to evade the regulations, to escape from taxation.* It is not strange that people feel this way, even, that they scold and criticize the officers whom they themselves have elected. It is the result of long years of oppression and injustice and selfishness in high places. Now, however, the world *has come to a new view of government.* It is now considered an organization of the people themselves for their own mutual benefit.

2. Public Servants

When the highest official of a modern government writes a letter to a citizen, he at times signs his name under the words "Your humble servant." This is not merely a very polite expression. He means he recognizes that he is the servant of the citizens. Although he rules over them, he does it only for their good and not for his own. He is employed by the citizens to do certain work for them. It may be to carry out their laws, even at times when many of them may have to be punished according to these laws. Because he is *the servant of the whole people*, not of just a part, he does not hesitate to punish even if there is *a great outcry against him by many of the very people who elected him.* He knows that even if a majority of the people suffer, it is his duty and service to *upheld the law. The minority must be protected as well as the majority,* and to preserve respect for the law *is a service to all.*

It is important that both officials and citizens should *have clear and strong the idea of the public service—* that every government official and clerk is a servant of the public. This does not mean that he is the servant of any individual citizen, that he must do as directed by anyone who calls upon him. He is not a servant of that sort. Like your father, he is working for you but not

CLEARANCES

JULY 8

Tjikembang, Dutch, Batavia.
Demodocus, British, Singapore.

ARRIVALS

JULY 8

Kwangtai, Chinese, Capt. N. MacLean, 1,536 tons, Shanghai, C.M.S.N. Co., Wharf.

Hydranges, British, Capt. W. J. Collom, R.N.R., 561 tons, Swatow, Chin On. S.S. Co., Wharf.

MOVEMENTS OF STEAMERS

The Blue Funnel Line s.s. Lycaon arrived London on 5th July.

The Blue Funnel Line s.s. Protesilaus from Pacific Ports leaves Kobe to-day for this port.

EXCHANGE

Hongkong, 27th July

SELLING

T/T.....	2/7
Demand	2/7 $\frac{1}{8}$
30 d/s	
60 d/s	
4 m/s	2/7 $\frac{1}{2}$
T/T. Shanghai.....	nom.
T/T. Singapore.....	111
T/T. Japan	120
T/T. India	193 $\frac{1}{2}$
Demand, India	
T/T. San Francisco and New York	57 $\frac{1}{2}$
T/T. Java	150
T/T. Marks	
T/T. Francs	69 $\frac{1}{2}$

BUYING

4 m/s. L/C.....	2/7 $\frac{3}{8}$
4 m/s. D/P.....	2/8 $\frac{1}{2}$
6 m/s. L/C.....	2/8
30 d/s. Sydney and Melbourne	2/8 $\frac{1}{2}$
30 d/s. San Francisco and New York	59
4 m/s. Marks.....	
4 m/s. Francs.....	730
6 m/s. Francs.....	740
30 d/s. on India	
Bar Silver.....ready	35 $\frac{1}{2}$
forward.....	35 $\frac{1}{4}$
New York and London	445

NEWSPAPERS SERVE THE PUBLIC

KWANGTUNG FLOODS

BOARD OF CONSERVANCY WORKS REPORT

Waterlevels in English Feet
at 10 a.m.

Place of Observation	Highest W.L. ever recorded	Lowest W.L. ever recorded	1922	
			W.L. July 6th feet	W.L. July 6th feet
			Wuchow, West River..	+79.50
Kongmoon, West River.	+14.70	-0.80	8.40	7.60
Linkonghow, North River.	+57.00	0	10.00	11.50
Samshui, North River..	+27.25	-5.00	11.80	10.10
Shaklung, East River.	+15.15	-0.98	4.30	3.90

HONGKONG TIME SIGNALS

The Time Ball on Kowloon Signal Hill is dropped daily at 10 a.m. and 4 p.m., except on Saturdays when it is dropped at 10 a.m. and 1 p.m., and on Sundays and Holidays when it is dropped at 10 a.m. only.

The Ball is hoisted half mast at the 55th minute and full mast at the 57th minute. Should the ball fail to drop at the correct time it will be lowered at 5 minutes past the hour and the ordinary routine repeated at the following hour, if possible.

Should the Time Ball be out of order the above routine will be carried out with the flag (Z) on the Storm Signal mast.

Time Signals are also given at night by means of three white lamps mounted vertically on the Observatory wireless mast. From h.m. 8.56.0 to h.m. 9.0.0 p.m. the lamps are extinguished momentarily at the even seconds except at the 2nd, 28th, 50th, 52nd and 54th, of each minute.

The hours refer to Hongkong Standard Time (8 hours East of Greenwich).

METEOROLOGICAL

Hongkong Observatory, 27th July

	Previous Day at 2 a.m.	On Date at 6 a.m.	On Date at 2 p.m.
Barometer....	29.64	29.59	29.58
Temperature...	87	83	82
Humidity....	65	75	88
Wind Direc.	ESE	E	ESE
Wind Force.	3	3	5
Weather.....	b	0	or
Rain... ..	0.00	0.00	0.19

Highest open air Temperature on the 26th 88
Lowest. 27th 81

THE WEATHER

July 27d. 6h. 25m.—Warning to Hongkong Coast Ports, &c.: Depression or typhoon of unknown intensity within 120 miles of Lat. 16°N., Long. 116°E., direction unknown.

July 27d. 6h. 05m.—Local signal No. 1 hoisted.

July 27d. 11h. 38m.—Pressure has decreased considerably at Vladivostok and slightly at Hongkong and Tourane. It is nearly stationary over the Philippines.

A typhoon has formed to the east of the Macclesfields. Its direction of motion is at present unknown.

Hongkong rainfall for the 24 hours ending at 10 a.m. to-day, 0.06 inch. Total since January 1st, 34.52 inches, against an average of 49.75 inches.

FORECAST

For the 24 Hours ending at Noon on the 28th

- 1.—Formosa Channel: N.E. winds, freshening.
- 2.—South coast of China between Hongkong and Lamocks: The same as No. 1.
- 3.—Hongkong to Gap Rock: N.E. winds, possibly increasing to a gale; fine at first, some rain later.
- 4.—South coast of China between Hongkong and Hainan: The same as No. 3

GOVERNMENT BUREAUS RENDERING PUBLIC SERVICE THROUGH
NEWSPAPERS

良好的，有益的，和必不可少的。他們便立刻反對政府，批評法律，詛咒官吏，藐視軍容，拒絕在官吏手下服務，違背章程，拒絕租稅。人民的這種感想，雖說他們詛咒和批評他們自己所選舉的官吏，却也並不奇怪。這是當權者長年的壓迫、自私，不義的結果。可是，現在世界已經形成新政府的見解了。現在的人是視政府為人民本身謀公共利益的一個機關了。

二 公 僕

現代政府最高的官吏寫信給公民的時候，往往在「你的公僕，之下署名。這並不能算非常謙遜的意義。他的意思是承認他是人民的公僕。雖然他管理他們，他祇是為人民的幸福，並非為私人的利益。他是受人民雇用，為他們工作的，這種工作，也許是實施他們的法律，必要時並按法律定人民的罪。因為他是全民的公僕，不是一部分人的公僕，在給人民定罪的時候，他並不猶豫，就是選舉他的許多人，都大聲反抗他。雖然他知道大多數人要受苦，但為維持法律起見，仍得盡其職責。少數人和多數人是同樣應受保護的，因為尊重法律，也是公共的義務。

最要緊的，是官吏和公民都要有公益事業的清楚強固的觀念——凡是政府的官吏和職員全是人民的公僕。這並非說他是任何一個公民的僕人，却必須替任何人做事。他不是這一類的公僕。像你的父親一樣，他養育你。

under your direction. He must keep in mind that he is giving service to the people, and you must keep in mind that he is your helpful friend and not your enemy or slave.

We are very likely to think of our heroes as only those who have fought and died for their country or those who have gone through great danger to save life or accomplish some great task. We must not forget for a moment that there are thousands of men and women working for their country all the time. It is sometimes easier to die gloriously than to go on working quietly day after day without much praise or appreciation. Are not those who faithfully labor for their government and for their people to be considered heroes also? Let us think of a public servant as one of the nation's heroes.

Think of the elementary-school teachers all over the country. They are often working against great difficulties. They are faithful day after day. They are patient, even though those they serve often criticize them very unkindly. They are training the boys and girls to support themselves, to enjoy their lives, and to serve and love their country. They are "masters" in their schools, but they are "servants" of the public, heroes in their country's battle against the enemy ignorance.

We have already discussed the service that the police and law courts render us. Let us remember how important it is to honor the judges and magistrates who administer the laws, and let us remember every day to give honor and *good will* to the policeman on the corner. He preserves order for us, protects our lives and property, and even helps us to cross the street or find our way. He is a friend and helper.

3. International Service

One of the interesting things about the world today is the international character of so many valuable services. Not many years ago international committees

但並不受你的指揮。他得記住他是給人民服務的，你也要記住他是你的有益的朋友，並非你的仇敵或奴隸。

我們大抵都以爲我們的英雄只是那些爲國奮鬥而死，或者是經過大險去救生命，或者是成就某種大事業一類的人。我們不可片刻忘記平日無敵的爲國服務的男女。有時，榮耀的殉身比一天天的安靜工作，不受人稱譽或尊重更容易。那些爲政府爲人民忠實工作的人，豈不也應當視爲英雄嗎？讓我們承認公僕也是一國的英雄吧。

想想全國的小學教師。他們常常爲克服困難而工作。他們永遠是忠實的縱使他們給人家服務受人家刻薄的批評，他們還是忍耐着。他們訓練男女如何自立，如何享受生活，如何服務與愛國。他們是學校的主人，但也是民衆的公僕，爲國奮鬥的，抗拒文官的英雄。

我們已經討論過警察與法庭給我們服務的事情了。我們要記着尊重法官和執行法律的長官是很重要的，我們也要記着對各地的警察每天表示敬意和好感。他爲我們維持秩序，保護我們的生命財產，甚至幫助我們橫過街道或者找尋路徑。他是朋友，也是助手。

三 國際服務

今日世界有一最有意義之事，就是含有國際性質的許多有價值的事業。幾年以前，

and organizations were unknown. Now religious and philanthropic organizations, like the churches, the Red Cross, the Y.M.C.A., and the Boy Scouts, extend their services to people of all lands. The American Red Cross in 1921 built eight hundred and fifty-six miles of roads in Shantung in addition to those built by the Chinese and others. The scientific societies welcome all men and women of ability to their meetings, and in their researches seek the aid of scientists of all nations. Rewards of honor are given by governments to men and women who have rendered service, no matter of what country they may be citizens. *The Nobel prizes*, given every two years for *the best work in several lines*, are given to people of many lands. The Carnegie Institution at Washington is studying the earth's magnetic laws, but its work is not in America alone. Its workers are not only Americans but also Chinese, British, and others; and its results are given freely to all nations. *The Rockefeller Foundation* has sent its doctors to develop a great medical school in Peiping and to help Chinese, British, Americans, and others in medical work in many parts of China. It has given money to Chinese colleges, to British colleges, and to others, as well as to American colleges. It has also attacked yellow fever in South America and Central America, and its doctors were Japanese, Cubans, or any others who were needed, regardless of nationality. This same organization has rendered great service in Africa. In a recent year it spent over \$7,000,000 (gold) in such world-wide service. These are only examples of how public service has begun to be international. When the ship you sail on puts up a white flag with a square blue center, it means, "*I am carrying an international pilot.*" You sail by lighthouses that guide all ships alike and are marked on maps that are for the use of all nations. Some article of food on your table was, perhaps, brought to you by men of many countries: picked by a Malay, sold by a Dutch merchant, carried by a French ship, bought by a British importer, retailed by a Chinese shop. The ten-cent stamp you

人們尙不明白國際的委員會和國際的機關。現在的宗教機關和慈善機關，像教會，紅十字會，青年會，童子軍，他們的服務事業惠及各地的人民。一九二一年美國的紅十字會在山東造成八百五十六哩鐵路，幫助由中國或別國建築的不足。研究科學的團體歡迎有才幹的男女入會，並徵求國際的科學家援助研究的工作。政府頒發獎狀給服務有功的男女，不問他們是那一國的國民。諾貝爾獎金每兩年發一次，給各國各種事業最有成績的人。華盛頓的卡尼其基金會研究地球的磁性吸引力，但它的工作並不祇限於美國。研究員不僅是美國人，也有中國人，和別國的人；它的成效是公開地屬於各國人的。洛克斐勒基金會會遣派醫師到北平開設一所宏大的醫學校，幫助中國人，英國人，美國人，及其他在中國各地從事醫學事業的人。該基金會捐助中國的大學，英國的大學，和別國的大學，正如捐助美國的大學一樣。它又在南美中美撲滅黃熱病，會中的醫師有日本人，古巴人和其他所需要的人。不限國籍。這個會在非洲也有偉大的事業。近年來，該會又發了七、〇〇〇、〇〇〇美金充作國際事業。這些都是公共事業成爲國際的例子。你若坐了一隻船，上面掛着中間有藍色四方的白旗，就是說，「我載着一個國際的罷工。」你從燈塔駛過，那是指示一切船隻的，要在地圖上標明爲各國所通用的。也許，你的桌上的食物是由各國人供給的：先從馬來人採取，再從荷蘭人出售，又從法國船隻運，更從英國進口商購買，然後在中國商店零售。貼在你信封上的一角錢郵票，

place upon your letter gives you *the prompt and sure service of a multitude of public servants of many nations.* The day has come when we think of the service rendered rather than the nationality of the man or woman who renders it. It is interesting to see Chinese and other foreign students in even a government military college in a Western country. In the World War there were French companies with British in them, American companies with Chinese in them, British companies with Americans in them, and so on. International services increased in importance until the League of Nations was formed. This is now undertaking many new lines of work that will bring into the world still more international public service.

4. Handling the People's Mail

In the handling of mail there is now almost complete world-wide coöperation. China is a member of the International Postal Union. The Chinese postal services are among the best and most extensive in the world. Mail service in China is quick, safe, and cheap. In some places a one-cent stamp will carry a letter a hundred miles and more. A four-cent stamp has carried it thousands of miles. If you carried it yourself or sent it by a messenger, it would cost you perhaps hundreds of dollars, and your letter would not be so safe as it is in the hands of a public servant who is protected by special laws and checked and guided by a great system of supervision.

This great system reaches every part of the country. It maps out paths that carry letters to every district and to almost every village. Bringing mail from all these far-away places, it hands you letters at your door. The members of your own family are not so prompt and sure and regular in carrying your messages as are these official postmen.

A mounted courier service across the *Gobi Desert* connects *Kalgan* with *Urga* and *Kiakhta*, the total distance of 3921 li (1206 miles) being done in eleven days.

就是各國人民為你服務敏捷正確的明證。我們希望服務的男女宜以成績去統計，不應以國籍去區別，這樣的日子現在已經到了。你若看見西洋國家的國立陸軍大學中的中國和外國的學生同學，便覺得非常有趣。在歐戰時，法國軍隊中有英國人，美國軍隊中有中國人，英國軍隊中有美國人，其他類推。因為國際服務重要的增加，才有國際聯盟的組織。現在會裏做了很多新事業，這些事業更產生了較多的國際公共的服務了。

四 辦理人民的郵政

關於辦理郵政，現在差不多有世界合作的性質。中國是國際郵政聯合會的一個會員。中國的郵政是世界中最著名最普及的。中國的郵遞也是迅速，穩妥，而且便宜。有許多地方只要貼上一分郵票，（譯者註：現已改為二分）便可將信件寄到一百多哩路遠。四分郵票，（譯者註：現已改為五分）便可寄到幾千哩路遠。若你自己攜帶或託他人送往，那就得化幾百塊錢，而且你的信也不及在郵差手裏穩妥。因為郵差是受特別法律保護，受偉大監察制度度指導的。

這種偉大的制度，已經普及全國各處。它劃出遞送的路綫，可使信件送到各邑及各村。信件由遞處寄來送到你的門口。你家裏的人傳遞消息，並不及郵差那樣敏捷，穩妥和規正。

經過戈壁大沙漠，緊接着張家口庫倫和恰克圖，共有路綫三六二一哩（一二〇六哩），一個騎馬的郵差只需十一天便能到達……

From the present terminus of Lung-Hai Railway in Hoan a continuous chain of day-and-night couriers, for the most part mounted, runs through Tungkwai, Sianfu, Lanchowfu, Ansichow, thence via Tihwafu (Uramtsi) to Kashgar on the borders of Russian Turkestan. The total length of this line is 10,843 li (3614 miles), which makes it the longest postal courier line in the world. The time taken, when there are no delays, is forty days. . . . The service of heavy mails through the Yangtze gorges to Chengtu, the capital of Szechwan, and on to Tibet shows *no less enterprise*. Before merchant steamers ventured up the river to Chungking, a fleet of fast post boats was specially built to ply between Chungking and Ichang through the dangerous rapids. Even though *full advantage is taken of whatever steam service there now is*, thirty-two post boats are kept busy, carrying over twenty thousand bags of mail annually. . . . Wrecks are not uncommon, but mails are nearly always recovered. For the sake of speed, light mails for Chengtu and the West are carried overland all the way from Hankow by day couriers and night couriers. Hankow letters are delivered in Chengtu (1023 miles) in thirteen days and in Tatsienlu (1313 miles) in eighteen days. From Tatsienlu a line continues three hundred and seventy-five miles farther to Batang, the chief town of the *Tibetan Marches*. In normal times this is linked up with the Tibetan system by a line across the border to *Chamdo*, so that there is a direct overland communication from Peiping to Lhasa.

Think what a service is described in the quotation from the report given above. Think also of the growth of the service. Here are the figures for the numbers of articles of mail matter posted:

In 1901	3,500,000
In 1906	37,000,000
In 1911	125,000,000
In 1916	250,432,273
In 1921	445,686,018
In 1925	565,007,763

It is not only letters that are carried quickly for you but also newspapers, magazines, books, and small packages of all sorts. The quick distribution of newspapers, magazines, and books is a service of the greatest importance to the nation. How can a nation have unity unless the people share common purposes and interests?

……從河南龍海鐵路的終點，日夜路上都有驛卒，大抵是騎着馬經過瀾關，西安府，蘭州府，安西州，再由迪化到俄國土耳其斯坦邊界的喀什葛爾。這條路線共長一〇八四三哩（三六一四哩），可說是世界上最長的郵政路線。若不耽擱，只需四十天……從揚子峽道到四川省的成都運重的郵件到達西藏，也不能不說是一種壯舉。在商務的輪船冒險駛過重慶以前，已有一隊特造的快郵船，經過危險的急流往來於重慶與宜昌之間。現在雖竭力利用輪船，仍有三十二隻郵船忙着每年運輸二萬袋的郵件。船隻覆沒，固然並不是不常有，但郵件總常保存。為欲省時，運往成都和西部的郵件，總在漢口用日夜驛卒由陸地運送。由漢口到成都（一〇二三里）的信，十三天可達，到打箭爐，（一三一三哩）十八天可達。從打箭爐又有一條三百七十五哩的路線到西藏首區的巴塘。在平時，有一條和西藏相聯絡的路線，通到江達的邊界，所以從北平到拉薩有直接陸地的交通。

想一想上面所報告的郵務是怎麼一回事，再想想郵務的進展吧。下表是中國歷年所交郵件的總數：

一九〇一年.....	三、五〇〇、〇〇〇
一九〇六年.....	三七、〇〇〇、〇〇〇
一九一一年.....	一二五、〇〇〇、〇〇〇
一九一六年.....	二五〇、四三二、二七三
一九二一年.....	四四六、六八六、〇一八
一九二五年.....	五六五、〇〇七、七六三

郵局不但很快地為你傳遞信件，也一樣為你寄送新聞紙，雜誌，書籍，和各種小包裹。新聞紙，雜誌，書籍迅速的傳遞，是國家的一種最重要的事業。人民若無共同的目標和利益，國家怎能統一起來呢？

How can they have the same ideas and ideals and plans unless they read the same things? The Chinese post office is a binding force drawing together all parts of the nation.

It is also important and exceedingly convenient to be able to send packages. If a man in Canton wants to sell ginger to a dealer in Hankow, he can mail him a sample that will travel by the fastest steamers and trains and cost only a few cents. Exactly the same thing is true if he wishes to send the sample to a dealer in Chicago or Paris or Liverpool. He may wish to deliver to an agent in some distant city a valuable piece of jade or a picture or a bottle of medicine. It can be sent. It can be registered so that its presence will be checked at every place it is handled; *the eye of this great system is on it.* Its safe arrival can be made sure by a return receipt that comes all the way back to the sender. And all this service costs the sender only a few cents, because there is a well-regulated and supervised system and organization.

This service goes into the sending of money also. The receiving of packages alone is sure to make people want to send money, but there are many other causes for this demand. Therefore such a service is a wonderful convenience and a *stimulus to business of all kinds.* You go to a post office, pay in your money, receive an order, mail the order to someone at the other end of the land, and, when he goes to his post office with the order, there is the money waiting for him.

The post office is an example of a great organization for rendering you service, not to make money for itself or anybody else. It does an enormous amount of work. About eight hundred bags and packages of mail on an average pass through or from the post office of one city in South China every day of the year.

When we see the postman coming, let us give him a cheerful word. Let us help him to realize his position as a part of a great and valuable organization working in

如果他們不讀同樣的東西，怎能具有同樣的思想、觀念、和計劃呢？中國的郵局就是聯絡國內各部分的一團團結力。

可以運輸包裹，也是一種最重要最方便的事情。廣東人若要宴饗給漢口人，他可藉最快的輪船或火車，化了幾分錢從郵局寄點樣品去。他若要將樣品寄給芝加哥或巴黎或利物浦的商人，也是一樣的辦法。他還可以把一塊貴重的玉石，或一張國畫，或一瓶藥物，寄給遠地的城市中的經理。這都是好寄的東西。寄時須掛號，因為要受各處的检查，使郵局加以注意。待郵件送到時，郵局即將收信人的收據遞回發信人。這類郵件，只須化幾分錢，因為國家有完善的章程，管理的制度和組織。

郵局也可以匯錢。單以投遞包裹而論，也就是使人民有金錢的匯劃，但這種需要還有別的原因。所以這類的服務，是一種非常的利便，並且是各項事業的興奮劑。你到郵局去，交了你的錢，得着一張匯票，將這匯票寄給別地的人，等到那人持着匯票往郵局中去時，錢就在那裏等待他了。

郵局是為你服務，不是為自己或任何人賺錢的一個大機關的例子。它做了許多事情。中國南方某城有個郵局，每天經手的郵件和包裹，平均有八百袋之多。

我們看見郵差來時，讓我們給他說一句歡迎的話。我們要幫助他，使他明白他的地位是國家事業中最偉大最有價值的。

the service of the country. Let us respect him as a valuable public servant.

5. Wire and Wireless Service

Very much like the postal service is the telegraph and cable service. Here again are faithful public servants, some on duty during the day and others every minute of the night, ready to send or receive your messages. You write your message on a piece of paper, paying a small amount per word, and it is at once sent for you to any part of the world. Across the land and under the sea run the miles of wires. It is said that one telegraph company in a Western country has over a million miles of wire to take care of. Think of the men who have to follow the lines and repair them—sometimes on dangerous high places, sometimes out on the ocean, sometimes in distant mountain forests. We are able to do a wonderful thing in sending and receiving messages because of a great public-service organization.

Very closely related to the telegraph and cable service is the telephone service. It usually begins with a city system, but it is easy to see that its usefulness increases with the extent to which it expands. Extending the telephone system into the rural parts of China will make village life far more attractive. A farmer will then be able to call up a man a hundred miles away and arrange with him in a few minutes about a sale or some other business. The farmer's wife can call up a sister whose son is ill far away. Night and day someone is ready to do you service *in connecting you with other people and ringing them up*. Here, again, there are wires and apparatus to keep in repair—far more, as a rule, than in the telegraph companies. One company in a Western country is said to have twenty-five million miles of wire, enough to go around the world a thousand times. That keeps a great army of men busy. Such service helps people to succeed *in business, to live fuller lives, and to conduct a better*

組織的一部分。我們要尊重他，當他是個可敬的公僕。

五 電報和無線電事業

和郵政相彷彿的，是電報和海底電線事業。做這種專業的，也是政府的公僕，有的白天服務，有的夜間值班，預備收發你的信息。你把你的信息寫在一張紙上，每字化少許錢，就立刻將它送到世界的任何地方去。陸地和海底都有幾百里的電線。據說西洋有個國家的電報局送管理百萬哩長的電線。想想那些從事電線和管理電線的人——有時站在危險的高處，有時到了海洋的中間，有時在遠處的山林中。我們之所以能做到這種收發信息的壯舉，就全靠這一種偉大的公共服務的機關。

和電報海底電線事業有密切關係的是電話事業。電話起初總在城市中設置，但你很容易看出它的用處隨着擴充而增加它的界限。電話若能發展到中國農村去，那使鄉村生活更有趣了。這樣，農夫便可在一百哩路遠的地方和人談話，並在幾分鐘內，妥商賣買及其他業務。農夫的妻子也可招她的姊妹到來，因為她的兒子在遠處患病。日夜都有人預備為你服務，代你呼喚人家接話。電話的電線和機件是常要修理的——以普通而論，總比電報局需要得多。西洋國家有一家電話公司，據說有二千五百萬哩長的電線，足夠繞地球一千次。這電話局裏有很多的人，忙着工作。此項服務，幫助人民得到業務上的成功，享受更完滿的生活，監督較好的

government. By joining nations together it promotes friendly relations and shows us that we are all members of one great human family.

The word "wire" was just becoming a verb when the word "wireless" appeared. Wireless telegraphy is a big new service. One of its great uses is to open conversation between the land and ships at sea. This was of great importance in the World War, as was also similar communication between ships and airships and armies and moving trains. A ship in a fog announces its location or the location of an iceberg or any other danger. Ships can publish the daily news *all the way across the ocean*. A ship in trouble sends out the letters "S.O.S.," which in all languages are known to mean "Save us." And now the wireless telephone, or radio, has come as a new public service. News, lectures, music, and the like are sent out "broadcast" for the benefit of everybody who has a *receiving set*.

All these means of communication work together to give us better newspapers and magazines, to promote business, and to make life more interesting in every way.

6. Another Group of Public Servants

Quite a different type of public service is that of aids to navigation along the coasts and rivers. Every channel must be charted and kept charted. Every dangerous rock and bar must be marked. Every important point on the coast must have a lighthouse, and every light must be kept burning at night and in exactly the way that the charts show it. One lighthouse, for example, shows a white light three seconds and then is dark five seconds. Any ship's captain who sees such a light knows exactly where he is, for the light always flashes in that way and no other light in that region ever does. The coast of China is said to be one of the best-lighted in the world. The Chinese Maritime Customs is the great organization that looks after this service. It keeps 192

政府。仗着國際間互相聯絡，增進邦交的友誼，表示我們都是人類大家庭的分子。

「電線」兩字，從產生了「無線的」三字以後，便成爲動靜了。無線電報是種偉大的新事業。它的最大的用處是能在陸地上和海洋的船上談話。歐戰時，無線電報極關重要，好似和輪船、飛機、軍隊、火車各種交通器具一樣重要。如果一隻船還在霧中，或觸着冰山，或遇着任何危險，無線電都能指出船的所在點。輪船經過海洋時，可將每日在途中的消息報告出來。一隻船遇險要發出「S.O.S.」的字母，無論在何種文字裏，都是「救救我們的意思。現在的無線電話又成爲新的公共事業了。新聞，演講，音樂，及其他相似的東西都可播音，爲備有收音機者謀利益。

這些交通的方法互相聯合起來，給我們更好的新聞和雜誌，提倡事業，並使生活在各方面更有興趣。

六 另一羣的公僕

還有一種完全不同的公共事業，就是幫助沿岸河流的航行事業。每條水道應繪成航海地圖，並須繼續不斷地繪這種地圖。各種的危險的石頭和沙灘，必須做出標記。海口上每個重要的地方須設燈塔，所有的燈應當通夜點着，並且宜照航海地圖所指示的絕對一樣。例如，一座燈塔先發出白光三秒鐘，然後熄滅五分鐘。任何船長看見這種燈光，便知道自已的所在，因爲那光老是用同一方式閃耀着，但在同一的地方却無此項燈光。中國的海口據說在世界上是供給燈塔最好的一個。監督此項偉大事業的機關是中國的海關。海關管理一百九十二

great lights, 5 light-vessels, 52 lightboats, 276 buoys, and 970 beacons, which make a total of 1495 "aids to navigation," or devices for the protection of your life and property, on the seas and rivers of China.

Each harbor office must control the ships that come and go. They must be safe for passengers. They must start at the right time, follow the proper routes, give the proper signals, carry the proper lights, and so on. Ships bringing disease are stopped and held until free from it. All this is for the service and protection of the public. There are pilots examined and registered. No man who has not his "papers" may be the master or officer of a steamship. Even seamen are examined. Ships too are examined, and their engines and life-saving apparatus are inspected. In some countries there are life-saving crews always on the watch along dangerous coasts.

The weather bureau is an organization to gather information about the weather and to forecast the weather for the next day. It issues maps that show the general condition of the weather over the whole country and part of the sea. This indicates the probable conditions for a few days in advance. Ships on the sea, *planes in the air*, and farmers on the land all have great need for a forecast of the weather. The condition of the tides and water levels in the rivers is also an important matter carefully studied and reported upon. So also is *the mere matter of time*. For the sake of getting their latitude and longitude at sea, mariners must have places where they can find out the exact time and set their clocks.

During the terrible typhoon in the region of Swatow in 1922, lighthouses had their roofs blown off, while the rain poured in for hours; but the keepers stuck to their lights and kept them flashing properly and clearly through it all. There are heroes in all branches of the public service. All honor to them!

座大燈塔，五隻羅輪，五十二隻燈舟，二百七十六個浮標，九百七十個礁標，共計有一千四百九十五種航海所需的補助物，這是為保護你的生命財產在中國河海內所設的方法。

每個海口管理局應管理來往的船隻。它們必須為旅行謀安全。它們必須在一定的時間進行，遵守正當的路線，發出相宜的標記，提供適當的燈光，以及其他各種事務。載有傳染病人的船，必須停留，待疾病消滅為止。這全是為保護民衆而實行的事業。舵工須受檢驗與登記。沒有證書的人不能當船長或船員。就是水手也得檢驗。船隻須受檢驗，它們的機器和救生器具要受檢查。有許多國家裏，救生的海員常在危險的海口守望著。

氣候測量局是報告各種氣候消息，並預報翌日氣候的一個機關。局裏分發地圖，說明全國和海洋一部分的氣候一般狀況。這也指示最近幾天內的大概情形。凡是海上的船隻，空中的飛機，陸地的農夫，對於天氣的預告，都有極大的機需。潮水的狀態和江河中的水平線也是一種仔細研究和報告的重要事項。所以單是時間一事，也就一樣重要。為了在海洋中求查經緯線的度數，航海的人須有一個時間正確的地方去對準他們的鐘點。

一九三二年汕頭地方發生可怕的暴風雨時，燈塔的頂被風吹去，同時雨下了幾個鐘頭；但是看守燈塔的人依然守着燈光，且使燈光適宜地清楚地照射。各種公共事業中都有英雄。我們應當尊重他們！

7. The Army and the Navy

Many of the greatest problems of a modern nation have to do with the army and the navy. A great modern navy includes the big battleships; the great fast cruisers; the still faster but small torpedo boats and destroyers; the river gunboats; the submarines and *their mother ships*, the seaplanes; the mine-layers; the troopships; the hospital ships; and others. A navy is a big thing, a wonderful system, a great scientific organization, a powerful governmental machine.

In times of peace the capture of smugglers, protection against pirates, and rescue of ships in distress are the chief functions of a navy at home, and these functions are very necessary. The *reign of law and order upon the water* is just as necessary as upon the land. The water offers a special temptation to robbers, because they can come and go quietly and leave no tracks behind. For this water policing there are harbor police, but there must also be a navy for the more dangerous work. There, again, is a great public service. We must build up a modern navy, large enough to render this service, but not so large as to be a burden to the people. Life, liberty, and the pursuit of happiness often depend upon its service.

A modern army includes the infantry, the cavalry, the artillery, *the air forces*, the engineers, the miners, the service of communication, the medical and the surgical department, the supply departments, the transportation departments, and others, with *the great coordinating central staff* which keeps all working together like a single great engine. Then there are arsenals and magazines, placed at various points throughout the country, where many of the great cannons and rifles are made and stored until the need for them arises. The army is not often an engine of construction; it is usually an engine of destruction. Occasionally an army builds a permanent road or bridge. But almost always an army is an expensive thing, a dangerous thing, and a destructive thing.

七 海陸軍

現代國家的許多大問題都與海陸軍有關。一個偉大新式的海軍包括着大的軍艦；大而快的巡洋艦；更快可是較小的魚雷艇和轟炸艦；江河戰鬥艦；潛水艇和它們的母艦；水上飛機；魚雷敷設艦；軍艦檢送艦；軍醫艦；尚有其他等等。海軍是一種大專業，是一種別緻的制度，是一種偉大的科學組織，也是一種政府的有力機關。

在和平時代，一國海軍的主要職務是捕獲漏稅的人，防禦海盜，救護遇險的船隻，而這些職務為非常重要的。無論在水上或陸上維持法管和秩序，總是一樣要緊。水上是特別容易誘引強盜，因為他們能悄然地自由來往，不留任何痕跡。水上當然有水上警察巡游着，但必須有海軍擔任更危險的工作。這又是一個偉大的公共專業。我們必須建設新式的海軍，足夠勝任這類工作，但不可大得使人民加重其負擔。生命，自由和幸福的追求，往往是依靠這種服務的。

一個新式的陸軍包括着步兵，騎兵，砲兵，空軍，工兵，地雷工兵，交通隊，醫學外科部，軍需部，運輸部，還有別的，和偉大的中央參謀部，大家共同工作，好似一架單獨的機器。此外，尚有兵工廠，火藥庫，遍設全國各地，製造備藏各式的大槍砲，以備不時之需。陸軍不能常算是建設的工具。它往往是破壞的工具。偶然軍隊也有建設永久的遺蹟和橋樑的，但軍隊差不多是一種消費很大的，危險，破壞性的東西。

3. Reduction of the Army

It is said that in 1928 China's army numbered about two million, the largest standing army in the world. It has been a cause of long civil wars; it *has dominated the civil authorities of the government*; it has eaten up nearly all the country's annual income. The money we need for roads, railroads, dikes, mines, factories, and schools has been put into this huge engine of destruction. Fortunately the National Government has recently made plans and taken steps to reduce greatly the size of the army and to turn the disbanded soldiers into useful occupations. We must all support this movement, and public opinion will help it to succeed.

A modern nation does not need a large army. In case of war people can be conscripted by the government, trained, and added to the regular army. After the fighting the army should be at once brought back to the smaller figure. This has been proved by the experience of Western countries in the World War.

An army has functions other than going to war. Why do the great nations have armies in time of peace? Why do they treat the soldiers with honor and respect? Why do they pay a soldier well, pay his family after his death, give him good food, clothing, quarters, care, education, and special training? There are two reasons for having an army in time of peace: to have the basis for quickly developing a big army in time of war and to preserve law and order throughout the country. These two things are so important that it is necessary to treat the army well, respect and honor it, *recognize generously its worth* and its patriotism, so that the nation shall have a good army. A nation suffers when its army is larger than necessary. It must always take care that the army is small and that it is in every respect a good one.

We wish our army to be small but reliable. We want it to keep order over all the country. Wherever the police of a town, city, or district find they cannot put down disorder and capture criminals, and cannot increase

八 裁減陸軍

據說在一九二八年，中國的陸軍有二百萬，可算得全世界最多的常備軍了。這種陸軍是引起長久內戰的原因；它支配政府的文官，它幾乎耗費了全年所有的收入。我們需要建設道路，工路，堤壩，礦務，工廠，學校的一筆錢，完全用在這種大的破壞工具上面了。幸而國民政府最近已定了計劃逐漸減少陸軍的數目，並且吩咐遺散的軍人去做有用的事業。我們大家應當擁護這種運動，同時應當使輿論也幫助它成功。

近代的國家並不需要多大的陸軍。若遇戰事，政府可採取徵兵制度，給予訓練，編入常備軍。戰事停後，軍隊須立刻減成少數。這是世界大戰後西洋各國由經驗所得到的實證。

除打仗以外，陸軍還有別的職務。爲什麼大的國家在太平時代要養兵呢？爲什麼它們優待尊重軍人呢？爲什麼它們要給軍人厚餉，死了要撫恤他的家族，供他好的衣食住，照顧，教育和特殊訓練呢？太平時代需要陸軍，理由有二：第一是準備戰時可立刻組織大軍的基礎；第二是維持全國的法律和治安。這兩件事情非常重要，所以必須善待軍人，尊重軍人，盡量地提高他們的價值和愛國心，使國家能有良好的軍隊。軍隊若超過了必要的數目，國家就得受損。因此宜注意軍隊減少，且使絕對完善。

我們希望我們的陸軍少而可靠。我們要它爲全國保持治安。一城，一鎮，一區的警察，若不能鎮壓叛亂，逮捕罪犯，若不能充分地增加

the local force sufficiently, the provincial section of the national army must help them. Wherever a local or provincial force attacks another locality or province, or does not itself obey the laws, the national army must stop the fighting, so that the questions at issue may be decided by law and reason rather than by force. Decisions by force should not be allowed, either within a country or between nation and nation. In 1928-1929 over fifty nations signed a peace pact, pledging themselves to use only pacific means to settle any differences or disputes that may arise between them in the future. The signatories of this treaty include almost all the countries of the world, and China is one of them. Let us hope that armies and navies will be only a great police force and never *war-making machines*.

For such police purposes the military side of a government must be thoroughly good. Let us do all we can to make it good. What do we mean by a good army? A good army is scientifically made and managed. It is like a fine engine which has no useless parts, no waste of fuel, no bad connections, no weak places, no poor material, no lack of attention, with everything clean, bright, shining, and ready for immediate and efficient work; it is an engine to be proud of, and one that responds to pride and good care.

9. Civil and Military Authorities

In times of revolution *military officers are often at the same time civil officials*. But as soon as the campaign is over, there should be a separation of authority between civil officials and military officers. The latter should be subordinated to the former. A good army is one that is completely under the control of the civil authorities chosen by the people. It is, like the post-office army, an organization of public servants, not of masters or of private citizens. It must go where the people's representatives send it, do the work they order done, no matter

地方實力，那麼駐防該省的國家軍隊必須幫助他們。本地或本省的軍隊若去打別地或別省，或自己不遵守法律，國家軍隊應阻止其戰爭，使他們所爭的問題由法律和公理解決，不得訴諸武力。無論在國內或國際，武力的解決總應當消滅。當一九二八年至一九二九年時，有五十個國家簽訂和平公約，担保它們自己以後，國際間如發生任何意見或糾紛，必須用和平的方法解決。和平公約的簽訂人差不多遍及全世界的國家，中國是其中之一。我們希望海陸軍只是一種偉大的警力，永不作戰爭的工具。

爲了警務的緣故，政府的軍隊方面必須絕對地完善。我們爲盡量使它完善。一個完善的軍隊是什麼意思呢？完善的軍隊的組織和管理是科學化的。這好似一架良好的機器，它沒有無用的部分，沒有消耗的燃料，沒有不良的關節，沒有軟弱的地方，沒有劣等的材料，沒有缺少注意，各種機件都是清潔，光澤，發亮，並且能預備立刻作有效的工作；這類的機器是值得讚美，倣視，和保管的。

九 文武官員

在革命期間，武官往往兼任文官的職務。但待革命過後，文武官員就當分治。武官應附屬在文官之下。好的軍隊是由文官管轄，由人民選舉的。這好似郵局中的人員，是一種公僕的組織，既不是主人，也不是科人的團體。人民的代表派他到那兒去，他就上那兒去，做他們所吩咐的工作。

how dangerous it is, die as heroes for the public good if necessary. If an army does anything more than that, it is not a good army. If it *takes a hand in politics*, if it takes up the work of the judges or the police, if it in any way interferes with the making or executing of the laws, it is *outside its rightful field*. Except as the civil authorities use it in such ways to enable them for a certain time to restore order, the army may not touch such affairs. If it does, it is the enemy of the nation and not its honored servant. A good army is one that loves its nation above all else, that is thoroughly patriotic, that will work and fight and die for the good of the nation,—not for some man or clique or section of the country but for the nation and its whole people. Let us have a small but splendid army that will love and honor the national flag it carries.

10. Paying for Public Service

A public-service corporation, such as a railway or a tram line or a telephone system or an electric-light plant, usually works under a *franchise given it by the laws of the community*, but it collects directly from you the pay for the service it gives you. The money you pay on a tramcar pays not only for your ride but also for the regular and frequent opportunities offered you to ride day and night. So also with other such public services.

But how about the case of public service for which you do not pay directly? How is it paid for? The police give you constant service; who pays for it? Who pays for the teachers in the public schools, for the superintendents and inspectors, for the bureau of education, for schoolhouses, for streets and street lights, for the cleaning of streets and all health protection, for the water supply, for fire protection, for courts, for parks, for sewers, for the jails and asylums, for the lighthouses, for the weather stations, and for all other forms of "FREE" public service? Some are local and some are national, but all must be

不論是多少危險，只要於公民有共同的福利，必要時就得像英雄一樣犧牲了生命。一個軍隊所做的事，若超過這範圍，便不是好的軍隊。軍隊若預與政治，若担任法官或警察的職務。若用任何方法干涉法律的訂定或執行，這便越出界限了。除了文官有時需要軍隊幫助恢復秩序，軍隊不能與聞這類事務。要是違背了，這便是國家的仇人，並非可敬的公僕。好的軍隊是以愛國為第一，充滿愛國心，為國家的利益而工作甚至殉身的——並非為某人或國家的某黨某派，乃是為國家和全體的人民。我們要有少數但很光榮的軍隊，這軍隊敬愛着它所攜帶着的國旗。

十 公共事業的費用

公共事業，如鐵路，電車，電話，電燈等團體，在社會上，法律都常給予特權，但那個為你服務的團體却直接向你收取費用。你化錢坐電車，不只是你乘坐時的費用，也是你在日夜都有定時與機會乘坐的費用。別的公共事業也是一樣。

可是，對於你不直接付給費用的公共事業又怎樣呢！費用怎樣付給呢？警察永遠給你服務；誰去負擔呢？公立學校的教員，名譽，視察，教育局，校舍，街道，路燈，清潔道路，保護健康，自來水，消防隊，法庭，公園，溝渠，監獄，救濟局，燈塔，氣象台，及其他各用免費的公共事業，這些費有由誰付給呢？有的歸地方負擔，有的由國家供給，

paid for. The people are served, so the people must pay. In the case of the postal service the people pay when they buy stamps, because that kind of service is easily measured and paid for, *piece by piece*. Even in that case it takes a great deal of time and money and management to collect all the money through the sale of stamps. This method would be impossible in some forms of public service and entirely too inconvenient in others.

Public service is usually paid for by taxes. If it were not for the tax collectors we could not have a government. We sometimes become very impatient with the customs officers who inspect our baggage and make us pay import or export duties, but we should remember that they also are public servants, and that these taxes are the financial strength of the government.

There are many ways of collecting taxes. It used to be a custom in some countries for each voter to pay a tax, but this was stopped because it taxed the poor man just as much as the rich man, and because it was a great temptation to sell one's vote to anyone who would pay the tax. Taxing salt, which is an important taxing method in China, also taxes almost equally the rich and the poor. Which receives more benefit from the public services, the rich man or the poor man? Taxes on goods imported seem to make the foreigner pay our taxes; but really those who finally buy the goods for use are the ones who pay, as all the others who handle the articles merely add the tax to the price at which they sell. Some money is collected for the *registration of deeds* and other documents, and some by the sale of *stamps required to make checks, receipts, and other documents legal*.

The chief source of revenue in most countries is the tax upon property. In China there is a special way to tax land. Each landowner reports to the government the value of his land and pays a tax according to a certain percentage. If he overestimates its value, he has to pay more. If the value he declares seems too low, the government may buy the land at his price.

但都必須付清的。人民既享保護的權利，亦必盡納稅的義務。以郵政事業而論，人民付了錢去買郵票，因為這種事業容易估價，容易按件付款。就算這樣，也要費了許多時間金錢和計劃，去收集由出售郵票而得來的款項。此項辦法，在別的公共事業中是辦不到的，因為這是太麻煩了。

公共事業常是由捐稅的名義付款的。若無收捐的人員，我們也不能有政府了。有時海關職員檢查我們的行李，並要我們納進出口的捐稅，我們真覺得非常難耐，不過我們應當知道他們也是公僕，而且這些捐稅是政府財政的力量。

還有別種的收捐辦法。從前許多國家中，有一種習慣，凡是投票的人須納捐稅，但這種制度不久就取消了，因為窮人要 and 富人一樣納稅，並且因了這種大的引誘，常把自己的選舉權賣給願意納稅的人。鹽稅是中國的一種重要的稅收，差不多是貧富一律交納的。享受着更多的公共事業的利益的是誰——富人還是窮人？征收進口貨稅，彷彿是令外國人納稅；其實付錢的是最後用貨的人，因為辦貨的人只要在出關時將捐稅加在貨物價格上就行了。有的款項的收入，由契據和別的註冊文件而來，有的款項的收入，由出售印花，使支票、收據及其他文件都合法使用。

多數國家的收入，主要來源是財產稅。在中國有特種的方法征收土地稅。每個地主將自己的土地價值報告給政府，然後按照百分法納稅。如果地主把土地的價值估得太高，他就得多納稅。如果他所估的價。太低，政府可照價買其土地。

The income tax is another important source of revenue. This is a tax which in some countries falls very heavily upon the people. In some the rich only are taxed; the richer a man is, the higher his tax rate. In some countries it falls heavily even upon the poor people.

Taxes in China have not been heavy. If a Chinese citizen compares his taxes with those of a Japanese or British citizen, he will find that his taxes are quite low. If they increase year by year, he need not be surprised. As the public services increase, the taxes also must increase, unless there is an increased source of revenue elsewhere or a great saving somewhere.

11. Sovereignty and Ability

There are two forms of government by the people. Each has its advantages and disadvantages. One may be better under certain conditions, and the other be better under other conditions. The first may be called direct government. In small villages the people all come together at times to discuss and settle some matter. The elders are the leaders. Everyone in the village can attend and give his opinion on the subject. *All sides of the question* are discussed by *people of different points of view*. It may take a long time to reach an agreement, but when once it is reached, they are more likely to cooperate in carrying it out. This form of government does not always work so well. Its success depends on three conditions: the number of the people must be small, the problems discussed must be clearly understood and *within the ability of the people to solve*, and they must take an active interest in their common affairs. If these conditions do not exist, this form of government has many weaknesses. At a meeting there may be a great deal of speaking, but no one really cares what is said. It seems that everyone present thinks that it is necessary for him to speak, and that this is the most important thing to do, because the speaker often goes

所得稅也是一種收入的重要來源。有些國家的人民，對於此項捐款覺得負擔很重。有些國家，只捐有錢的人；愈是有錢，收捐亦愈多。還有些國家，就是窮人，也須繳納重捐。

中國的捐稅不能說很重。中國的公民若把他的捐稅和日本或英國的公民比較起來，就覺得捐數十分低微了。倘稅捐年年增加，他也用不到驚駭。因為公共事業增加了，賦稅也就要增加，除非新增一種收入的來源，或在其處有宗巨大的儲蓄。

十一 主權和能力

民治的政體有兩種。各有各的利弊。一種在某種情形之下較好，一種在別種情形下較好。第一種可稱為直接政體。小村落的人民，在一定的時期，聚會討論要解決的事情。年長者當領袖。村中的人都可到會，對於問題參加意見。問題的各方面，由人民用不同的見地辯論着。說不定要化了很長的時間方能商妥，但一經商妥，便容易合作實行。這種政體，不能常有成效。它的成功的條件有三：第一，人數宜少；第二，所討論的問題必須絕對清楚了解，並且在人民的可能範圍內解決；第三，人民對於公共事業必須用自動的注意。以上三種條件，若不存在，這種政體便無能為力，在開會時也許有許多入發言，但誰也不注意所說的是什麼。到會的人都以為發言很重要，而且是必須做的一件事情，因為發言人說完話後，就去

off to feed his buffaloes or talk to somebody as soon as he finishes his speech. *The real question at issue is often forgotten or put aside.* The meeting often breaks up without any decision, or a group of young fellows who have nothing to do take charge of the close of it. Frequently a wrong decision is made. Perhaps the wise men and women have no chance to present the right side of the matter, or *they may not be interested enough even to attend the meeting.* So this kind of government has many weaknesses even in a small village; in a big town or province or country it would, of course, be impossible.

The second form of government by the people is called representative government. Because modern society has become very complex, government has become a very large and complex organization. *It includes too many people to gather them into one place for debate.* Its questions are so difficult that very few people can discuss them intelligently. Law-making and law-enforcing have become so technical that the wisest and best-educated men are required; so the people elect men with ability and honesty as their representatives and officials to make laws, to carry out the laws, to collect taxes, to run the government, and so on. The people do not rule themselves, but *they do rule through their representatives.* What is the duty of the citizens? They have one task, the most important of all, *for the success of representative government depends upon this:* it is the duty of voting for the right representatives. The citizens may not be able to solve the problems of government, but they can at least choose good men. They must elect wise, good, honest, public-spirited citizens to represent them. If this is done the government will be efficiently managed for the benefit of the whole people. Governments of modern nations are to a large extent representative.

However, representative government also has some weaknesses. Some of the representatives and officials elected may turn out to be bad men. They may be

跟他的水平或和人談別的事了。所要討論的正式問題，倒常被忘卻或擱置起來。會議總是毫無結果地分散，有時被一般無所事事青年主持閉會的儀式，結果往往把該決的事情弄糟。也許有知識的男女沒有機會貢獻正確的意見，或者他們對於社會不發生興趣。所以這種政體，就是在小鄉村中，也有許多缺點；若在大的城市裏，那自然更不成了。

第二許民治的政體，稱為代議政體。因為現代的社會已成為很繁複的了，政府也成為很廣大很複雜的機關了。它所包括的人民太多，所以不能把他們聚在一起討論事情。它的問題非常困難，只有少數的人有能力去解決。立法和施行法律是專門的學問，只有最聰明而受過高等教育的人才能擔任；因此人民選舉有才幹而又誠實的人，做他們的代表，當他們的官吏，修訂法律，實施法律，收納租稅，主持政務，以及辦理其他事項。人民並不管轄自己，但他們舉代表來管轄。公民的責任是什麼呢？他們有種最重要的工作，代議政體的成功也只靠這一點：這就是投票選舉代表的責任。公民也許不能解決政治問題，但他們至少可以選舉模範的代表。他們必須選舉聰明的，良善的，誠實的，熱心的公民，充任他們的代表。如果這件事辦得到，政治自能處理有效，為全民謀利益。現代國家的政府，大體上都是實施代議制度的。

然而，代議政體也有弱點。有的所選的代表和官吏是不良分子。他們也許

morally good, but incapable and inefficient; or *they may not do the will of the people on a given question.* There is no way to control them or to remove them from office *until their term is up.* Sometimes *the pros and cons of a public question* are so evenly divided that the representatives do not know what to do *unless they get a clear expression of popular opinion.*

How can we combine the advantages of direct government and representative government and avoid their disadvantages? Dr. Sun Yat-Sen thought about this question carefully and suggested a solution for China. He made a distinction between "sovereignty" and "ability." Political power belongs to the people; *government is conducted by specialists of ability.* The government rules the people, but the people control that government through the exercise of four political rights. The first is *suffrage.* That means the citizens elect by popular vote public-spirited specialists as their representatives and officials. The second is *the recall.* If any of these representatives or officials are proved to be unworthy, they may be removed from office at any time by popular vote. The third is *the initiative.* The citizens have the right to introduce and make laws directly if such have not been made by their representatives. The fourth is *the referendum.* The citizens have the right to approve or reject decisions referred to them by the law-making body. The people must learn how to use these four political rights wisely.

Dr. Sun used the example of the owner of an automobile and his chauffeur. The owner has the power but no ability to drive the car; the chauffeur has the ability but no power. The people are like the owner, and the government is like the chauffeur. How can they cooperate? Consider what Dr. Sun says:

The people are the owners; they must be sovereign. The government are specialists; they must be men of ability and skill. We are, therefore, to look upon all the officers of the government as specially trained chauffeurs. If they are able men and loyal to the nation we should be

道德高尚，但是才能欠缺，不能勝任；或者對於某種問題不能順從人民的意志。像這一類的代表，非到他們任期滿後，實無法受人控制，也難撤職。有時爲了一個公共問題分爲贊成和反對兩派，以致代表毫無辦法，這只好藉輿論把它說清楚了。

我們怎樣才能聯合直接政體和代議政體的利益而取消它們的弊端呢？孫中山先生對於這個問題，曾詳細地考慮過，並且爲中國提出一個解決的辦法。他清清楚楚地分別出什麼是「主權」，什麼是「能力」。政權是屬於人民的；政府是由有才幹的專家管理的。政府統治人民，但人民運用四種政權來管理政府。第一是選舉權。那意思是說，公民藉普通選舉法，選出熱心公益的專家，當他們的代表或官吏。第二是罷免權。如果代表或官吏中有證據證明的，人民可隨時投票罷免其職。第三是創制權。就是如果某條法律尚未被代表訂立出來，人民也有直接引用和創設法律的權。第四是複決權。就是公民有贊成或反對立法機關所給他們的議決權。人民必須研究怎樣去善用這四種政權。

孫總理會用汽車。主人和他的車夫作爲例子。主人有權，但無開車的能力；車夫有能力，但缺少主權。人民像車主，政府像車夫。他們怎樣合作呢？研究一下孫總理所說的話：

『人民是車主；他們一定是有權的人。政府是專門家；他們一定是有才幹有技能的人。因此我們要把政府的官吏當作有特別訓練的車夫看待。他們若是忠心於國家的賢能，我們很情願

willing to give the sovereignty of the state into their hands. We must not limit their movements, but give them *freedom of action*; then the state can progress, and *progress with rapid strides*. If, on the contrary, we attempt to take everything into our own hands or to *hamper our experts at every turn* and not allow them freedom of action, the state can hardly hope to progress much and will move forward very slowly.

12. The Practice of Government in Schools

Although a school is not exactly like a nation, because a school is under the direction of those appointed by the educational officers or by the owners, and so does not in any case have more than a *small measure of self-government*, it gives us an opportunity to learn the principles of government. Do not attempt to decide every question by mass meetings. These are necessary for the purposes of encouraging or persuading the whole student body or expressing mass opinion, but they are often not the place for making final decisions or definite plans. It is much wiser to appoint committees and elect boards to make your rules and form your decisions (suffrage). Only in special cases should questions be referred to a mass meeting for a final decision (referendum). Sometimes students may send suggestions of new rules or important questions to the student government for consideration and adoption (initiative). It is important to elect good students as officers, and it is equally important to support them after they are elected. As a rule, *abide by their decisions* and give them a free hand. If you throw responsibility and confidence on your representatives, you *make them stronger men*. Only when there is definite evidence to prove the unworthiness of an officer, should the student body remove him from office (recall); otherwise it discourages good students from taking offices.

On the other hand, officers of the student self-government should be public-spirited, and must never work for selfish ends. They must *preserve order, serve*

將政權交給他們的手裏，我們不要限制他們的行動，但須給他們辦事自由；然後國家始能進步，始能有極快的進步。反之，若事事須自己親手做，或者對於專門人才的一舉一動都要阻止他們的自由，這樣一來，國家便難望有進步，就是進步也很遲緩。

十二 學校政府的實習

雖說學校並不全像一個國家，因為學校只是受教育人員或辦學的人所主管，怎麼也不能超過自治會的小計劃範圍以外，但是却給了我們研究政治原理的一個機會。不要把每一個問題都交全體大會去解決。

- 對於鼓勵或勸導全體學生或發表全體學生的意見時，全體大會是必需的；但若在那裏作最後的表決，定明確的方針，總不是相宜的地方。
- 最好的辦法是組織委員會選舉董事會，擬定章程以付表決。（選舉權）
- 只有特別情形的問題，應交給全體大會作最後的議決。（複決權）
- 有時學生對自治會可提議新的章程或重要的問題，使它考慮和修訂。（創制權）
- 選舉模範學生當委員固然要緊，在他們被選之後，扶助他們，也是一樣要緊。以通常而言，總是要遵守他們的決議，並給他們辦事的自由。如果你把責任和信心交付了你的代表，你就使他成為更有力量的人了。只要你有確實的證據，證明那一個委員確實濫用職權，學生便可罷免其職。（罷免權）

不然，好的學生就要灰心絕望。

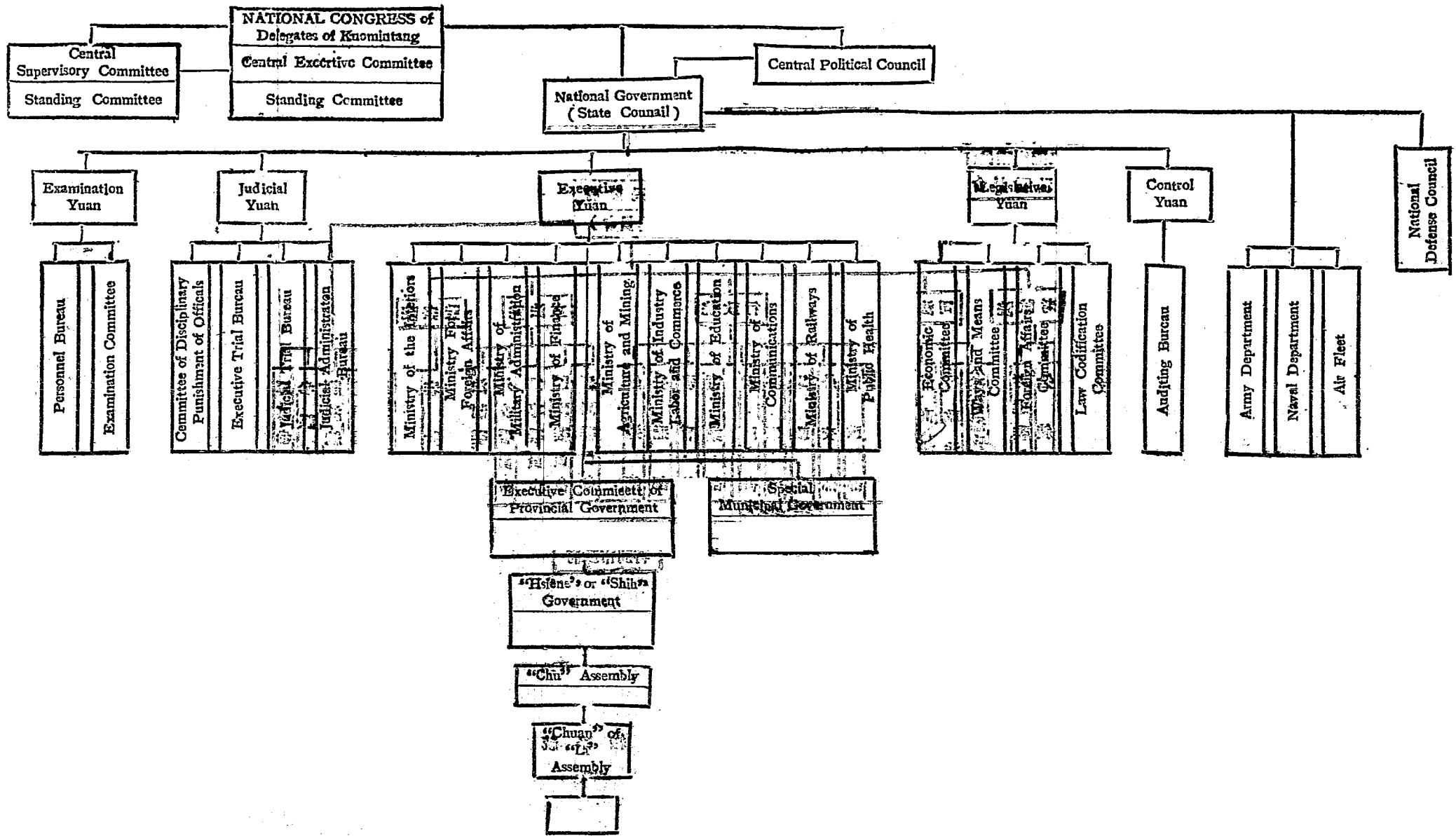
反之，學校自治會的職員應當熱心公益，絕對不可謀私人的利益。

- 他們必須保持秩序。

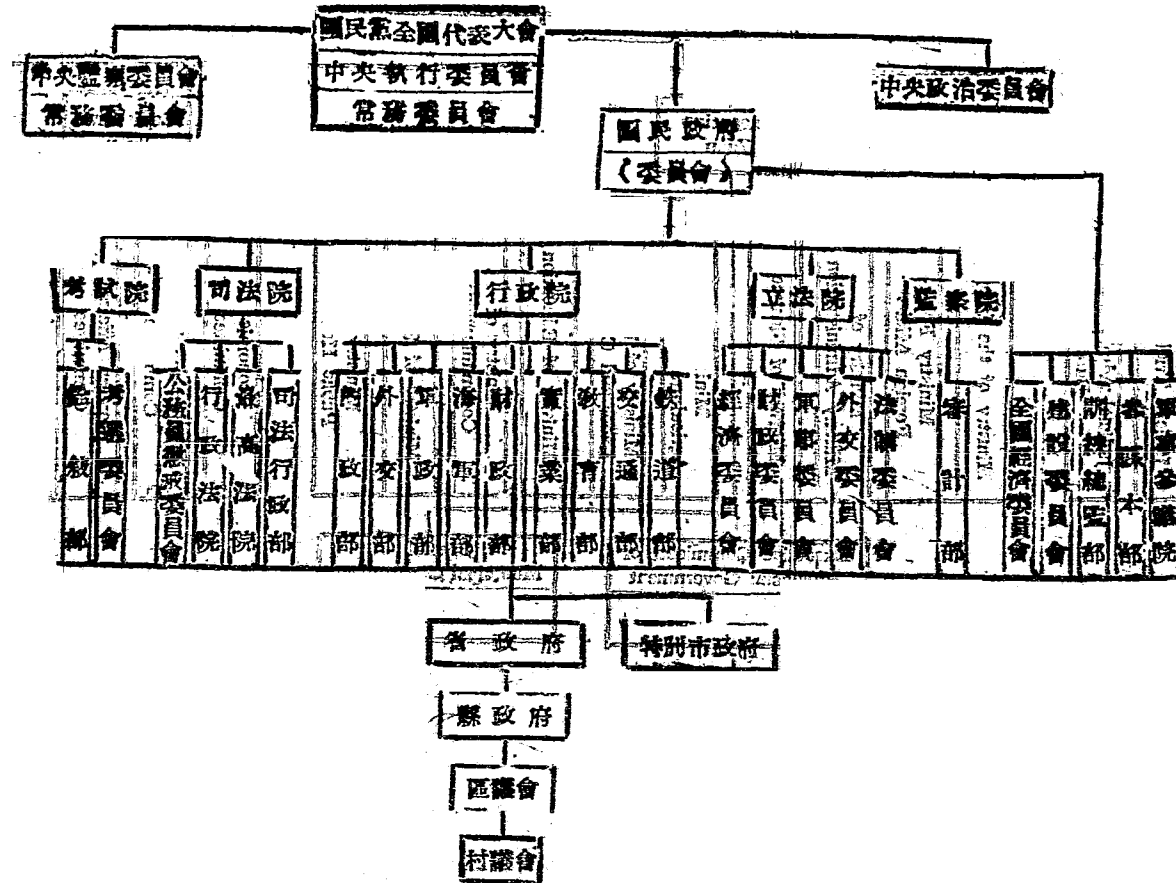
all alike, and give justice in all matters of dispute. They must see that rules are observed by all the students, and must always work for the general welfare of the whole student body. Let us determine in our schools to have *self-government of a kind that our whole nation can copy*. The schools should teach good government and never bad government. The students in China have already done great things for their nation and its government. Here is another extremely important thing to do: to study and practice the right methods and principles of good government.

13. "Principles of National Reconstruction"

Not only must students in schools practice good government; the people at large must also learn the principles of self-government. *An ancient monarchy cannot be changed into a modern democracy over night*, although China is making progress at an amazing speed. Freedom, liberty, and political powers should be given to the people only as fast as they can learn how to use these wisely. They must be educated for a democratic government. Dr. Sun Yat-Sen outlined certain basic principles underlying this process of national reconstruction. He divided the process into three stages. The first is *the military stage*, during which time all public affairs should be placed under a military government. The National Government should conquer all opposition and unify the country by military force. It should also *convince the masses of the ideals of the People's Revolution*. Since the Revolution has succeeded in bringing about a unified China, the military stage is over. The second is *the educative stage*, during which time the National Government should develop natural resources, industry, and agriculture in order to improve the livelihood of the people; and at the same time should teach the people how to govern themselves until they are able to elect representatives and officials to make and carry out laws. *The unit of self-government is the district*. In a fully



A SIMPLIFIED CHART SHOWING THE ORGANIZATION OF THE NATIONAL GOVERNMENT OF THE REPUBLIC OF CHINA



中華民國國民政府組織系統略圖

服務大眾，公正地評判一切的爭端。他們必須注意全校的學生是否都守規則，並且要常為全體學生謀一般的福利。讓我們決定在我們學校裏設立模範自治機關，使我們全國學校都可做效。學校應當教育良好的政府，不可教育腐敗的政府。中國的學生已替國家和政府做出大事業來了。這裏還有一件非常重要待做的事情：就是研究和實習模範政府的正當方法及原則。

十三 『建國大綱』

不但學校的學生應學習良好的政治，就是普通的人民也要知道自治的原理。雖則中國的進步神速可驚，一個古代的帝國不能在一夜功夫變成現代民主國。人民若能善用自由，特權，政權，就得趁早給予他們。人民應受民主政治的教育。孫中山先生計劃關於建國方法的基本原理的大綱。他把這種方法分作三個時期。第一軍政時期，在這時期所有的公共事業都須歸軍事機關管轄。國民政府應當克服各種反動，用武力統一全國，國民政府也要把國民革命的思想灌輸民眾。待革命成功，全國統一之後，軍政時期即行結束。第二是訓政時期，在這時期國民政府須開天然的富源，實業，農業，改善人民的生活，同時應指導人民怎樣管理自己，直到他們能選舉代表和官吏，創設法律為止。自治的單位就是縣。在一個完全能

self-governed district the people should be able to exercise wisely the four political rights of suffrage, recall, initiative, and referendum. When all the districts in a province are fully self-governed, the province becomes fully self-governed. When more than half the provinces have reached this goal, the nation as a whole will be ready to enter into another new stage of reconstruction. This is called the *constitutional stage*. At that time a *national people's assembly* will be called to determine the constitution of China. When that is done, a constitutional government will be established and managed accordingly.

14. The Five Administrative Powers of Government

A modern government must have definite and well-understood ways of acting, or else there will be confusion, conflicts within the government itself, uncertainty and discouragement, waste of time and money, inefficiency in public service, and failure of law and order and justice. There must be a definite and well-understood way of making the laws, of carrying out the laws, of giving justice according to law and equity, of selecting competent men for public offices, and of supervising various organs of the government. These are called the five administrative powers of government. In the National Government of the Republic of China there are five Yuan, exercising severally these five powers: the *Executive Yuan*, the *Legislative Yuan*, the *Judicial Yuan*, the *Examination Yuan*, and the *Control Yuan*. Western governments usually have departments similar to the first three only. The last two in our government, organized at the suggestion of Dr. Sun Yat-Sen, are quite unique and serve some special needs in our country. A constitution providing for these five branches of government is called the *Constitution of Five Powers*. Changes like those proposed by Dr. Sun Yat-Sen give our republic an opportunity to make use of the best in other national constitutions and also to take advantage of the best in China's own traditions.

自治的縣裏，人民須善用四種政權：選舉權，罷免權，創制權，複決權。一省的各縣若能完全自治，全省也就完全能自治了。一國有一半以上的自治省分，那麼全國就將準備走入另一個新建設的時期了。這個時期叫作憲政時期。到那時候，就當召集全國國民大會，議決中國憲法問題。等這問題解決之後，憲政政府便即告成，依照憲法辦理政務。

十四 政府的五權行政權

現代政府必須有精確明瞭的辦事方法，不然就將發生紛亂，政府內部的鬥爭，不穩定，不前進，耗費時間和金錢，公共事業的衰落，法律、秩序、和公正的失敗。修訂法律，實施法律，按照法律頒布公道和平等，選舉有才幹的公務員，監督政府各機關，都須有精確明瞭的方法。這就叫作政府的五種行政權。中華民國的國民政府有五院，行使這五種權：行政院，立法院，司法院，考試院，監察院。西洋各國政府只有前三種相似的部分。後兩院是根據孫中山先生指示而組織的，它是非常的優越，且在本國特別合用。規定這五種政治的憲法，便叫「五權憲法。」像孫總理所提倡的那些變更，是給我們民國一種利用別國憲法的機會，並且增加中國習俗的長處。

An absolute monarch or dictator may combine all these powers in himself, as does the owner and manager of a business, except so far as *he chooses to let others act for him*. In a big business corporation the directors may make most of the rules, but all the rest is left to an executive. All the lawmakers and officers are really the representatives of the owners, stockholders, and citizens, who are back of the organization. Whether this organization is a club, a school, a railroad, a bank, a city, a province, or a nation, it must have these main functions of control provided for, and it must have definite and well-understood ways of providing for them.

15. The Organic Law of the National Government

Most of the modern nations have some fundamental law on which the government is based. In some nations it is called the constitution. On October 4, 1928, the *Organic Law of the National Government of the Republic of China* was promulgated. It is a framework of the Constitution of Five Powers, which will come into existence as soon as the people are ready for constitutional government. This Organic Law provides that the National Government shall exercise all the governing powers, have command of all military forces, and have the power to declare war and to make peace and treaties. The National Government shall have five Yuan: the Executive Yuan, the Legislative Yuan, the Judicial Yuan, the Examination Yuan, and the Control Yuan. Each Yuan has a president and a vice president. There shall also be a president of the National Government. National affairs are conducted by a *State Council*, whose membership includes the president of the National Government and from twelve to sixteen *state councilors*. The president of the National Government shall be the chairman of the State Council, and the presidents and vice-presidents of the five Yuan shall be appointed from among the state councilors. All matters that cannot be settled

君主專制政體或獨裁政治，只是把這些權力加在一人身上；每一種營業的主人和經理，除非由他挑選別人執行他的職務。在一另大公司裏，監督可以訂立大部分的章程，但其餘的事情卻交給管理員。所有立法人員和官吏，實在是那機關的主人，股東，公民的代表。不論這機關是社會，學校，鐵路，銀行，城市，省分，或國家，必須規定出主要的管理的職權，也必須有相當的精確明瞭的辦法。

十五 國民政府組織法

多數的現代國家，都有若干奠定政府的基本法。有些國家，稱為憲法。中華民國國民政府的組織法在一九二八年十月四日頒佈的。這就是五權憲法的組織，等人民準備實行憲法，政府即將實行了。這種組織法，規定國民政府可以行使一切治權，如統一軍力，宣戰，媾和，訂立條約等。國民政府設立五院：行政院，立法院，司法院，考試院，監察院。每院有一院長和副院長。國民政府還有一位主席。國事由政務會議主持，政務會議的委員，包括國府主席，和十二名至十六名的政務委員。國府主席充任政務會議的主席，五院的正副院長由國民政府委員中委任。

between two or more of the Yuan shall be referred to the State Council for decision.

16. The Executive Yuan

In the government of a club or a company or a school or a small city it is best to have one small body of representatives to make the rules and the decisions and *to see that they are carried out*. This is called an executive committee or a board of managers or a commission or a council, or the like. It is usually made up of elected representatives. Sometimes the chairman or the president or the manager is elected and given the responsibility of appointing the members. The advantages of having such a small ruling body are that the voters can know all the members well, that there is little waste in ineffective cooperation, that responsibility is easily placed, that action is quickly secured, and that mistakes are soon corrected.

In the government of a nation, however, the affairs are too many and complicated for any single ruling body, so there is division of labor between branches of the government. One of the most important is the executive branch. Its duty is to carry out laws and decisions made by the government. This is a complex process, because the laws are of many kinds. One law may say that no man may have two wives; another, that each voter must register before he votes; another, that no opium may be sold; another, that mail shall be delivered to the people both in town and in country; another, that cities may tax the people, but not over a certain rate; another, that all children must go to school; another, that goods coming into the country must pay import duties. Since these laws must be carried out, executives of various kinds are required. A law may order some sort of public service, but there must be definite responsibility for getting that service performed.

兩院或兩院以上不能解決的一切政務，得提交政務會議解決。

十六 行政院

一個社會，公司，學校，少城的自治會，最好有一個小的代表團去訂立章程，解決議案，並調查那章程是否實行，議案是否解決。這就稱執行委員會，或稱理事會，或稱委員會，或稱評議會，或稱其他相似的名目。這會總是由被選的代表組織而成。有時主席或會長或理事被選，担负會員的責任。這類由小團體統治的利益，就是投票的人能極明白所有的會員，免除用的合作的消耗，責任易負，行政迅速，錯誤立即可以改正。

然而，一個政府的事務太繁雜，非單獨團體所能勝任，因此政府的各部都行分工制度。最重要的是行政部分。它的職務是執行法律和政府所議決的專務。這是很複雜的手續，因為法律有許多種類。一條法律說一人不能娶兩妻；一條法律說投票的人在投票以前須經登記；一條法律說不准販賣鴉片；一條法律說無論在城市或鄉下，郵件必須送到人民的家中；一條法律說城市的人民須納稅，但不能超過某種限度；一條法律說所有的兒童應當入學；又一條法律說輸入國內的貨物須納進口稅。因為這些法律必須實行，所以需要各種執行的機關。一條法律能命令辦理一些公共事業，但得有指定的責任去實行那種事業。

In our National Government this definite responsibility for the carrying-out of laws and decisions is placed in the Executive Yuan. It is the highest executive organ of the National Government. It has a president, a vice president, a number of ministries, and many subordinate officers.

The Ministry for Foreign Affairs is in charge of relations with foreign nations. The minister and his officers and secretaries study the relation of the country to the affairs of the world, take part in international meetings, appoint representatives to foreign countries, and protect the interests of citizens who invest their money abroad or who go to foreign lands.

The Ministry of the Interior attends to the general welfare of the country. It deals with the problems of the conservation and development of natural resources, such as the forests, rivers, and harbors, and also with the social conditions of the people.

The Ministry of Education deals with the problems of provision, regulation, and promotion of educational enterprises in the country. Its influence extends over both public and private schools as well as many other educational and cultural agencies.

The Ministry of Public Health is charged with the duty to improve sanitary conditions, to prevent the spread of diseases, and to promote the health of the people in every possible way.

The Ministry of Communications supervises the management of the post office, the telegraph and cable service, the wireless and radio service, steamship transportation, and so on. It seeks to extend and develop various means of communication.

The Ministry of Railways supervises the management of railroads, improves existing railroads, and makes arrangements for constructing new ones. The need for the development of railroads in China is so great and the task

在我們的國民政府裏，這種指定執行法律和議決的責任是委給行政院。行政院是國民政府的最高機關。它有一院長一副院長，若干部員及許多附屬官員。

外交部是處理國際事務的。外交部長和他的官員及祕書等研究本國對世界事務的關係，參加國際會議，委任駐外代表，保護本國人民在外國投資或到外國去的利益。

內政部所注意的是國內的一般福利。它辦理天然富源的保存和開發問題——如森林，河道，港口等——並調查人民在社會的景況。

教育部辦理全國教育事業的規定、整頓、和提倡。它的權限能遍及公私立學校及其他教育和文化機關。

衛生部的職責是改善衛生狀況，預防疾病的傳染，盡力增進人民的健康。

交通部督察郵政，電報，海底電線，無線電報，輪船運輸的管理及其他事項。它計劃擴充和發展各種交通事業，

鐵道部監督鐵路的管理，改良現有的鐵路，並計劃建築新路。中國建設鐵路的需要是那麼大，工作又是那麼繁複。

is so complex that it has been placed in a separate ministry.

The Ministry of Agriculture and Mining has the function of increasing production by improving agriculture, looking after the special needs of the rural population, and developing the mineral resources of the country.

The Ministry of Industry, Labor, and Commerce has the task of promoting industry and commerce, bettering labor conditions, protecting patents and copyrights, and working for economic harmony between labor and capital.

The Ministry of Military Administration deals with the problems of the army, the navy, and the air fleet.

The Ministry of Finance must collect money to run the government and to carry out the laws. It must make up a budget showing how much money the government expects to spend and how much it expects to receive. It must also make public reports; for since the people pay enormous sums in taxes, directly or indirectly, they should know where the money goes.

17. The Legislative Yuan

In a republic the legislative branch of the government is usually composed of representatives elected by the people. These have power to make laws, to declare war and peace, and to make treaties. They have the power of taxation and authorize the expenditure of public funds. A member of the legislature, therefore, is a person of great opportunity for good or evil. His position is one of grave responsibility. Every citizen should keep in touch with the work of the legislature and carefully note how it votes on all important questions. He should feel free to write to any member of the legislature upon any matter relating to good government or the welfare of the nation. It is not likely that most citizens are wiser than the legislators and can tell them how to

因此另設機構一部辦理此事。

農商部的職責是改良農業，增加生產，關心農民的特別需要，發展國內農村的富源。

工商部的職責是提倡工業和商業，改善勞工狀況，保障專利和版權，並謀勞資間的經濟協調。

軍政部處理海、陸、空軍的問題。

財政部須籌劃經濟，推動政府及施行法律。須編制預算，說明政府希望有多少收入，多少支出。它也必須公報出來；因為人民直接或間接納了租稅，他們應該知道錢的去處。

十七 立法院

民主國的立法機關，總是由人民選舉代表組織成就的。代表有立法，宣戰，媾和，訂約的權利。他們也有征收國稅和指定公款支付權。所以立法代表是領有大國會為公或為私的人。他的地位具有重大的責任。每個公民應當接近立法的工作，並須謹慎地注意一切重要問題如何投票。每個公民應自由地向立法院的任何人員寫信，只要信件事有關政治的修明和國家的利益。多數的公民不一定比立法者更聰明，能告訴他們怎樣。

solve the nation's problems; but their intelligent questions and lively interest will stimulate the legislators to strenuous efforts and loyal devotion to the country's good. If ever you are a member of the legislature, do your utmost to pass only laws which are for the good of the entire nation. Through the faithful performance of your legislative duties you may do far more for the country than many of its military heroes.

The highest legislative organ of the National Government of the Republic of China is the Legislative Yuan. It is composed of from forty-nine to ninety-nine members, appointed by the National Government for a term of office of two years. The Legislative Yuan has the power to decide on legislation, budgets, declaration of war, negotiation for peace, conclusion of treaties, and other important international affairs. All resolutions passed by it shall be decided upon and promulgated by the State Council. The members of the Legislative Yuan may not hold at the same time nonpolitical administrative offices in the central or local governments.

18. The Judicial Yuan

In any organization the work of judging people and of judging even the officers and the laws themselves is usually given to some very stable part of the organization. The lower judges may be elected or appointed from time to time, but the highest authorities must be as permanent as possible. In a school organization the principal is the final authority. He is able to prevent the constant changing of student officers and representatives from destroying the "government" or causing such confusion or loss as to make it ineffective. A business organization comes directly under the laws and courts of the city, province, and nation. These laws and courts themselves come under the supreme court. The supreme court of the country decides whether the laws are properly made and properly carried out. Its work,

解決國家的問題；可是他們的有意識的關切和熱烈的關切，卻能鼓勵立法者的努力，使他們忠心地為國家謀幸福。你若是立法院的一份子，你當盡力通過有益於國家的法律。只要忠心盡你的司法職務，那為國服務的工作，便比許多軍事英雄所做的更多了。

中華民國的國民政府的最高立法機關，就是立法院。立法院是由國民政府委任人員四十九名至九十九名充任的，任職期限兩年。它有議決立法，預算，宣戰，釋和，訂立條約及其他重要的國際事務的權限。在立法院通過的各種決議，由政務會議再通過後公佈。立法的人員不得同時兼任中央政府或地方政府的政治工作。

十八 司法院

不論在任何組織中，凡是審判人民甚至審判法官和法律本身的工作，總是委託那組織中的穩健的部分。低級的法官可以隨時選舉或委任，但最高級的法官是愈永久愈好。在一個學校的組織中，校長是最後的當局。他可以防止學生職員和代表的時常更動，以免破壞行政，或因發生紛擾，或因各種損失，而使學校毫無成績。商業的組織，須直接受城市，省分，國家的法律和法庭的管轄。這些法律和法庭的本身是受大理院的管轄的。一國的大理院統制法律的訂立和施行是否合法。

in turn, must be according to some fundamental laws. These laws are usually the constitution of that particular country and international laws and agreements.

In the National Government of the Republic of China the highest judicial organ is called the Judicial Yuan. It takes charge of administration of courts, *disciplinary punishment of officials*, and other judicial affairs. It also recommends to the National Government the granting of pardons, *delays of punishment*, and *restoration of civic rights*. The Chinese courts are being modernized, and modern laws—penal, civil, and commercial—are being introduced.

19. The Examination Yuan

For many centuries China had a system of government examinations by which able scholars were selected and appointed to fill important offices under the monarchy. The system was abolished in 1905, because *corruption had set in* and because the examinations were not of a kind that would test the type of ability needed to run a modern government. However, the principle of selection of ability by examination was not wrong. In many Western countries people who want to enter civil service must pass certain examinations given by the government. This prevents the appointment of officials merely for political reasons, and it prevents favoritism. A citizen of ability along a certain line knows that he has a chance to render public service along that line, no matter how humble his origin. So there has been organized in our National Government an Examination Yuan, which is the highest examination organ in the country. It takes charge of examinations and determines the qualifications for public service. Many kinds of public offices can be filled only by citizens who have passed certain examinations and whose qualifications for public service have been determined by the Examination Yuan. The important thing is that the examinations must be of the right kind and be administered with strict fairness.

它的工作也必照基本法律辦理。這些法律普通總受國家的詳細憲法，國際公法，和條約。

中華民國的國民政府的最總司法機關，就是司法院。司法院的職權是監督法庭的行政，彈劾官吏，並處理其他司法事宜。關於特赦，緩刑，恢復公民職權等事，也可呈請國民政府核准辦理。中國的法庭現已革新了，現代的法律——刑事的，民事的，商業的——也被採用了。

十九 考試院

有幾世紀之久，中國存在了國家考試的制度，（科舉制度）委任有才的仕官，作肩君國的重要機關的職務。到了一九〇五年，這制度才取消，一來因為腐化非常，二來因為那種考試不是現代政府採取的甄別人才的方法。然而用考試制度選拔人才，並無錯誤。在西洋各國，人民如欲在政府機關謀職，必須經過政府的某種考試，考試制度不但可防止因有政治關係的人就能做官，而且也可避免由情面薦舉的弊端。一個具的某種才幹的公民，論不他的出身怎樣低微，他總是知道他有機會去利用這才幹為公共事業服務。所以我們的國民政府有考試院的組織，這是國家中最高級的考試機關。它監督考試，並審定公共服務的資本。各種公共機關，都可由公民充任，只要他們經過某種考試，或經過考試院審定合格。最要緊的是，考試必須正當，辦法也必須公道。

- 20. The Control Yuan

Neither is the Control Yuan in our National Government an entirely new feature in Chinese government. There were "official advisers" in the Tang dynasty and "official historians" in the Tsing (Manchu) dynasty who exercised censorship over the government. One of the slogans of the National Government is to make itself "a thrifty and honest government." It means to get rid of dishonest officials, to prevent corruption and squeezes, to reduce waste in public expenditures, to practice national economy, and to encourage thrift in all officials. It does not necessarily mean a smaller and smaller national budget every year, because as the work of the government grows, the budget will increase; but it does mean *full use must be made of every dollar of public incomes* for the benefit of the people. To do all this, there must be a powerful body of officers to supervise the various branches of the government. Theirs is a very difficult task; they must have great courage and must be strongly supported by the people. The Control Yuan of the National Government is the highest supervisory organ in the country, and has the power to *impeach unworthy officials* and to audit all government accounts. It is composed of from nineteen to twenty-nine members, appointed by the National Government. They cannot, at the same time hold any office in any of the organs of the central or local governments. This is to insure their absolute independence.

21. Unity and the Central Government

One of the important questions for a nation to decide is how largely its government should be centralized; in other words, what should be left to the province and what should be managed by the federal, or central, authority. This is too large a question to discuss here. The United States fought a four years' war over "states

二十 監察院

中國國民政府的監察院，完非完全是新的組織。唐朝的諫官，清朝的御史，都是行使政府職權的。國民政府有個口號，就是要有『儉樸清廉的政府。』它的意思是剷除貪官污吏，防止腐化剝削，減省公費支出，緊縮國家經濟，鼓勵官員節儉。這並不是說國家的預算一年少似一年，因為國家的事業增加，預算也要增加；但是公款的收入，就是一元錢也得為人民謀利益。要達到這個目的，必須組織一個有力量的官吏團體，監察政府的各部。他們的這種工作，頗不容易；他們一定要有很大的勇氣，並須得人民有力的擁護。國民政府的監察院是國家中最高的監察機關，有彈劾瀆職的官吏和審查國家賬目的大權。監察院的職員，是由國民政府委任的，其人數自十九名至二十名。他們不能同時兼任中央政府或地方政府的職務。這是因為要保障他們絕對獨立。

二一 團結與中央

一個國家須解決的重要問題之一，就是政府應多大的集權，換句話說，便是規定那種權限應歸各省辦理，那種權限應歸中央辦理。這個問題太大，不能在此地討論。美國打了四年的仗，

rights." The desire for "home rule" for Ireland, which was granted finally after generations of struggle, caused civil war there. This problem could be dealt with most carefully by the citizens of China. It is easy to see that China has great national and international problems and that she will need a strong central government to deal with them. The nation's resources—through transportation and widespread means of communication—cannot be developed on a large scale without it. There can be no assurance of law and order unless the central government is strong. Even if one province or all the districts in one section secure perfect order and protection for the people, that section may be attacked by another section. There must be a few local police or soldiers and small provincial forces also, and then a national army to prevent local fighting or disorder and to repel invasion. A country sometimes suffers at the same moment from too many protectors and not enough protection. A strong central government needs very few soldiers to preserve order. After much civil war since the establishment of the Republic of China, we rejoice at the fact that the *People's Revolution* has succeeded in making China a unified nation again. China must keep this unity in order to continue to be China. The coining of money, the relations with foreign countries, the carrying of mail, the drainage of rivers to prevent floods and promote commerce,—all these should be controlled by the central government. One of the chief meanings of patriotism is to be loyal to the central government. Let one of our mottoes be, "*China forever and forever one.*"

22. The Will of Dr. Sun Yat-Sen

Sun Yat-Sen, founder of the Republic of China and leader of the *People's Revolution*, died on March 12, 1925, but he will live forever in the hearts of the people. Students of China must prepare themselves to carry on the task of national reconstruction that he so nobly

爲的是爭省權。要實現爲謀自治，引起了內戰，經過幾世紀的奮爭，始達目的。這個問題，是中國國民黨着重研究的。很容易可以看到，中國有本國的和國際的問題。這些問題必需有力的中央政府才可解決。國家的富源——藉運輸普遍的交通方法——若無中央政府，便不能大規模地開發了。中央政府倘不強固，法律和秩序也沒有保障。縱使一省或各縣的一區的人民得到完全的保障和秩序，那一區也許受隣一區的攻擊。所以必須有少數的本地警察或軍隊，也須有少數的本營軍力，再須有一國的大軍，去防止局部的地方鬥爭或混亂或反叛。一個國家，往往因保護人民太多而保護不足，致遭不幸。強固的中央政府，只需要少數的軍隊維持治安。經過幾次的內戰，中華民國始得成立。這是全靠國民革命才把中國統一，我們對於這件事很可快慰。中國必須保持這種團結，使其繼續存在。錢幣的鑄造，國際的往來，郵務的發展，河流的疏濬，水災的預防，商業的振興——這些都須由中央政府統制。愛國的一個主要方法，是忠於中央政府。我們的一個標旨是：「中國永遠存在。」

二二 『孫總理的遺囑』

中華民國的建國者，國民革命的領袖，孫中山先生，是一九二五年三月十二日逝世的，然而他永遠活着在人民的心裏。中國的學生應當準備自己，負起他所着手的偉大的建國事業。

began. They should carefully study his will and all his writings. Here is a translation of his will:

For forty years I have devoted myself to the cause of the People's Revolution with the object of securing freedom and equality for China. My experience, accumulated in these forty years, has firmly convinced me that to attain this object we must awaken the masses of our own people and unite ourselves in a common struggle with those peoples of the world who treat us on the basis of equality.

As the revolution has not yet come to a complete success, all my comrades must follow my "Plans for National Reconstruction," "Basic Principles of National Reconstruction," "Three Principles of the People," and the "Manifesto" issued by the First National Convention of our party, and *strive on earnestly for their full realisation*. The recently proposed People's Conference and the abolition of unequal treaties especially should be carried into effect at the earliest possible date. This is my bequest to you.

23. The "Three Principles of the People"

What are the aims of the Revolution and what are the *guiding principles for the building of our new China?* We find an answer in Dr. Sun's "Three Principles of the People." You may not realize it at first, but what we have been studying in this book is closely related to these principles.

The first principle is called People's Nationality. It means (1) *the awakening in our own people of a sense of national solidarity*, (2) *the elevation of China to a position of freedom and equality among the nations of the world*, (3) *the opportunity for self-determination*, (4) *the cultivation of the good qualities of the Chinese people*, and (5) *constant effort toward national progress by choosing the best from foreign nations and adapting it to the conditions of China*.

In Chapters I—V of this book we have studied what patriotism means, why China is a nation to be proud of

他們也應當熱心地研究他的遺囑和他的著作。下面就是他的遺囑：

『余致力國民革命凡四十年，其目的的在求中國之自由平等。積四十年之經驗，深知欲達到此目的，必須喚起民眾及聯合世界上以平等待我之民族共同奮鬥。

現在革命尚未成功，凡我同志，務須依照余所著建國方略，建國大綱，三民主義，及第一次全國代表大會宣言繼續努力，以求貫徹，最近主張開國民會議及廢除不平等條約，尤須於最短期間促其實現，是所至囑』

二三 「三民主義」

革命的目的是什麼？建設新中國指導的原理又是什麼？我們可以從孫總理的「三民主義」裏找到一個解答。也許起先你不甚明白，但是我們所讀的這本書與這些主義有密切的關係。

第一種主義，叫作民族主義。它的意思說：（1）喚醒我們國民對於國家共同責任的認識；（2）提高中國的地位與世界各國一律自由平等；（3）自決的機會；（4）養成中國人民的良好品格；（5）時常努力於國家的進步，採取外國的優良，並適合中國的國情。

在本書的一至五章裏，我們已經知道：愛國是什麼意思，中國為什麼是個可憐要

and to preserve, and how the spirit of pioneering and sacrifice can build China into a modern nation of stability and permanence.

The second principle is called People's Sovereignty. It means the government of China should be a government of the people, for the people, and by the people. The people shall exercise the four political rights of suffrage, recall, initiative, and referendum, and the government shall exercise the five administrative powers—executive, legislative, judicial, examining, and supervisory.

In Chapters XVI and XVII we have studied the fundamental ideas of liberty, law, and order, the nature of government and public services, and our own political ideals and National Government.

The third principle is called People's Livelihood. It means that the government must be so organized and so cooperate with the people that the people shall have more and better food, clothing, shelter, means of communication, education, and recreation.

In Chapters VI—XV we have studied the spirit of enterprise and efficiency in promoting modern business, industry, and agriculture; the development and conservation of natural resources; the saving of time and the best use of labor; the right use of money, or capital; the ideal of service in all occupations; the importance of science for national progress; the fundamental needs of the people; and the opportunities of health and education. All these are important problems in the great work of improving the livelihood of our four hundred million people.

Throughout the book we have been eager to appreciate the best in our own people and civilization, and at the same time we have been keen to study the best in modern nations of the West. This will make us better able to solve our own problems and to strive for our national progress. We have not finished this study; we have just begun. Let us always keep in mind the problems we

可保存的國家，怎樣使前驅的和犧牲的精神造就中國成爲一個穩健和永久的國家。

第二種主義，叫作民權主義。這是說中國政府應當是一個民有、民治、民享的政府。人民行使選舉、罷免、創制、複決四種政權，政府行使行政、立法、司法、考試、監察五種治權。

在本書的十六十七兩章裏，我們已知道：自由、法律、秩序的基未觀念，政府和公共事業的性質，與我們自己的政治思想及國民政府。

第三種主義叫做民生主義。這是說政府必須竭力與人民共同組織，共同合作，使人民有更多更好的衣、食、住、行、教育和娛樂。

在本書的六至十五章裏，我們已經知道：企業的精神以及提倡現代農、工、業的效率；天然富源的開發和保存；節省時間，善用人工；利用資本的正當方法；各種職業的服務觀念；國家進步的科學必要；人民的基本需要；衛生與教育的機會。爲改善我們四萬萬人民的生活，這些都是偉大事業的重要問題。

在本書中，我們始終懇切地重視我們人民和文化的特點，同時我們又悉心研究西洋近代國家的長處。這樣，我們更能解決自己的問題，爲我們的國家進步而奮鬥。我們對於這種研究，不但尙未完盡，簡直還是正在開始。讓我們把所讀過的牢記在心，

have been studying, and let everyone determine to discover and do his or her part in this great and noble task of building a new China.

QUESTIONS AND EXERCISES

1. State in your own words the chief purposes of government.
2. What is a monarchy? an oligarchy? a democracy?
3. Contrast the new view of government with the older attitude toward it.
4. Write a short paragraph on "A Hero of Everyday Life."
5. Select some article of food that was brought to you by men of several countries and briefly trace its progress from its source to you.
6. In your own words tell what we mean by a "good army."
7. What are the five functions of government?
8. Name a few of the important departments of national government and tell briefly what each does.
9. Tell how the people can make use of specialists in government and at the same time have control over them.
10. Study Dr. Sun's will in Chinese and try to make a better translation than the one given.
11. Look back over this book and recall many examples of ways in which we have shown how the Three Principles are carried out in the life and government of a modern nation.
12. If you were appointed a magistrate of a district, how would you go about to teach self-government to the people in the district?

讓大家發揮他或她的天賦，去做建設新中國的偉大高尚的事業。

問答練習題

- (1) 用你自己的文字，說明政府的主要目的。
- (2) 什麼是君主政治？寡頭政治？民主政治？
- (3) 比較政府的新見解與舊態度。
- (4) 用『一個日常生活的英雄』的題目寫一短文。
- (5) 舉幾種由各國人帶給你的食品，並略述從它們的出處運轉到你手中的步驟。
- (6) 用你自己的文字，說明『好軍隊』的意義。
- (7) 政府的五種職權是什麼？
- (8) 舉出國民政府的幾個重要部分，並略述各部所担任的工作。
- (9) 人民怎樣成爲專家受政府任用？同時又怎樣去管理他們？
- (10) 研究研究中文的孫總理的遺囑，試作比所舉的英譯本更好的翻譯。
- (11) 把這本書重新溫習一遍，回想我們所舉的例子，藉以指出怎樣從『三民主義』在生活與現代國家中實現的方法。
- (12) 如果你被委任爲一縣的縣長，你打算怎樣指導一縣的人民自治？

國立編譯館

書號 850.08/7534 總登號 16230

編著者 陳漢聲 註釋

書目 新中國

借期	借者姓名	還期
3.24	李一	已
12/12	朱祖蔭	
	林仲立	

國立編譯館

總登號 16230 書號 85008
7534

洋裝全一冊

新 中 國

此書有著作權翻印必究

原 著 者 Graybill & Chu
註 譯 者 陳 漢 聲
發 行 者 求 益 書 社

總 發 行 所

上海福州路三七五號

求 益 書 社

分 辦 事 處

重慶：保安路一五五號附三號

昆明：曉東街四十一號

貴陽：省府路四十六號

各地電報掛號 ○ 六 三 六

湖南省圖書館查證
教圖審字第六十三號

57-
44724